DODGE

2008

Ram Truck

OWNER'S MANUAL

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

VEHICLES SOLD IN CANADA

With respect to any Vehicles Sold in Canada, the name Chrysler LLC shall be deemed to be deleted and the name Chrysler Canada Inc. used in substitution therefor.

DRIVING AND ALCOHOL

Drunken driving is one of the most frequent causes of accidents.

Your driving ability can be seriously impaired with blood alcohol levels far below the legal minimum. If you are drinking, don't drive. Ride with a designated non-drinking driver, call a cab, a friend, or use public transportation.

WARNING!

Driving after drinking can lead to an accident. Your perceptions are less sharp, your reflexes are slower, and your judgment is impaired when you have been drinking. Never drink and then drive.

This manual illustrates and describes the operation of features and equipment that are either standard or optional on this vehicle. This manual may also include a description of features and equipment that are no longer available or were not ordered on this vehicle. Please disregard any features and equipment described in this manual that are not on this vehicle.

Chrysler LLC reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and/or make additions to or improvements to its products without imposing any obligation upon itself to install them on products previously manufactured.

Copyright © 2007 Chrysler LLC

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION		PAGE
1	INTRODUCTION	3
2	THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE	9
3	UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE	81
4	UNDERSTANDING YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL	189
5	STARTING AND OPERATING	273
6	WHAT TO DO IN EMERGENCIES	415
7	MAINTAINING YOUR VEHICLE	441
8	MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES	513
9	IF YOU NEED CONSUMER ASSISTANCE	521
10	INDEX	531

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

INTRODUCTION

CONTENTS

- Introduction 4
- How To Use This Manual 4
- Warnings And Cautions 6
- Van Conversions / Campers 6
- Vehicle Identification Number 7
- Vehicle Modifications / Alterations 7

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

INTRODUCTION

This Owner's Manual has been prepared with the assistance of service and engineering specialists to acquaint you with the operation and maintenance of your vehicle. It is supplemented by a Warranty Information Booklet and various customer-oriented documents. You are urged to read these publications carefully. Following the instructions and recommendations in this manual will help assure safe and enjoyable operation of your vehicle.

NOTE: After you read the manual, it should be stored in the vehicle for convenient reference and remain with the vehicle when sold, so that the new owner will be aware of all safety warnings.

When it comes to service, remember that your authorized dealer knows your vehicle best, has the factory-trained technicians and genuine Mopar® parts, and is interested in your satisfaction.

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

Consult the Table of Contents to determine which section contains the information you desire.

The detailed Index at the back of this Owner's Manual contains a complete listing of all subjects.

Consult the following table for a description of the symbols that may be used on your vehicle or throughout this Owner's Manual:

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

81ceae94

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS

This Owner's Manual contains **WARNINGS** against operating procedures which could result in an accident or bodily injury. It also contains **CAUTIONS** against procedures which could result in damage to your vehicle. If you do not read this entire manual, you may miss important information. Observe all Warnings and Cautions.

VAN CONVERSIONS/CAMPERS

The Manufacturer's Warranty does not apply to body modifications or special equipment installed by van conversion / camper manufacturers / body builders. Refer to the Warranty information book, Section 2.1.C. Such equipment includes video monitors, VCRs, heaters, stoves, refrigerators, etc. For warranty coverage and service on these items, contact the applicable manufacturer.

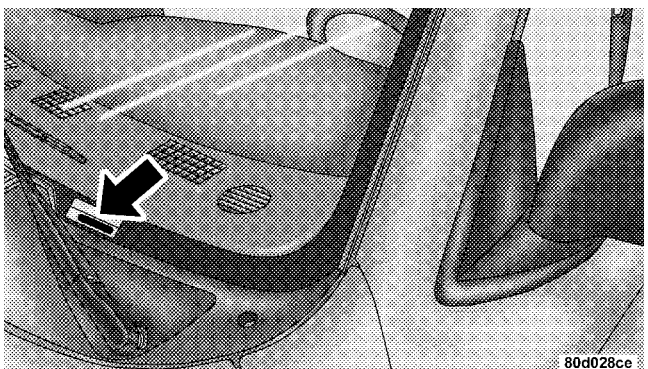
Operating instructions for the special equipment installed by the conversion / camper manufacturer should also be supplied with your vehicle. If these instructions are missing, please contact your authorized selling dealer for assistance in obtaining replacement documents from the applicable manufacturer.

For information on the Body Builders Guide refer to: www.dodgebodybuilder.com. This website contains dimensional and technical specifications for your vehicle. It is intended for Second Stage Manufacturer's technical support. For service issues, contact your authorized dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is found on the left front corner of the instrument panel, visible through the windshield. This number also appears on the Automobile Information Disclosure Label affixed to a window on your vehicle, the vehicle registration and title.



Vehicle Identification Number

NOTE: It is illegal to remove the VIN.

VEHICLE MODIFICATIONS/ALTERATIONS

WARNING!

Any modifications or alterations to this vehicle could seriously affect its roadworthiness and safety and may lead to an accident resulting in serious injury or death.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

CONTENTS

- A Word About Your Keys 12
  - Ignition Key Removal 12
  - Locking Doors With The Key 14
- Sentry Key® 15
  - Replacement Keys 16
  - Customer Key Programming 17
  - General Information 18
- Steering Wheel Lock — If Equipped 18
  - If You Wish To Manually Lock The Steering Wheel 18
  - To Release The Steering Wheel Lock 18
  - Automatic Transmission Ignition Interlock System 19
- Security Alarm System — If Equipped 19
  - Rearming Of The System 19
  - To Set The Alarm 19
  - To Disarm The System 20

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Illuminated Entry System — If Equipped 20
- Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) — If Equipped 21
  - To Unlock The Doors 21
  - To Lock The Doors 22
  - Using The Panic Alarm 23
  - General Information 23
  - Transmitter Battery Service 24
- Remote Starting System — If Equipped 25
  - How To Use Remote Start 26
- Door Locks 27
  - Manual Door Locks 27
  - Power Door Locks — If Equipped 28
  - Child Protection Door Lock 31
- Windows 32
  - Power Windows—If Equipped 32
  - Wind Buffeting 34
- Occupant Restraints 34
  - Lap/Shoulder Belts 35
  - Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage 43
  - Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR) Mode – If Equipped 44
  - Center Lap Belts 45
  - Seat Belt Pretensioners — If Equipped 45
  - Enhanced Seat Belt Reminder System (BeltAlert®) 46
  - Seat Belts And Pregnant Women 47
  - Seat Belt Extender 47

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- □ Driver And Right Front Passenger Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)—Airbags 48
- □ Event Data Recorder (EDR) 60
- □ Child Restraint 62

■ Engine Break-In Recommendations 76

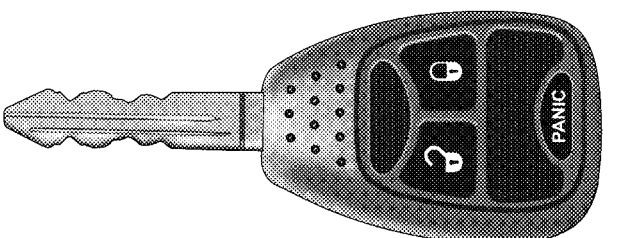
■ Safety Tips 77

- □ Transporting Passengers 77
- □ Exhaust Gas 78
- □ Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle 79
- □ Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle 79

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

A WORD ABOUT YOUR KEYS

The authorized dealer that sold you your vehicle has the key code numbers for your vehicle locks. These numbers can be used to order duplicate keys from your authorized dealer. Ask your authorized dealer for these numbers and keep them in a safe place.

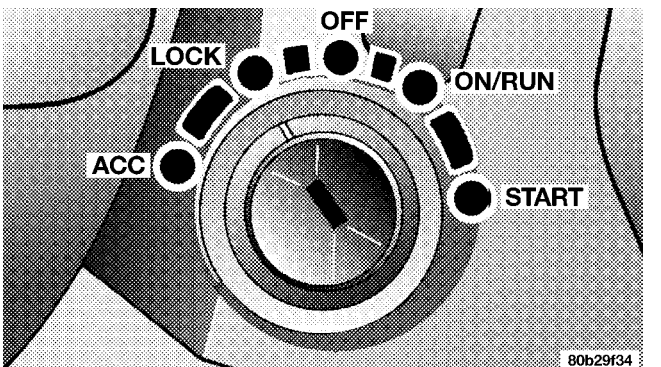


Ignition Key

Ignition Key Removal

Automatic Transmission

Place the shift lever in PARK. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position, and remove the key.



Ignition Switch Positions

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: If you try to remove the key before you place the lever in PARK, the key may become trapped temporarily in the ignition cylinder. If this occurs, rotate the key to the right slightly, then remove the key as described. If a malfunction occurs, the system will trap the key in the ignition cylinder to warn you that this safety feature is inoperable. The engine can be started and stopped but the key cannot be removed until you obtain service.

NOTE: The power window switches, radio, power sunroof (if equipped), and power outlets will remain active for 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned OFF. Opening either front door will cancel this feature.

WARNING!

Never leave children alone in a vehicle. Leaving unattended children in a vehicle is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Don't leave the key in the ignition. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

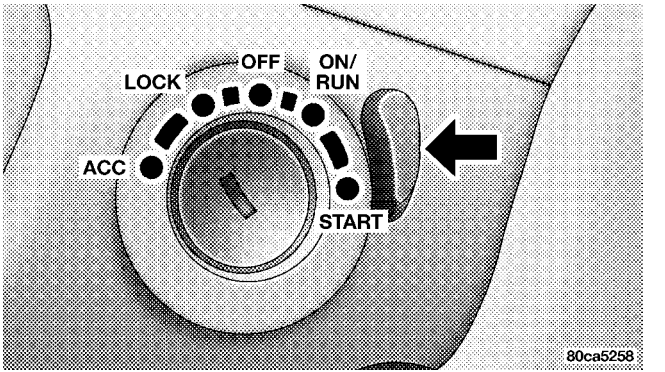
CAUTION!

An unlocked car is an invitation to thieves. Always remove key from the ignition and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle unattended.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Manual Transmission—If Equipped

When the steering wheel is in the LOCK position, the steering and ignition systems are locked to provide anti-theft protection for your vehicle. It may be difficult to turn the key from the LOCK position when starting your vehicle. Move the steering wheel left and right while turning the key until it turns easily. To remove the key, depress and hold the release button located between the ignition switch and the instrument panel. Turn the ignition key to LOCK and remove the key.



Ignition Key Release Button

Locking Doors With The Key

You can insert the key with either side up. To lock the door, turn the key rearward. To unlock the door, turn the key forward. See Section 7 of this manual for door lock lubrication.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

SENTRY KEY®

The Sentry Key® Immobilizer System prevents unauthorized vehicle operation by disabling the engine. The system does not need to be armed or activated. Operation is automatic, regardless of whether the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

The system uses ignition keys that have an embedded electronic chip (transponder) to prevent unauthorized vehicle operation. Therefore, only keys that are programmed to the vehicle can be used to start and operate the vehicle. The system will shut the engine off in two seconds if someone uses an invalid key to try to start the engine.

NOTE: A key that has not been programmed is also considered an invalid key, even if it is cut to fit the ignition switch lock cylinder for that vehicle.

During normal operation, after turning on the ignition switch, the Vehicle Security Light will turn on for three seconds for a bulb check. If the light remains on after the bulb check, it indicates that there is a problem with the electronics. In addition, if the light begins to flash after the bulb check, it indicates that someone used an invalid key to try to start the engine. Either of these conditions will result in the engine being shut off after two seconds.

If the Vehicle Security Light turns on during normal vehicle operation (vehicle running for longer than 10 seconds), it indicates that there is a fault in the electronics. Should this occur, have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

NOTE:

- The Sentry Key® Immobilizer System is not compatible with some aftermarket remote starting systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and loss of security protection.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Exxon/Mobil Speedpass™, additional Sentry Keys®, or any other transponder-equipped components on the same key chain will **not** cause a key-related (transponder) fault unless the additional part is **physically held against the ignition key** being used when starting the vehicle. Cell phones, pagers, or other RF electronics will not cause interference with this system.

All of the keys provided with your new vehicle have been programmed to the vehicle electronics.

Replacement Keys

NOTE: Only keys that are programmed to the vehicle electronics can be used to start and operate the vehicle. Once a Sentry Key® is programmed to a vehicle, it cannot be programmed to any other vehicle.

CAUTION!

Always remove the Sentry Keys® from the vehicle and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle unattended.

At the time of purchase, the original owner is provided with a four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN). Keep the PIN in a secure location. This number is required for authorized dealer replacement of keys. Duplication of keys may be performed at an authorized dealer or by following the customer key programming procedure. This procedure consists of programming a blank key to the vehicle electronics. A blank key is one that has never been programmed.

NOTE: When having the Sentry Key® Immobilizer System serviced, bring all vehicle keys with you to an authorized dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Key Programming

If you have two valid Sentry Keys®, you can program new Sentry Keys® to the system by performing the following procedure:

1. Cut the additional Sentry Key® Transponder blank(s) to match the ignition switch lock cylinder key code.

2. Insert the first valid key into the ignition switch. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position for at least three seconds, but no longer than 15 seconds. Then, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the first key.

3. Insert the second valid key into the ignition switch. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position within 15 seconds. After 10 seconds, a chime will sound. In addition, the Vehicle Security Light will begin to flash. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the second key.

4. Insert a blank Sentry Key® into the ignition switch. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position within 60 seconds. After 10 seconds, a single chime will sound. In addition, the Vehicle Security Light will stop flashing. To indicate that programming is complete, the Vehicle Security Light will turn on again for three seconds and then turn off.

The new Sentry Key® is programmed. **The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter will also be programmed during this procedure.**

Repeat this procedure to program up to eight keys. If you do not have a programmed Sentry Key®, contact your authorized dealer for details.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: If a programmed key is lost, see your authorized dealer to have all remaining keys erased from the system's memory. This will prevent the lost key from starting your vehicle. The remaining keys must then be reprogrammed. All vehicle keys must be taken to an authorized dealer at the time of service to be reprogrammed.

General Information

The Sentry Key® system complies with FCC rules Part 15 and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference that may be received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

STEERING WHEEL LOCK — IF EQUIPPED

Your vehicle may be equipped with a passive steering wheel lock. This lock prevents steering the vehicle without the ignition key. If the steering wheel is moved no more than one-half turn in either direction and the key is not in the ignition switch, the steering wheel will lock.

If You Wish To Manually Lock The Steering Wheel:

With the engine running, turn the steering wheel upside down, turn off the engine and remove the key. Turn the steering wheel slightly in either direction until the lock engages.

To Release The Steering Wheel Lock:

Insert the key in the ignition switch and start the engine. If the key is difficult to turn, move the wheel slightly to the right or left to disengage the lock.

NOTE: If you turned the wheel to the right to engage the lock, you must turn the wheel slightly to the right to

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

disengage it. If you turned the wheel to the left to engage the lock, turn the wheel slightly to the left to disengage it.

Automatic Transmission Ignition Interlock System

This system prevents the key from being removed unless the shift lever is in PARK. It also prevents shifting out of PARK unless the key is in the ON positions, and the brake pedal is depressed.

SECURITY ALARM SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED

This system monitors the vehicle doors and ignition for unauthorized operation. When the alarm is activated, the system provides both audible and visible signals. For the first three minutes the horn will sound and the headlights and security telltale will flash repeatedly. For an additional 15 minutes only, the headlights and security telltale will flash. The engine will run only if a valid Sentry Key® is used to start the vehicle. Use of the Sentry Key® will disable the alarm.

Rearming of the System:

The Security Alarm System will rearm itself after the 15 additional minutes of headlights and security telltale flashing, if the system has not been disabled. If the condition which initiated the alarm is still present, the system will ignore that condition and monitor the remaining doors and ignition.

To Set the Alarm

The alarm will set when you use the power door locks, or use the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Transmitter to LOCK the doors. After all the doors are locked and closed, the SECURITY light in the instrument cluster will flash rapidly to signal that the system is arming. The SECURITY light in the instrument panel cluster will flash rapidly for about 16 seconds to indicate that the alarm is being set. After the alarm is set, the SECURITY light will flash at a slower rate to indicate that the system is armed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: If the SECURITY light stays on continuously during vehicle operation, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

To Disarm the System:

Use the RKE transmitter to UNLOCK the door. If something has triggered the system in your absence, the horn will sound three times when you unlock the doors and the SECURITY light will flash for 30 seconds. Check the vehicle for tampering.

The Security Alarm System will also disarm if the vehicle is started with a programmed Sentry Key®. If an unprogrammed Sentry Key® is used to start a vehicle, the engine will run for two seconds and then the Security Alarm will be initiated. To exit the alarming mode, press the RKE UNLOCK button, or start the vehicle with a programmed Sentry Key®.

The Security Alarm System is designed to protect your vehicle; however, you can create conditions where the system will arm unexpectedly. If you remain in the vehicle and lock the doors with the RKE transmitter, the alarm will sound when you pull the door handle to exit. The door will be locked, but the Security Alarm System will not arm.

ILLUMINATED ENTRY SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED

The courtesy lights will turn on when you use the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Transmitter or open the doors. This feature is only available if you have Remote Keyless Entry.

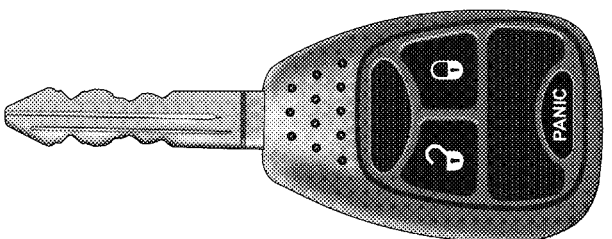
The lights will fade to off after about 30 seconds, or they will immediately fade to off once the ignition switch is turned ON.

NOTE:

- The front courtesy overhead console and door courtesy lights do not turn off if the dimmer control is in the interior lights ON position (extreme top position).
- The illuminated entry system will not operate if the dimmer control is in the extreme downward position.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY (RKE) — IF EQUIPPED



Three-Button Transmitter

The RKE system allows you to LOCK or UNLOCK the doors from distances up to about 23ft (7m) using a hand-held RKE radio transmitter. The RKE transmitter need not be pointed at the vehicle to activate the system.

To Unlock The Doors

Press and release the UNLOCK button on the RKE transmitter once to unlock only the driver's door or twice to unlock all the doors. When the UNLOCK button is pressed, the illuminated entry will initiate, the parking lights will flash on twice and, if installed, the cargo lamp will turn on for 30 seconds.

The system can be programmed to unlock all the doors or the driver's door only upon the first UNLOCK button press by using the following procedure:

1. Perform this operation while standing outside the vehicle.

2. Press and hold the LOCK button on your RKE transmitter.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Continue to hold the LOCK button at least four seconds, but no longer than 10 seconds, then press and hold the UNLOCK button while still holding the LOCK button.

4. Release both buttons at the same time.

5. This will allow you to unlock all doors on the first press of the UNLOCK button.

6. To reactivate this feature, repeat the above steps.

To Lock The Doors

Press and release the LOCK button on the RKE transmitter to lock all doors. If the ignition is OFF, when the doors are locked, the parking lights will flash on once and the horn will chirp once.

The horn chirp feature is activated when shipped from the assembly plant. If desired, this feature can be disabled by using the following procedure:

1. Perform this operation while standing outside the vehicle.

2. Press and hold the LOCK button on a programmed (i.e., functional) RKE transmitter.

3. Continue to hold the LOCK button, wait at least four seconds, but no longer than 10 seconds, then press and hold the PANIC button. Release both buttons at the same time.

4. To reactivate this feature, repeat the above steps.

This vehicle is shipped from the assembly plant with the park lamp flash feature activated. If desired, this feature can be disabled by using the following procedure:

1. Perform this operation while standing outside the vehicle.

2. Press and hold the UNLOCK button on a programmed (i.e., functional) RKE transmitter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Continue to hold the UNLOCK button, wait at least four seconds, but no longer than 10 seconds, then press and hold the LOCK button. Release both buttons at the same time.

4. To reactivate this feature, repeat the above steps.

Using The Panic Alarm

To activate the PANIC mode while the ignition is OFF, press and release the PANIC button on the RKE transmitter once. When the PANIC mode is activated, the interior lights will illuminate, the headlamps and parking lights will flash, and the horn will sound.

To cancel the PANIC mode press and release the PANIC button on the transmitter a second time, after five seconds. Panic mode will automatically cancel after three minutes, or if the vehicle is started and exceeds 15 mph (24 km/h). During the PANIC Mode, the door locks and remote keyless entry systems will function normally. PANIC mode will not disarm the Security Alarm System on vehicles so equipped.

General Information

This device complies with part 15 of FCC rules and with RS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.

2. This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTE: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

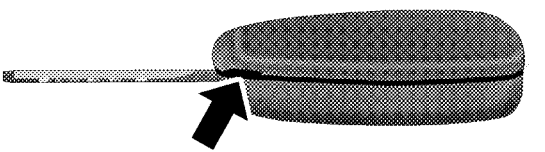
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If your Remote Keyless Entry Transmitter (RKE) fails to operate from a normal distance, check for these two conditions:

1. Weak batteries in transmitter. The expected life of the batteries is from one to two years.

2. Closeness to a radio transmitter such as a radio station tower, airport transmitter, and some mobile or CB radios.

Transmitter Battery Service



81182c72

RKE Transmitter Battery Replacement

NOTE: Perchlorate Material – special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov / hazardouswaste / perchlorate

The recommended replacement battery is CR2032.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: Do not touch the battery terminals that are on the back housing or the printed circuit board.

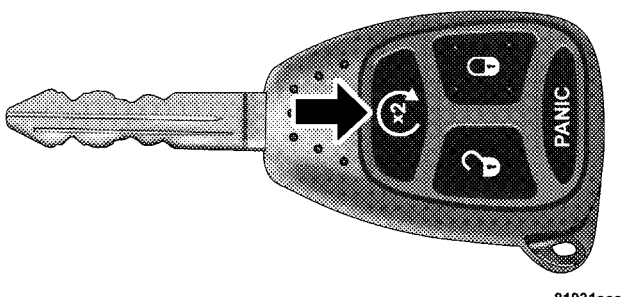
1. With RKE transmitter buttons facing down, use a flat blade or dime to pry the two halves of the transmitter apart. Make sure not to damage the rubber gasket during removal.

2. Remove and replace the battery. When replacing the battery, match the + sign on battery to the + sign on the inside of the battery clip, located on back cover. Avoid touching the new battery with your fingers. Skin oils may cause battery deterioration. If you touch a battery, clean it with rubbing alcohol.

3. To reassemble the transmitter case, snap the two halves of the case together. Make sure there is an even "gap" between the two halves. If equipped, install and tighten the screw until snug. Test RKE transmitter operation.

REMOTE STARTING SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED

This system uses the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to start the engine conveniently from outside the vehicle while still maintaining security. The system has a targeted range of 328 ft (100 m).



Remote Start Button

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: The vehicle must be equipped with an automatic transmission to be equipped with Remote Start.

How To Use Remote Start

All of the following conditions must be met before the engine will remote start:

- Shift lever in PARK
- Doors closed
- Hood closed
- HAZARD switch off
- BRAKE switch inactive (brake pedal not pressed)
- Ignition key removed from ignition switch
- Battery at an acceptable charge level, and
- RKE PANIC button not pressed.

To Enter Remote Start Mode

Press and release the REMOTE START button on the RKE transmitter twice, within five seconds. The parking lights will flash and the horn will chirp twice (if programmed). Then, the engine will start and the vehicle will remain in the Remote Start mode for a 15-minute cycle.

NOTE:

- The park lamps will turn on and remain on during Remote Start mode.
- For security, power window and power sunroof operation (if equipped) are disabled when the vehicle is in the Remote Start mode.
- The engine can be started two consecutive times (two 15-minute cycles) with the RKE transmitter. However, the ignition switch must be cycled to the ON position before you can repeat the start sequence for a third cycle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Remote start will also cancel if any of the following occur:

- If the engine stalls or RPM exceeds 2500.
- Any engine warning lamp turns on.

To Exit Remote Start Mode without Driving the Vehicle
Press and release the REMOTE START button one time, or allow the engine to run for the entire 15-minute cycle.

NOTE: To avoid inadvertent shut downs, the system will disable the one time press of the REMOTE START button for two seconds after receiving a valid Remote Start request.

To Exit Remote Start Mode and Drive the Vehicle
Before the end of the 15-minute cycle, press and release the UNLOCK button on the RKE transmitter to unlock the doors and disarm the Vehicle Security Alarm (if equipped). Then, prior to the end of the 15-minute cycle, insert the key into the ignition switch and turn the switch to the ON/RUN position.

NOTE:
- The ignition switch must be in the ON/RUN position in order to drive the vehicle.

DOOR LOCKS

Manual Door Locks
Front and rear doors may be locked by moving the lock plunger up or down.

All doors may be opened with the inside door handle without lifting the lock plunger. Doors locked before closing will remain locked when closed.

The ignition key will unlock all the locks on your vehicle.

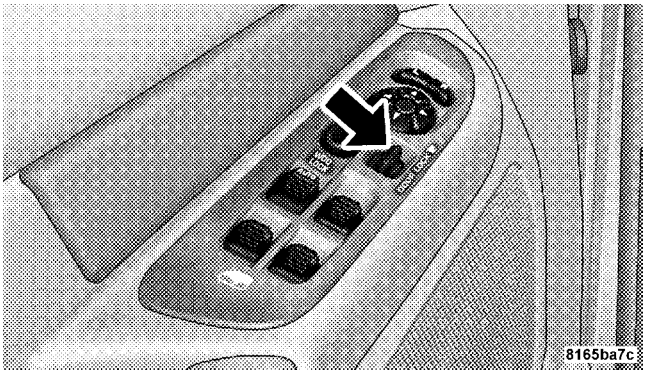
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

- **For personal security and safety in the event of an accident, lock the vehicle doors when you drive as well as when you park and leave the vehicle.**
- **Never leave children alone in a vehicle. Leaving unattended children in a vehicle is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Don't leave the key in the ignition. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.**

Power Door Locks — If Equipped

A power door LOCK switch is on each front door trim panel. Use this switch to lock or unlock the doors.



Power Door Lock Switch Location

If you press the power door LOCK switch while the key is in the ignition, and any front door is open, the power locks will not operate. This prevents you from accidentally locking your keys in the vehicle. Removing the key or closing the door will allow the locks to operate. A

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

chime will sound if the key is in the ignition switch and a door is open, as a reminder to remove the key.

Automatic Door Locks – If Equipped

If this feature is enabled, your door locks will lock automatically when the vehicle's speed exceeds 15 mph (24 km/h).

Automatic Door Lock Programming

This feature is enabled when your vehicle is shipped from the assembly plant and can be disabled by using the following procedure:

1. Enter your vehicle and close all doors.

2. Fasten your seat belt. (Fastening the seat belt will cancel any chiming that may confuse you during this programming procedure.)

3. Place the key into the ignition.

4. Within 15 seconds cycle the key from the LOCK position to the ON/RUN position a minimum of four times, ending in the LOCK position. **(Do not start the engine.)**

5. Within 30 seconds, press the driver's door LOCK switch in the LOCK direction.

6. A single chime will be heard to indicate the feature has been disabled.

7. To reactivate this feature, repeat the above steps.

8. If a chime is not heard, program mode was canceled before the feature could be disabled. If necessary, repeat the above procedure.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Auto Unlock On Exit — If Equipped
This feature unlocks all of the doors of the vehicle when any door is opened. This will occur only after the vehicle has been shifted into the PARK position after the vehicle has been driven (shifted out of PARK and all doors closed).

Auto Unlock On Exit Programming — If Equipped
Customer programming sequence to enable or disable the Auto Unlock feature:

1. Enter your vehicle and close all doors.

2. Fasten your seat belt. (Fastening the seat belt will cancel any chimes that may be confusing during this programming procedure.)

3. Insert the key into the ignition.

4. Within 15 seconds, cycle the key from the LOCK position to the ON/RUN position a minimum of four times, ending in the LOCK position. **(Do not start the engine)**.

5. Within 30 seconds, press the driver's door LOCK switch in the UNLOCK direction.

6. A single chime will sound to indicate the feature has been changed.

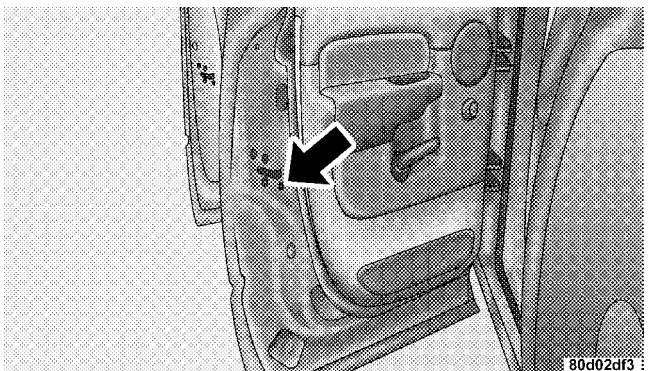
7. Repeat the above steps to alternate the availability of this feature.

8. If a chime is not heard, the program mode was canceled before the feature could be changed. If necessary, repeat the above procedure.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

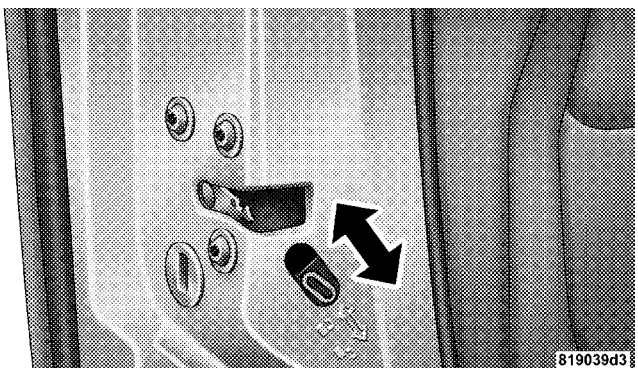
Child Protection Door Lock

To provide a safer environment for children riding in the rear seat, the rear doors of your vehicle have the child protection door lock system.



Child Protection Door Lock Location

To use the system, open each rear door, slide the lever UP to engage the locks and DOWN to disengage the child protection locks. When the system on a door is engaged, that door can only be opened by using the outside door handle even, if the inside door LOCK is in the UNLOCKED position.



Child Lock Control

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

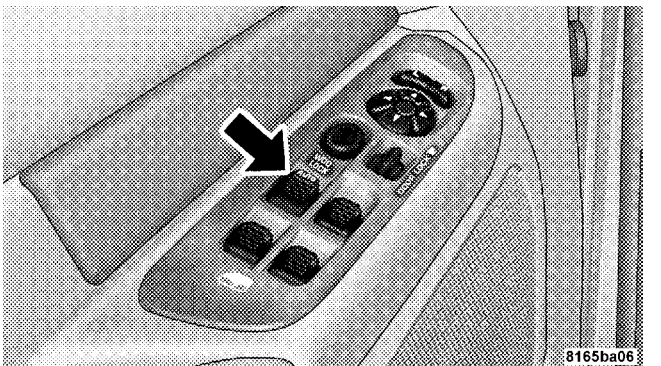
Avoid trapping anyone in a vehicle in a collision. Remember that the rear doors can only be opened from the outside when the child protection locks are engaged.

NOTE: After setting the child protection door lock system, always test the door from the inside to make certain it is in the desired position.

NOTE: For emergency exit with the system engaged, move the door lock switch to the UNLOCK position, roll down the window and open the door with the outside door handle.

WINDOWS

Power Windows—If Equipped



Power Window Switches

The control on the left front door panel has UP-DOWN switches that give you fingertip control of all power windows. There is a single opening and closing switch on the front passenger door for passenger window control

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

and on the rear doors of Quad Cab® and Mega Cab® models. The windows will operate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON or ACC position, and for ten minutes after the ignition is turned OFF or a front door is opened.

NOTE: The Power Accessory Delay feature will allow the power windows to operate for 10 minutes after the ignition is turned OFF.

WARNING!

Never leave children alone in a vehicle. Leaving unattended children in a vehicle is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Don't leave the key in the ignition. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

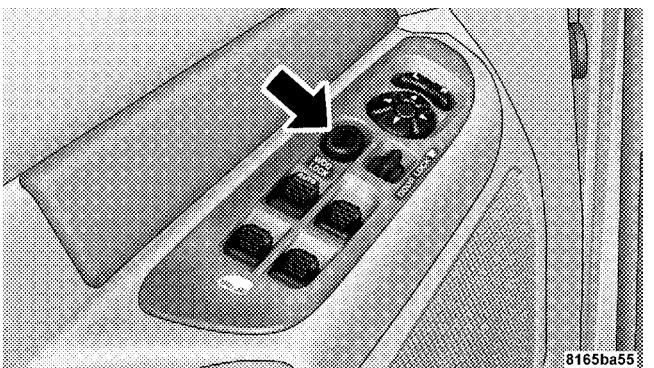
Auto Down (Driver's Side Only)

The driver's window switch has an Auto Down feature. Press the window switch past the detent, release, and the window will automatically go down.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Window LOCKOUT Switch (4-Door Models Only)

The window LOCKOUT switch on the driver's door allows you to disable the window control on the other doors. To disable the window controls on the other doors, press the window LOCK button. To enable the window controls, press the window LOCK button again.



Window Lockout Switch

Wind Buffeting

Wind buffeting can be described as the perception of pressure on the ears or a helicopter-type sound in the ears. Your vehicle may exhibit wind buffeting with the windows down or partially open positions. This is a normal occurrence and can be minimized. If the buffeting occurs with the rear windows open, open the front and rear windows together to minimize the buffeting.

OCCUPANT RESTRAINTS

Some of the most important safety features in your vehicle are the restraint systems. These include the front and rear seat belts for the driver and all passengers, front airbags for both the driver and front passenger and, if equipped, window bags for the driver and passengers seated next to a window. If you will be carrying children too small for adult-size belts, your seat belts also can be used to hold infant and child restraint systems.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Please pay close attention to the information in this section. It tells you how to use your restraint system properly to keep you and your passengers as safe as possible.

WARNING!

In a collision, you and your passengers can suffer much greater injuries if you are not properly buckled up. You can strike the interior of your vehicle or other passengers, or you can be thrown out of the vehicle. Always be sure you and others in your vehicle are buckled up properly.

Buckle up even though you are an excellent driver, even on short trips. Someone on the road may be a poor driver and cause a collision that includes you. This can happen far away from home or on your own street.

Research has shown that seat belts save lives, and that they can reduce the seriousness of injuries in a collision. Some of the worst injuries happen when people are thrown from the vehicle. Seat belts reduce the possibility of ejection and the risk of injury caused by striking the inside of the vehicle. **Everyone** in a motor vehicle should be belted at all times.

Lap/Shoulder Belts

All seating positions except the Quad Cab® front center seating position have combination lap/shoulder belts. The belt webbing retractor is designed to lock during very sudden stops or collisions. This feature allows the shoulder part of the belt to move freely with you under normal conditions. But in a collision, the belt will lock and reduce the risk of your striking the inside of the vehicle or being thrown out.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.

Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.

Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

WARNING!

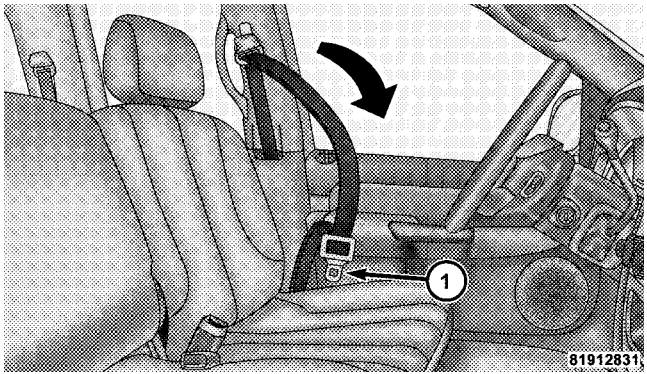
- **Wearing a seat belt incorrectly is dangerous. Seat belts are designed to go around the large bones of your body. These are the strongest parts of your body and can take the forces of a collision the best. Wearing your belt in the wrong place could make your injuries in a collision much worse. You might suffer internal injuries, or you could even slide out of part of the belt. Follow these instructions to wear your seat belt safely and to keep your passengers safe, too.**
- **Two people should never be belted into a single seat belt. People belted together can crash into one another in an accident, hurting one another badly. Never use a lap/shoulder belt or a lap belt for more than one person, no matter what their size.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Lap/Shoulder Belt Operating Instructions

1. Enter the vehicle and close the door. Sit back and adjust the seat.

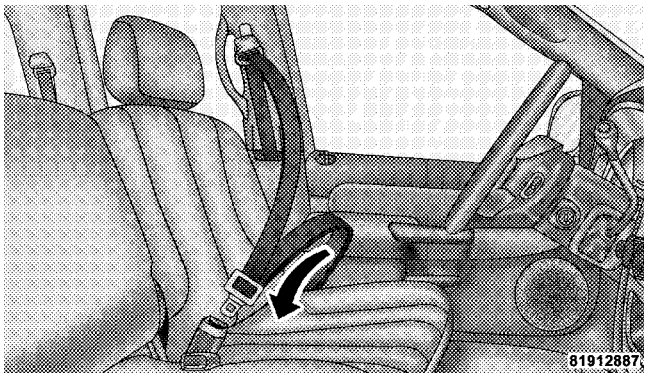
2. The seat belt latch plate is above the back of the front seat, next to your arm in the rear seat. Grasp the latch plate and pull out the belt. Slide the latch plate up the webbing as far as necessary to allow the belt to go around your lap.



1 — Latch Plate

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. When the belt is extended long enough to fit, insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”



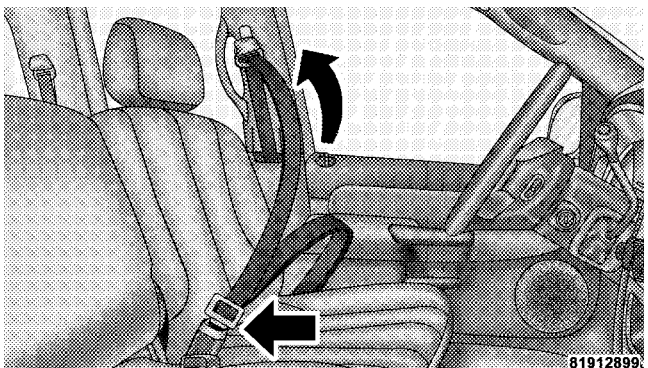
Latch Plate To Buckle

WARNING!

- **A belt buckled into the wrong buckle will not protect you properly. The lap portion could ride too high on your body, possibly causing internal injuries. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.**
- **A belt that is too loose will not protect you as well. In a sudden stop you could move too far forward, increasing the possibility of injury. Wear your seat belt snugly.**
- **A belt that is worn under your arm is very dangerous. Your body could strike the inside surfaces of the vehicle in a collision, increasing head and neck injury. And a belt worn under the arm can cause internal injuries. Ribs aren’t as strong as shoulder bones. Wear the belt over your shoulder so that your strongest bones will take the force in a collision.**
- **A shoulder belt placed behind will not protect you from injury during a collision. You are more likely to hit your head in a collision if you do not wear your shoulder belt. The lap and shoulder belt are meant to be used together.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Position the lap belt across your thighs, below your abdomen. To remove slack in the lap belt portion, pull up on the shoulder belt. To loosen the lap belt if it is too tight, tilt the latch plate and pull on the lap belt. A snug belt reduces the risk of sliding under the belt in a collision.



Removing Slack From Belt

WARNING!

- **A lap belt worn too high can increase the risk of internal injury in a collision. The belt forces won't be at the strong hip and pelvic bones, but across your abdomen. Always wear the lap belt as low as possible and keep it snug.**
- **A twisted belt can't do its job as well. In a collision it could even cut into you. Be sure the belt is straight. If you can't straighten a belt in your vehicle, take it to your authorized dealer and have it fixed.**

5. Position the shoulder belt on your chest so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the belt.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

6. To release the belt, push the red button on the buckle. The belt will automatically retract to its stowed position. If necessary, slide the latch plate down the webbing to allow the belt to retract fully.

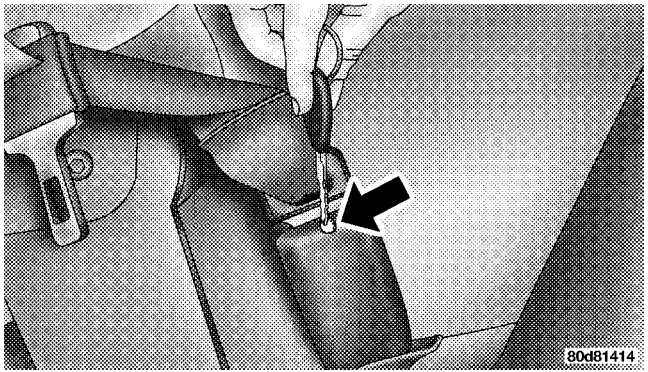
WARNING!

A frayed or torn belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system. Seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision if they have been damaged (bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.) or if the airbag deployed.

Regular Cab Front Center Three-Point Belt

1. The front center seat belt on the Regular Cab may be disconnected to open up utilization of the storage areas behind the front seats. The black latch plate can be detached from the black keyed seat belt buckle located on the inboard side of the passenger seat. Insert the vehicle ignition key into the center white slot on the black buckle. The black buckle latch plate can be removed when the key is pressed into the buckle. Allow the retractor to take up the surplus webbing, and the buckles will hang vertically from the cab back exit bezel, thus freeing up all the area behind the front seats.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



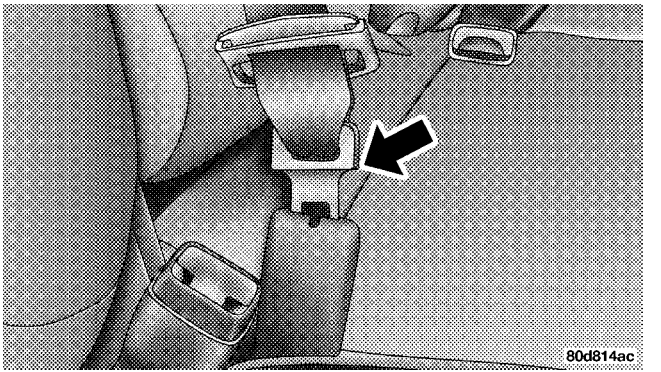
Detaching Buckle With Key

2. To reattach the seat belt to the front center seat, pull the black buckle latch plate forward from the cab back panel and insert it into the black keyed buckle until there is an audible click. Refer to the previous section for the proper seat belt usage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

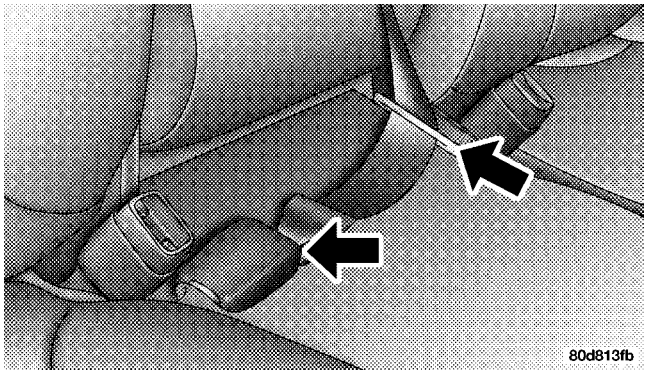
WARNING!

- **If the black latch and black buckle are not properly connected when the seat belt is used by an occupant, the seat belt will not be able to provide proper restraint and will increase the risk of injury in a collision.**
- **When reattaching the black latch and black buckle, ensure the seat belt webbing is not twisted. If the webbing is twisted, follow the preceding procedure to detach the black latch and black buckle, untwist the webbing, and reattach the black latch and black buckle.**



Inserting Latch Plate

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



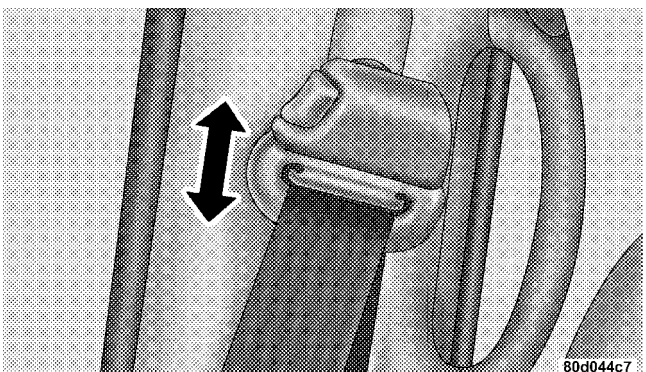
In-Use Position

WARNING!

If the black latch and buckle are not connected when the seat belt is used by an occupant, the seat belt will not restrain you properly.

Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage

In the front row outboard seats, the shoulder belt can be adjusted upward or downward to help position the belt away from your neck. Press the button located on the upper belt guide, and then move it up or down to the position that fits you best.



Shoulder Belt Adjustment

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

As a guide, if you are shorter than average, you will prefer a lower position, and if you are taller than average, you'll prefer a higher position. When you release the anchorage, try to move it up or down to make sure that it is locked in position.

Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR) Mode – If Equipped

Seatbelts, except for driver seatbelt, are equipped with an Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) and/or a cinching latch plate. Both types of seat belts are designed to keep the lap portion tight around the child restraint so that it is not necessary to use a locking clip. In seating positions that are equipped with an ALR retractor, it will make a ratcheting noise after all the webbing is extracted and allowed to return back. For additional information, refer to "Automatic Locking Mode" in the section.

To install a child restraint, pull enough of the seatbelt webbing from the retractor to route it through the belt path of the child restraint and slide the latch plate into the buckle. Next, pull all the seatbelt webbing, until it is fully extracted, from the retractor. Allow the belt to return to the retractor, pulling on the excess webbing to tighten the lap portion about the child restraint. (Any seatbelt system will loosen with time, so check the belt occasionally and pull it tight if necessary).

When To Use The Automatic Locking Mode:
Use this mode anytime a child safety seat is installed in a passenger seating position. Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible.

How To Disengage The Automatic Locking Mode:
Disconnect the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the Automatic Locking Mode and activate the Vehicle Sensitive (emergency) Locking Mode.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Center Lap Belts

The center seating position for the Quad Cab® front seat has a lap belt only. To fasten the lap belt, slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a ″click.″ To lengthen the lap belt, tilt the latch plate and pull. To remove slack, pull the loose end of the webbing. Wear the lap belt snug against the hips. Sit back and erect in the seat, then adjust the belt as tightly as is comfortable.

WARNING!

- **A lap belt worn too loose or too high is dangerous.**
- **A belt worn too loose can allow you to slip down and under the belt in a collision.**
- **A belt that is too loose or too high will apply crash forces to the abdomen, not to the stronger hip bones. In either case, the risk of internal injuries is greater. Wear a lap belt low and snug.**

Seat Belt Pretensioners — If Equipped

The seat belts for both front seating positions are equipped with pretensioning devices that are designed to remove slack from the seat belt system in the event of a collision. These devices improve the performance of the seat belt by assuring that the belt is tight about the occupant early in a collision. Pretensioners work for all size occupants, including those in child restraints.

NOTE: These devices are not a substitute for proper seat belt placement by the occupant. The seat belt still must be worn snugly and positioned properly.

The pretensioners are triggered by the airbag control module. Like the airbags, the pretensioners are single-use items. After a collision that is severe enough to deploy the airbags and pretensioners, both must be replaced.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Enhanced Seat Belt Reminder System (BeltAlert®)

If the driver's seat belt has not been buckled within 60 seconds of starting the vehicle and if the vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h), the Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert®) will alert the driver to buckle the seat belt. The driver should also instruct all other occupants to buckle their seat belts. If the driver unbuckles the seat belt while the vehicle is in motion an immediate chime will be heard and, the Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert®) will continue to chime and flash the Seat Belt Warning Light for 96 seconds or until the driver's seat belt is buckled. The Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert®) will be reactivated if the ignition is cycled, driver's seat belt is unbuckled for more than 10 seconds and the vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h).

The Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert®) can be enabled or disabled by your authorized dealer or by following these steps:

NOTE: The following steps must occur within the first 60 seconds of the ignition switch being turned to the ON or START position. The manufacturer does not recommend deactivating the Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert®).

1. With all doors closed and the ignition switch in any position except On or Start, buckle the driver's seat belt.

2. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position and wait for the Seat Belt Warning Light to turn off.

3. Within 60 seconds of turning the ignition switch to the ON position, unbuckle and then re-buckle the driver's seat belt at least three times within 10 seconds, ending with the seat belt buckled.

4. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position. A single chime will sound to signify that you have successfully completed the programming.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert®) can be reactivated by repeating this procedure.

NOTE: Although the Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert®) has been deactivated, the Seat Belt Warning Light will continue to illuminate while the driver's seat belt remains unbuckled.

Seat Belts and Pregnant Women

We recommend that pregnant women use seat belts throughout their pregnancies. Keeping the mother safe is the best way to keep the baby safe.

Pregnant women should wear the lap part of the belt across the thighs and as snug against the hips as possible. Keep the belt low so that it does not come across the abdomen. That way the strong bones of the hips will take the force if there is a collision.

Seat Belt Extender

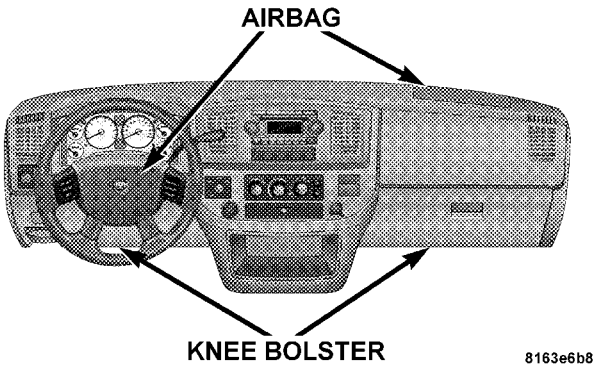
If a seat belt is too short, even when fully extended, your authorized dealer can provide you with a seat belt extender. This extender should be used only if the existing belt is not long enough. When it is not required, remove the extender and store it.

WARNING!

Using a seat belt extender when not needed can increase the risk of injury in a collision. Only use the seat belt extender when the lap belt is not long enough when it is worn low and snug, and in the recommended seating positions. Remove and store the extender when not needed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Driver And Right Front Passenger Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)—Airbags



This vehicle has airbags for both the driver and right front passenger as a supplement to the seat belt restraint systems. The driver's front airbag is mounted in the steering wheel. The passenger front airbag is mounted in the instrument panel, above the glove compartment. The words SRS / AIRBAG are embossed on the airbag covers.

NOTE: The front airbags are certified to the Federal regulations that allow less forceful deployment.

The front airbags have a multistage inflator design. This may allow the airbag to have different rates of inflation that are based on collision severity and occupant size.

This vehicle may also be equipped with window bags to protect the driver, front, and rear passengers sitting next to a window. If the vehicle is equipped with window bags, they are located above the side windows. Their covers are also labeled SRS AIRBAG.

NOTE: Airbag covers may not be obvious in the interior trim; but they will open to allow airbag deployment.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

- **Do not put anything on or around the front airbag covers or attempt to manually open them. You may damage the airbags and you could be injured because the airbags are no longer functional. These protective covers for the airbag cushions are designed to open only when the airbags are inflating.**
- **If your vehicle is equipped with window bags, do not stack luggage or other cargo up high enough to block the location of the window bag. The area where the window bag is located should remain free from any obstructions.**
- **If your vehicle is equipped with window bags, do not have any accessory items installed which will alter the roof, including adding a sunroof to your vehicle. Do not add roof racks that require permanent attachments (bolts or screws) for installation on the vehicle roof. Do not drill into the roof of the vehicle for any reason.**

NOTE: Do not use a clothing bar mounted to the coat hooks in this vehicle. A clothing bar will impede the proper performance of the window bags.

Along with the seat belts, front airbags work with the instrument panel knee bolsters to provide improved protection for the driver and front passenger. Window bags also work with seat belts to improve occupant protection.

The seat belts are designed to protect you in many types of collisions. The front airbags deploy in moderate to severe frontal collisions.

If your vehicle is so equipped, the window bag on the crash side of the vehicle is triggered in moderate to severe side collisions. But even in collisions where the airbags work, you need the seat belts to keep you in the right position for the airbags to protect you properly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Here are some simple steps you can follow to minimize the risk of harm from a deploying airbag.

1. Children 12 years and under should always ride buckled up in a rear seat in an appropriate child restraint.

Infants in rear-facing child restraints should **NEVER** ride in the front seat of a vehicle with a passenger front airbag, **unless the airbag is turned off** (2500/3500 Regular Cab Vehicles Only). An airbag deployment can cause severe injury or death to infants in that position. See the Passenger Airbag ON/OFF Switch section.

You should read the instructions provided with your child restraint to make sure that you are using it properly.

2. If your vehicle does not have a rear seat, see the Passenger Airbag ON/OFF Switch section.

3. Children that are not big enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt (see section on Child Restraints) should be secured in the rear seat in child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats. Older children who do not use child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats, should ride properly buckled up in the rear seat. Never allow children to slide the shoulder belt behind them or under their arm.

4. All occupants should use their lap and shoulder belts properly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. The driver and front passenger seats should be moved back as far as practical to allow the airbag room to inflate.

6. If your vehicle has window bags, do not lean against the door or window, airbags will inflate forcefully into the space between you and the door.

7. If the airbag system in this vehicle needs to be modified to accommodate a disabled person, contact the Customer Center. Phone numbers are provided in the ″If You Need Customer Assistance″ section later in this owner's manual.

WARNING!

- **Relying on the airbags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The airbags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions the airbags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belts even though you have airbags.**
- **Being too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel during airbag deployment could cause serious injury. Airbags need room to inflate. Sit back, comfortably extending your arms to reach the steering wheel or instrument panel.**
- **If the vehicle has window bags, they also need room to inflate. Do not lean against the door or window. Sit upright in the center of the seat.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Airbag System Components

The airbag system consists of the following:

- Occupant Restraint Controller
- Side Remote Acceleration Sensors (if equipped)
- Airbag Warning Light
- Driver Airbag
- Passenger Airbag
- Window Bags above Side Windows (if equipped)
- Steering Wheel and Column
- Instrument Panel
- Interconnecting Wiring
- Knee Impact Bolsters
- Front Acceleration Sensors (1500 Vehicles Only)
- Driver and Front Passenger Seat Belt Pretensioners (if equipped)
- Driver Seat Track Position Sensor (if equipped)
- Passenger Side Frontal Airbag ON / OFF Switch (2500 / 3500 Regular Cab Vehicles Only)
- Passenger Airbag Disable (PAD) Indicator Light (2500 / 3500 Regular Cab Vehicles Only)

How the Airbag System Works

- The **Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)** determines if a frontal collision is severe enough to require the airbags to inflate. The front airbag inflators are designed to provide different rates of airbag inflation from information provided by the ORC. The ORC will not detect rollover or rear collisions.

  The ORC also monitors the readiness of the electronic parts of the system whenever the ignition switch is in

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

the START or RUN positions. These include all of the items listed above except the steering wheel and column, and knee bolsters. If the key is in the OFF position, in the ACC position, or not in the ignition, the airbags are not on and will not inflate.

- Also, the ORC turns on the AIRBAG warning light in the instrument panel for six to eight seconds for a self-check when the ignition is first turned on. After the self-check, the AIRBAG warning light will turn off. If the ORC detects a malfunction in any part of the system, it turns on the AIRBAG warning light either momentarily or continuously. A single chime will sound if the light comes on again after initial start up.

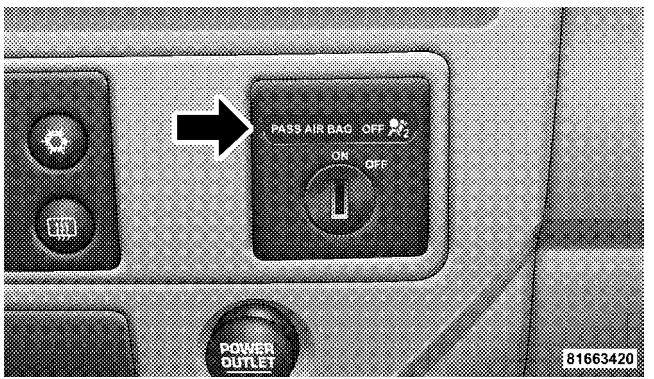
WARNING!

Ignoring the AIRBAG warning light in your instrument panel could mean you won't have the airbags to protect you in a collision. If the light does not come on, stays on after you start the vehicle, or if it comes on as you drive, have the airbag system checked right away.

- The **Passenger Airbag Disable (PAD) Indicator Light (if equipped)** (an amber light located in the center of the instrument panel), tells the driver and front passenger when the front passenger airbag is turned off. The PAD indicator light illuminates the words ″PASS AIR BAG OFF″ to show that the passenger airbag will not inflate during a collision requiring airbags. The PAD light will illuminate when the passenger frontal airbag has been turned off by using the manual

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

ON / OFF switch (2500 / 3500 Regular Cab Vehicles Only). See Passenger Airbag ON / OFF Switch – (2500 / 3500 Regular Cab Vehicles Only) in this section for additional information.



- The **Driver and Passenger Airbag/Inflator Units** are located in the center of the steering wheel and the right side of the instrument panel. When the ORC detects a collision requiring the airbags, it signals the inflator units. A large quantity of nontoxic gas is generated to inflate the front airbags. Different airbag inflation rates may be possible based on collision severity and occupant size. The steering wheel hub trim cover and the upper right side of the instrument panel separate and fold out of the way as the bags inflate to their full size. The bags fully inflate in about 50 - 70 milliseconds. This is about half of the time it takes to blink your eyes. The bags then quickly deflate while helping to restrain the driver and front passenger. The driver's front airbag gas is vented through vent holes in the sides of the airbag. The passenger's front airbag gas is vented through vent holes in the sides of the airbag. In this way the airbags do not interfere with your control of the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- The **Side Impact SRS Window Bags** are designed to activate only in certain side collisions. When the ORC (with side impact option) detects a collision requiring the window bags to inflate, it signals the inflators on the crash side of the vehicle. A quantity of nontoxic gas is generated to inflate the window bag. The inflating window bag pushes the outside edge of the headliner out of the way and covers the window. The airbag inflates in about 30 milliseconds (about one quarter of the time it takes to blink your eyes) with enough force to injure you if you are not belted and seated properly, or if items are positioned in the area where the window bag inflates. This especially applies to children. The window bag is only about 3-1/2 in (9 cm) thick when it is inflated.

NOTE: At no time should any supplemental restraint system (SRS) component or SRS-related component or fastener be modified or replaced with any part except those which are approved by DaimlerChrysler/Mopar®.

- The **Knee Impact Bolsters** help protect the knees of the driver and the front passenger, and positions them for the best interaction with the front airbag.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch – (2500/3500 Regular Cab Vehicles Only)

The passenger front airbag is to be turned off only if the passenger:

- is an infant (less than one-year old) who must ride in the front seat because there is no rear seat, because the rear seat is too small for a rear-facing infant restraint or because the infant has a medical condition which makes it necessary for the driver to be able to see the infant;
- is a child, age 1 to 12 who must ride in the front seat because there is no rear seat, because there is no rear seat position available, or because the child has a medical condition which makes it necessary for the driver to be able to see the child;
- has a medical condition which makes passenger airbag inflation (deployment) a greater risk for the passenger than the risk of hitting the dashboard (instrument panel) or windshield in a crash.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Whenever an airbag is turned off, even a lap/shoulder belted passenger may hit their head, neck, or chest on the dashboard (instrument panel) or windshield in a crash. This may result in serious injury or death.

To Shut Off the Passenger Airbag (2500/3500 Regular Cab Vehicles Only)

Place the ignition key in the Passenger Airbag ON/OFF Switch, push the key in and turn clockwise, and remove the key from the switch. This will shut off the passenger side airbag. The OFF light near the switch will illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

To Turn On the Passenger Airbag (2500/3500 Regular Cab Vehicles Only)

Place the ignition key in the Passenger Airbag ON/OFF Switch, push the key in and turn counterclockwise, and remove the key from the switch. This will turn ON the passenger airbag. The OFF light near the switch will be off when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

If A Deployment Occurs

The airbag system is designed to deploy the airbags when the impact sensors detect a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, to help restrain the driver and front passenger, and then immediately deflate.

NOTE: A frontal collision that is not severe enough to need airbag protection will not activate the system. This does not mean something is wrong with the airbag system.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If you do have a collision which deploys the airbags, any or all of the following may occur:

- The nylon airbag material may sometimes cause abrasions and/or skin reddening to the driver and front passenger as the airbags deploy and unfold. The abrasions are similar to friction rope burns or those you might get sliding along a carpet or gymnasium floor. They are not caused by contact with chemicals. They are not permanent and normally heal quickly. However, if you haven't healed significantly within a few days, or if you have any blistering, see your doctor immediately. As the airbags deflate you may see some smoke-like particles. The particles are a normal by-product of the process that generates the nontoxic gas used for airbag inflation. These airborne particles may irritate the skin, eyes, nose, or throat. If you have skin or eye irritation, rinse the area with cool water. For nose or throat irritation, move to fresh air. If the irritation continues, see your doctor. If these particles settle on your clothing, follow the garment manufacturer's instructions for cleaning.
- It is not advisable to drive your vehicle after the airbags have deployed. If you are involved in another collision, the airbags will not be in place to protect you.

WARNING!

Deployed airbags and seat belt pretensioners (if equipped) cannot protect you in another collision. Have the airbags, seat belt pretensioners, and the front passenger seat belt retractor assembly, replaced by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintaining Your Airbag System

WARNING!

- **Modifications to any part of the airbag system could cause it to fail when you need it. You could be injured if the airbag system is not there to protect you. Do not modify the components or wiring, including adding any kind of badges or stickers to the steering wheel hub trim cover or the upper right side of the instrument panel. Do not modify the front bumper, vehicle body structure, or add aftermarket side steps or running boards.**
- **You need proper knee impact protection in a collision. Do not mount or locate any aftermarket equipment on or behind the knee bolsters.**
- **It is dangerous to try to repair any part of the airbag system yourself. Be sure to tell anyone who works on your vehicle that it has an airbag system.**

NOTE: Perchlorate Material – special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate

Enhanced Accident Response System

If the airbags deploy after an impact and the electrical system remains functional, vehicles equipped with power door locks will unlock automatically. In addition, approximately five seconds after the vehicle has stopped moving, the interior lights will light until the ignition switch is turned off.

Airbag Light

You will want to have the airbags ready to inflate for your protection in an impact. While the airbag system is designed to be maintenance free, if any of the following occurs, have an authorized dealer service the system promptly:

- The airbag light does not come on or flickers during the six to eight seconds when the ignition switch is first turned ON.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- The light remains on or flickers after the six to eight-second interval.
- The light flickers or comes on and remains on while driving.

NOTE: If the speedometer, tachometer or any engine-related gauges are not working, the airbag control module may also be disabled. The airbags may not be ready to inflate for your protection. Promptly check fuse block for blown fuses. Refer to the label located on the inside of the fuse block cover for the proper airbag fuses. See your authorized dealer if the fuse is good.

Event Data Recorder (EDR)

In the event of an accident, your vehicle is designed to record up to five seconds of specific vehicle data parameters (see the following list) in an event data recorder prior to the moment of airbag deployment and up to a quarter-second of high-speed deceleration data during and/or after airbag deployment. EDR data are ONLY recorded if an airbag deploys and are otherwise unavailable.

NOTE: Under certain circumstances, EDR data may not be recorded (e.g., loss of battery power).

In conjunction with other data gathered during a complete accident investigation, the electronic data may be used by DaimlerChrysler Corporation and others to learn more about the possible causes of crashes and associated injuries in order to assess and improve vehicle performance. In addition to crash investigations initiated by DaimlerChrysler Corporation, such investigations may be requested by customers, insurance carriers, government officials, and professional crash researchers, such as those associated with universities, and with hospital and insurance organizations.

In the event that an investigation is undertaken by DaimlerChrysler Corporation (regardless of initiative), the company or its designated representative will first

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

obtain permission of the appropriate custodial entity for the vehicle (usually the vehicle owner or lessee) before accessing the electronic data stored, unless ordered to download data by a court with legal jurisdiction (i.e., pursuant to a warrant). A copy of the data will be provided to the custodial entity upon request. General data that does not identify particular vehicles or crashes may be released for incorporation in aggregate crash databases, such as those maintained by the U.S. government and various states. Data of a potentially sensitive nature, such as would identify a particular driver, vehicle, or crash, will be treated confidentially. Confidential data will not be disclosed by DaimlerChrysler Corporation to any third party except when:

1. Used for research purposes, such as to match data with a particular crash record in an aggregate database, provided confidentiality of personal data is thereafter preserved

2. Used in defense of litigation involving a DaimlerChrysler Corporation product

3. Requested by police under a legal warrant

4. Otherwise required by law

Data Parameters that May Be Recorded:

- Diagnostic trouble code(s) (DTC's) and warning lamp status for electronically-controlled safety systems, including the airbag system
- Airbag disable lamp status (if equipped)
- ″Time″ of airbag deployment (in terms of ignition cycles and vehicle mileage)
- Airbag deployment level (if applicable)
- Impact acceleration and angle
- Seat Belt status

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Brake status (service and parking brakes)
- Accelerator status (including vehicle speed)
- Engine control status (including engine speed)
- Transmission gear selection
- Cruise control status
- Traction / stability control status
- Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) status (if equipped)

Child Restraint

Everyone in your vehicle needs to be buckled up all the time — babies and children, too. Every state in the United States and all Canadian provinces require that small children ride in proper restraint systems. This is the law, and you can be prosecuted for ignoring it.

Children 12 years and younger should ride properly buckled up in a rear seat, if available. According to crash statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats rather than in the front.

WARNING!

In a collision, an unrestrained child, even a tiny baby, can become a missile inside the vehicle. The force required to hold even an infant on your lap can become so great that you could not hold the child, no matter how strong you are. The child and others could be badly injured. Any child riding in your vehicle should be in a proper restraint for the child's size.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Infants and Small Children

There are different sizes and types of restraints for children from newborn size to the child almost large enough for an adult safety belt. Use the restraint that is correct for your child:

- Safety experts recommend that children ride rearward-facing in the vehicle until they are at least one year old and weigh at least 20 lbs (9 kg). Two types of child restraints can be used rearward-facing: infant carriers and ″convertible″ child seats. Both types of child restraints are held in the vehicle by the lap/shoulder belt.
- The infant carrier is only used rearward-facing in the vehicle. It is recommended for children who weigh up to about 20 lbs (9 kg). ″Convertible″ child seats can be used either rearward-facing or forward-facing in the vehicle. Convertible child seats often have a higher weight limit in the rearward-facing direction than infant carriers do, so they can be used rearward-facing by children who weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) but are less than one year old.
- Rearward-facing child seats must **NEVER** be used in the front seat of a vehicle with a front passenger airbag unless the airbag is turned off. An airbag deployment could cause severe injury or death to infants in this position.
- Children who weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) and who are older than one year can ride forward-facing in the vehicle. Forward-facing child seats and convertible child seats used in the forward-facing direction are for children who weigh 20 to 40 lbs (9 to 18 kg) and who are older than one year. These child seats are also held in the vehicle by the lap/shoulder belt.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- The belt-positioning booster seat is for children weighing more than 40 lbs (18 kg), but who are still too small to fit the vehicle's seat belts properly. If the child cannot sit with knees bent over the vehicle's seat cushion while the child's back is against the seat back, they should use a belt-positioning-booster seat. The child and booster seat are held in the vehicle by the lap/shoulder belt. (Some booster seats are equipped with a front shield and are held in the vehicle by the lap portion.) For further information refer to www.seatcheck.org.

WARNING!

- **Improper installation can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. It could come loose in a collision. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.**
- **A rearward facing child restraint should only be used in a rear seat, or in the front seat if the passenger's front airbag is OFF. If the airbag is left ON, a rearward facing child restraint in the front seat may be struck by a deploying passenger airbag which may cause severe or fatal injury to the infant.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Here are some tips for getting the most out of your child restraint:

- Before buying any restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets all applicable Safety Standards. We also recommend that you make sure that you can install the child restraint in the vehicle where you will use it before you buy it.
- The restraint must be appropriate for your child's weight and height. Check the label on the restraint for weight and height limits.
- Carefully follow the instructions that come with the restraint. If you install the restraint improperly, it may not work when you need it.
- The passenger seat belts are equipped with Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR), which are designed to keep the lap portion tight around the child restraint so that it is not necessary to use a locking clip. Pull the belt from the retractor until there is enough to allow you to pass through the child restraint and slide the latch plate into the buckle. Then pull on the belt until it is fully extended from the retractor. Allow the belt to return to the retractor, pulling on the excess webbing to tighten the lap portion about the child restraint. Refer to the "Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR) Mode," earlier in this section.
- In the rear seat, you may have trouble tightening the lap/shoulder belt on the child restraint because the buckle or latch plate is too close to the belt path opening on the restraint. Disconnect the latch plate from the buckle and twist the short buckle-end belt several times to shorten it. Insert the latch plate into the buckle with the release button facing out.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- If the belt still can't be tightened, or if pulling and pushing on the restraint loosens the belt, disconnect the latch plate from the buckle, turn the latch plate around, and insert the latch plate into the buckle again. If you still can't make the child restraint secure, try a different seating position.
- Buckle the child into the seat according to the child restraint manufacturer's directions.
- When your child restraint is not in use, secure it in the vehicle with the seat belt or remove it from the vehicle. Do not leave it loose in the vehicle. In a sudden stop or collision, it could strike the occupants or seatbacks and cause serious personal injury.

WARNING!

Improper installation can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. It could come loose in a collision. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.

Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren (LATCH)

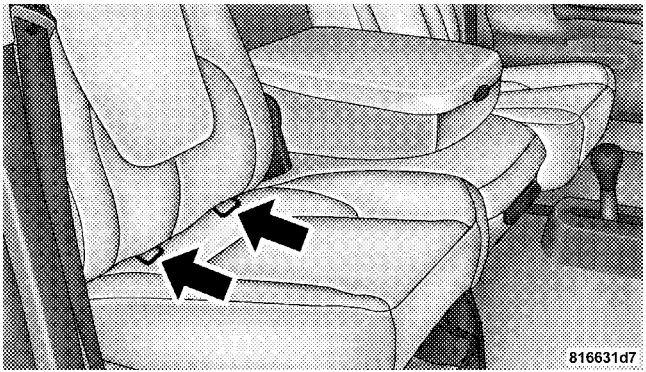
Each vehicle is equipped with the child restraint anchorage system called LATCH, which stands for Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren. LATCH child restraint anchorage systems are installed in the 2500 / 3500 Regular Cab passenger seat position and the Quad Cab® rear seat outboard positions. LATCH-equipped seating positions feature both lower anchor bars, located at the back of the

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

seat cushion, and tether strap anchorages, located behind the seatback. (Refer to Child Restraint Tether Anchor later in this section.)

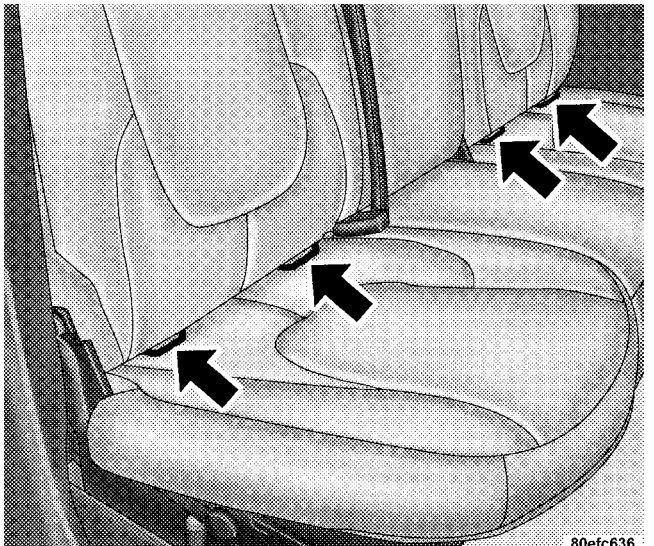
Identification dots are located above the standard cab front seat lower anchorages as a guide for locating lower anchors.

NOTE: For children riding in the front seat of a Regular Cab model, refer to the "Passenger Airbag ON/OFF Switch" located in this section.

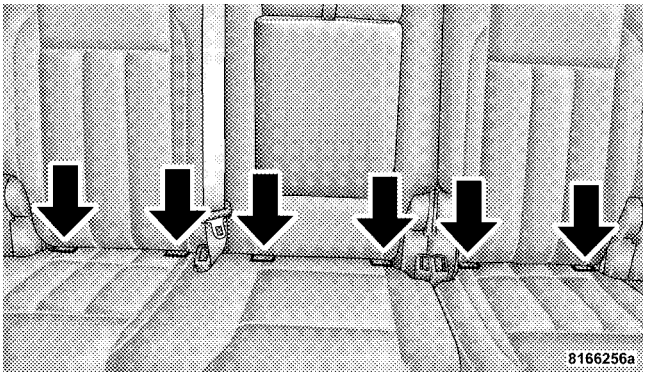


Regular Cab Passenger Seat

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Quad Cab® Rear Outboard Seats



Mega Cab® Rear Seats

Child restraint systems having attachments designed to connect to the lower anchorages are now available. Child restraints having tether straps and hooks for connection to the seatback tether anchorage, have been available for

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

some time. In fact, many child restraint manufacturers will provide add-on tether strap kits for some of their older products.

Because the lower anchorages are to be introduced to passenger carrying vehicles over a period of years, child restraint systems having attachments for those anchorages will continue to have features for installation in vehicles using the lap or lap / shoulder belt. They will also have tether straps, and you are urged to take advantage of all of the available attachments provided with your child restraint in any vehicle.

NOTE: When using the LATCH attaching system to install a child restraint, please ensure that all seat belts not being used for occupant restraints are stowed and out of reach of children. It is recommended that before installing the child restraint, buckle the seat belt so the seat belt is tucked behind the child restraint and out of reach. If the buckled seat belt interferes with the child restraint installation, instead of tucking the seat belt behind the child restraint, route the seat belt through the child restraint belt path and then buckle it. This should stow the seat belt out of the reach of an inquisitive child. Remind all children in the vehicle that the seat belts are not toys and should not be played with, and never leave your child unattended in the vehicle.

NOTE: If your child restraint seat is not LATCH compatible, install the restraint using the vehicle seat belt.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Installing the Child Restraint System

WARNING!

Do not install child restraint systems equipped with LATCH attachments in the center position of a Quad Cab® model rear seat. The LATCH anchorages in this seat are designed for the two outboard seating positions only. A child may be placed in the rear center seating position of a Quad Cab® model using the seat belt and child tether anchorage. Failure to follow this may result in serious or fatal injury.

We urge that you carefully follow the directions of the manufacturer when installing your child restraint. Many, but not all, restraint systems will be equipped with separate straps on each side, with each having a hook or connector and a means for adjusting the tension in the strap. Forward-facing toddler restraints and some rearward-facing infant restraints will also be equipped with a tether strap, a hook and means for adjusting the tension in the strap.

In general, you will first loosen the adjusters on the lower straps and tether straps so that you can more easily attach the hook or connector to the lower anchorages and tether anchorages. Then tighten all three straps as you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the seat.

Not all child restraint systems will be installed as we have described here. Again, carefully follow the instructions that come with the child restraint system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Improper installation of a child restraint to the LATCH anchorages can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.

Child Restraint Tether Anchor

Child restraints having tether straps and hooks for connection to tether anchors have been available for some time. In fact, many child restraint manufacturers will provide add-on tether strap kits for their older products. Regular Cab models of Ram Pickups have two tether anchorages, one each behind the front center and right seats. Quad Cab® models have three anchorages, one behind each of the rear seats.

WARNING!

An incorrectly anchored tether strap could lead to seat failure and injury to the child. In a collision, the seat could come loose and allow the child to crash into the inside of the vehicle or other passengers, or even be thrown from the vehicle. Use only the anchor positions directly behind the child seat to secure a child restraint top tether strap. Follow the instructions below. See your authorized dealer for help, if necessary.

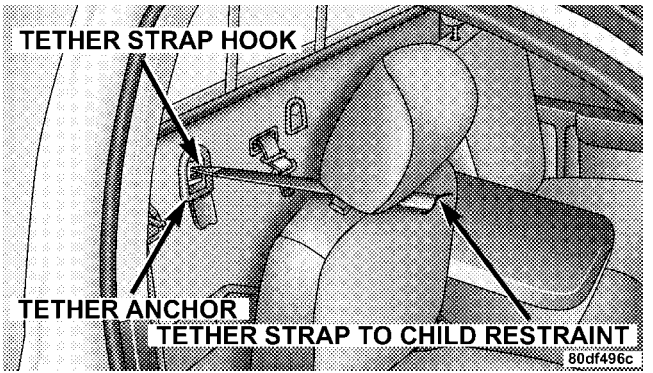
Tether Anchorage Points at the Right and Center Front Seat (Regular Cab - All Seats)

1. Place the child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seatback under the head restraint to the tether anchor directly behind the seat.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Lift the cover (if so equipped), and attach the hook to the square opening in the sheet metal.

3. Install the child restraint and remove the slack in the tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.



Regular Cab With Any Bench Seat

Multiple Child Restraint Installation Sequence - (Quad Cab® Rear Seats)

1. Obtain tether straps by raising the head restraints and reaching between the rear glass and rear seat. The tether strap may be retained with an elastic band. Accessibility to the tether strap is greatly improved by raising the seat cushion to the "up" position. Remove the elastic before use.

2. Place a child restraint on each outboard rear seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach under the head restraint to the tether anchor directly behind the seat and then to the anchor directly behind the center rear seat.

3. Pass each tether strap hook under the head restraint and through the loop of webbing behind the child seat.

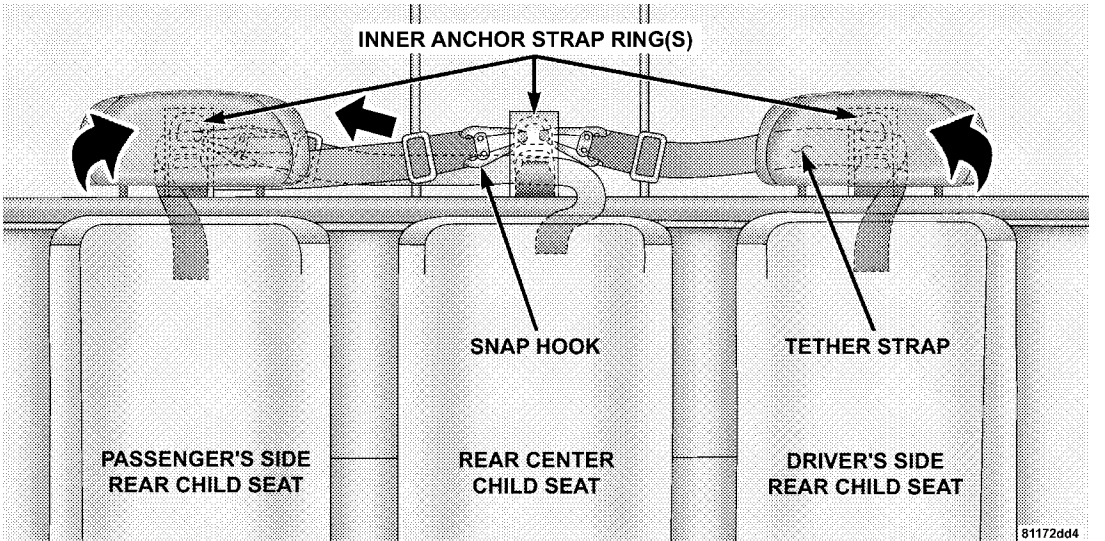
4. Route each tether strap to the anchor behind the center seat, and attach the hooks to the metal ring.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. Place a child restraint on the center rear seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach under the head restraint to the tether anchor directly behind the seat and to the anchor directly behind the right seat.

6. Install each child restraint and remove the slack in the tether strap according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Multiple Child Restraints

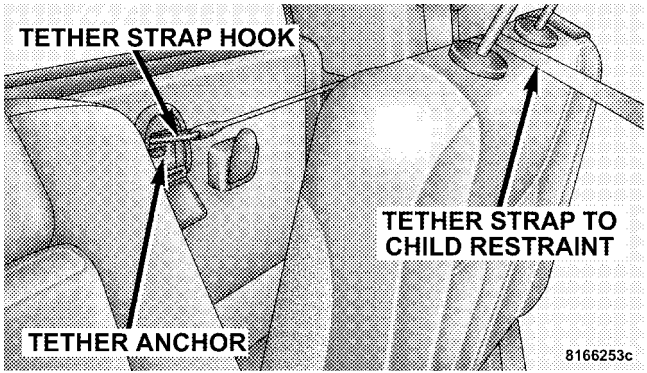
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tether Anchorage Points at All Three Seating Positions (Mega Cab®)

1. Place the child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seatback under the head restraint to the tether anchor directly behind the seat.

2. Lift the cover, and attach the hook to the square opening in the sheet metal.

3. Install the child restraint and remove the slack in the tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.



Mega Cab Tether Anchor

Children Too Large for Booster Seats

Children who are large enough to wear the shoulder belt comfortably, and whose legs are long enough to bend over the front of the seat when their back is against the seatback, should use the lap/shoulder belt in a rear seat.

- Make sure that the child is upright in the seat.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- The lap portion should be low on the hips and as snug as possible.
- Check belt fit periodically. A child's squirming or slouching can move the belt out of position.

If the shoulder belt contacts the face or neck, move the child closer to the center of the vehicle. Never allow a child to put the shoulder belt under an arm or behind their back.

Transporting Pets

Airbags deploying in the front seat could harm your pet. An unrestrained pet will be thrown about and possibly injured, or injure a passenger during panic braking or in a collision. Pets should be restrained in the rear seat in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts.

ENGINE BREAK-IN RECOMMENDATIONS

A long break-in period is not required for the engine in your new vehicle. Drive moderately during the first 300 miles (500 km). After the initial 60 mi (100 km), speeds up to 50 or 55 mph (80 or 90 km/h) are desirable. While cruising, brief full-throttle acceleration, within the limits of local traffic laws, contributes to a good break-in.

Avoid wide-open throttle acceleration in low gear.

The engine oil installed in the engine at the factory is a high-quality, energy-conserving type lubricant. Oil changes should be consistent with the anticipated climatic conditions under which vehicle operation will occur. The recommended viscosity and quality grades are discussed in Section 7 under Maintenance Procedures, Engine Oil.

NON-DETERGENT OR STRAIGHT MINERAL OILS MUST NEVER BE USED.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

A new engine may consume some oil during its first few thousand miles (kilometers) of operation. This is a normal part of the break-in and is not an indication of difficulty.

CAUTION!

- **During the first 500 mi (805 km) your new vehicle is driven, do not tow a trailer. Doing so may damage your axles, driveline and vehicle.**
- **Limit your speed to 50 mph (80 km/h) during the first 500 mi (805 km) of towing.**

SAFETY TIPS

Transporting Passengers

This vehicle is designed to carry passengers in the cab only. For safety reasons, NEVER TRANSPORT PASSENGERS IN THE CARGO AREA.

WARNING!

- **It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.**
- **Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.**
- **Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Exhaust Gas

WARNING!

Exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, a potentially toxic gas that, by itself, is colorless and odorless. To avoid inhaling these gases, the following precautions should be observed:

- Do not run the engine in a closed garage or in confined areas any longer than needed to move your vehicle in or out of the area.
- If it is necessary to sit in a parked vehicle with the engine running for more than a short period, adjust your climate control system to force outside air into the vehicle. Set the blower at high speed and the controls in any position except OFF or MAX A/C.
- The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

Be aware of changes in the sound of the exhaust system, exhaust fumes detected inside the vehicle, or damage to the underside or rear of the vehicle. Have a competent authorized mechanic inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken, damaged, deteriorated or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, inspect the exhaust system each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace or adjust as required.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle

Heater Defroster Ducts

Inspect the heater defroster ducts for proper operation. Check for proper airflow through all defroster ducts. If there are any questions regarding the operation of your heater defroster ducts, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Seat Belts

Inspect the belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays and loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system.

Seat belt assemblies must be replaced after an accident if they have been damaged (bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.) or if the front airbags have deployed. If there is any question regarding belt or retractor condition, replace the belt.

Airbag Light

The light should come on and remain on for six to eight seconds as a bulb check when the ignition switch is first turned ON. If the light is not lit during starting, see your authorized dealer. If the light stays on, flickers or comes on while driving, have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If there is a problem with the airbag light, the seat belt light will flash.

Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle

Tires

Examine tires for tread wear or uneven wear patterns. Check for stones, nails, glass or other objects lodged in the tread.

Inspect for tread cuts or sidewall cracks. Check wheel nuts for tightness and tires for proper pressure.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Lights

Check the operation of all exterior lights. Check turn signal and high beam indicator lights on the instrument panel.

Door Latches

Check for positive closing, latching and locking.

Fluid Leaks

Check area under the vehicle after overnight parking for fuel, water, oil, or other fluid leaks. Also, if fuel fumes are detected, the cause should be located and corrected.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

CONTENTS

- Mirrors 86
  - Inside Mirror 86
  - Automatic Dimming Mirror – If Equipped 87
  - Outside Mirrors 87
  - Exterior Mirrors Folding Feature 88
  - Electronic Power Mirrors – If Equipped 88
  - Electric Rear Window Defroster And Heated Sideview Mirrors – If Equipped 89
  - Trailer Towing Mirrors – If Equipped 89
- Hands-Free Communication (UConnect®) — If Equipped 91
  - Operation 93
  - Phone Call Features 100
  - UConnect® System Features 102
  - Advanced Phone Connectivity 107
  - Things You Should Know About Your UConnect® System 109
  - General Information 117

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Seats 117
□ 40-20-40 Front Seat 118
□ Reclining Seats (1500 Regular And Quad Cab® Models) 119
□ Reclining Seats (2500/3500/Mega Cab Models) 120
□ Adjustable Head Restraints 121
□ Manual Rotary Lumbar Support Adjustment — If Equipped 122
□ Power Seats (1500 Regular And Quad Cab® Models) — If Equipped 122
□ Power Seats (2500/3500/Mega Cab Models) — If Equipped 124
□ Rear Seat Features — Mega Cab Models 126
□ Heated Seats — If Equipped 131
■ To Open And Close The Hood 133
■ Lights 134
□ Interior Lights 135
□ Battery Saver 136
□ Headlamp Delay 136
□ Headlights, Parking Lights, Panel Lights 136
□ Daytime Running Lights (Canada Only And Fleet Vehicles) 137
□ Lights-On Reminder 138
□ Fog Lights — If Equipped 138
□ Cargo Light — If Equipped 138
□ Multifunction Control Lever 139

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Windshield Wipers And Washers 141
□ Windshield Wipers 141
□ Windshield Washers 142
■ Tilt Steering Column 143
■ Driver Adjustable Pedals — If Equipped 144
□ Adjustment 144
■ Electronic Speed Control — If Equipped 145
□ To Activate 146
□ To Set At A Desired Speed 146
□ To Deactivate 146
□ To Resume Speed 146
□ To Vary The Speed Setting 146
□ To Accelerate For Passing 147
■ Overhead Console — If Equipped 148
□ Courtesy/Reading Lights 149
■ Overhead Console With Compass/Temperature Mini-Trip Computer — If Equipped 149
□ US/M Button 150
□ Reset Button 150
□ Global Reset 151
□ Step Button 151
□ Average Fuel Economy (AVG ECO) 151
□ Distance To Empty (DTE) 152
□ Trip Odometer (ODO) 153
□ Elapsed Time (ET) 153
□ C/T Button 153

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- □ Automatic Compass Calibration 154
- □ Manual Compass Calibration 154
- □ Recalibrating The Compass 154
- □ Outside Temperature 156

■ Garage Door Opener — If Equipped 156

- □ Programming HomeLink® 158
- □ Gate Operator/Canadian Programming 161
- □ Using HomeLink® 162
- □ Reprogramming A Single HomeLink® Button .162
- □ Security 162
- □ Troubleshooting Tips 162
- □ General Information 163

■ Power Sunroof — If Equipped 163

- □ Open Sunroof - Express Mode 164
- □ Closing Sunroof - Express 164
- □ Pinch Protect Feature 165
- □ Pinch Protect Override 165
- □ Venting Sunroof - Express 165
- □ Sunshade Operation 165
- □ Wind Buffeting 166
- □ Sunroof Maintenance 166
- □ Sunroof Fully Closed 166

■ Electrical Power Outlets 166

■ Cigar Lighter And Ash Receiver 168

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Cupholders 169
□ Front Instrument Panel Cupholders (40–20–40 Seats) — Automatic Transmission . .169
□ Front Instrument Panel Cupholders (Bucket Seats) — Automatic Transmission 171
□ Front Instrument Panel Cupholders — Manual Transmission 171
□ Rear Cupholder (Quad Cab®) — If Equipped 172
□ Rear Cupholder (Mega Cab®) 172
■ Storage 173
□ Center Storage Compartment (40–20–40 Seat) – If Equipped 173
□ Center Storage Compartment (Bucket Seats) – If Equipped 174
□ Storage And Seats (Quad Cab® Models) 176
□ Storage And Seats (Mega Cab Models) 177
□ Plastic Grocery Bag Retainers (Mega Cab Models) 178
■ Fold Flat Load Floor — If Equipped 179
■ Rear Window Features 182
□ Electric Rear Window Defroster And Heated Sideview Mirrors — If Equipped 182
□ Power Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped . .182
□ Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped 183
■ Pickup Box 183
■ Slide-In Campers 185
□ Camper Applications 185
■ Easy-Off Tailgate 185

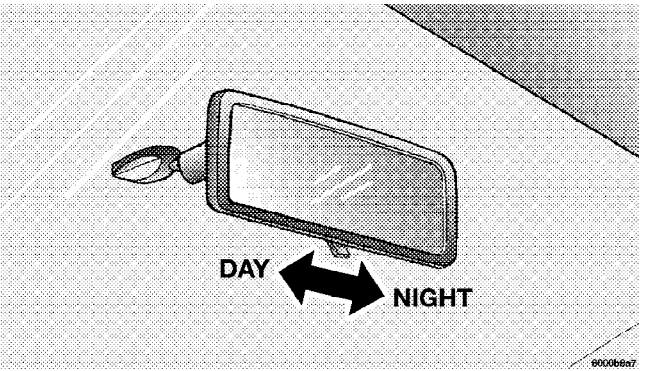
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

MIRRORS

Inside Mirror

The mirror should be adjusted to center on the view through the rear window.

Annoying headlight glare can be reduced by moving the small control under the mirror to the night position (toward rear of vehicle). The mirror should be adjusted while set in the day position (toward windshield).

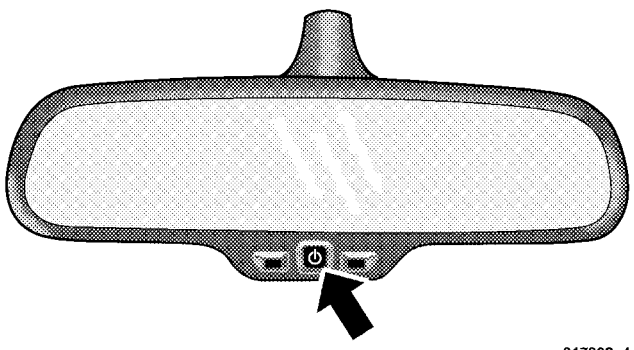


Adjusting Rearview Mirror

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic Dimming Mirror – If Equipped

This mirror automatically adjusts for annoying headlight glare from vehicles behind you. You can turn the feature on or off by pressing the button at the base of the mirror. A light in the button will indicate when the dimming feature is activated.



817892c4

Automatic Dimming Mirror

CAUTION!

To avoid damage to the mirror during cleaning, never spray any cleaning solution directly onto the mirror. Apply the solution onto a clean cloth and wipe the mirror clean.

Outside Mirrors

To receive maximum benefit, adjust the outside mirror(s) to center on the adjacent lane of traffic with a slight overlap of the view obtained on the inside mirror.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

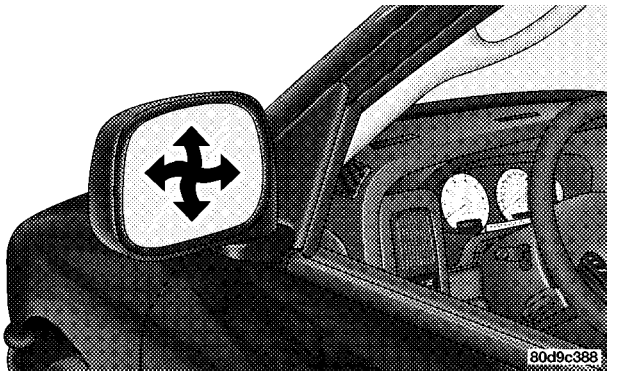
WARNING!

Vehicles and other objects seen in a right side convex mirror will look smaller and farther away than they really are. Relying too much on your right side convex mirror could cause you to collide with another vehicle or other object. Use your inside mirror when judging the size or distance of a vehicle seen in the right side convex mirror. Some vehicles will not have a convex right side mirror.

Exterior Mirrors Folding Feature

All 6 x 9 inch exterior mirrors are hinged and may be moved either forward or rearward to resist damage. The hinges have three detent positions; full forward, full rearward, and normal.

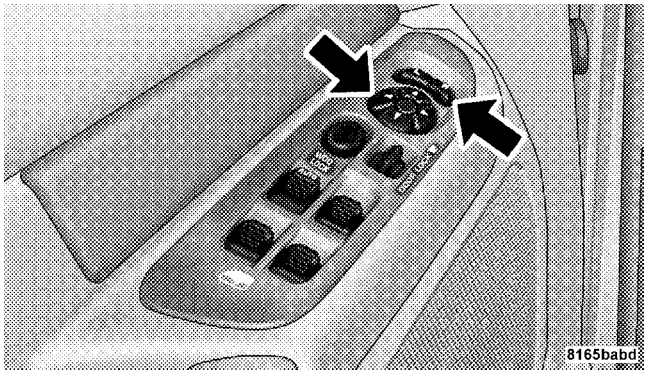
Electronic Power Mirrors – If Equipped



Power Mirror Movement

The controls for the power mirrors are located on the driver's door trim panel.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Power Mirror Switches

Set the top switch to the left or right for the left or right mirror, and set it to the center off position to prevent accidentally moving a mirror when you are finished adjusting the mirror. To adjust a mirror, select left or right with the top switch, and press one of the four arrows for the direction you want the mirror to move.

Electric Rear Window Defroster and Heated Sideview Mirrors – If Equipped

The Electric Rear Window Defroster and Heated Sideview Mirrors are activated by pressing the heated grid button, located on the Climate Control panel, with the ignition ON. Turning Off the rear window defroster or the ignition will deactivate the Electric Rear Window Defroster and Heated Sideview Mirrors feature. These features turn off automatically after 15 minutes have elapsed for the first activation per ignition cycle. Each subsequent activation of these features per ignition cycle will shut off automatically after 10 minutes have elapsed. To reactivate, simply press the button again.

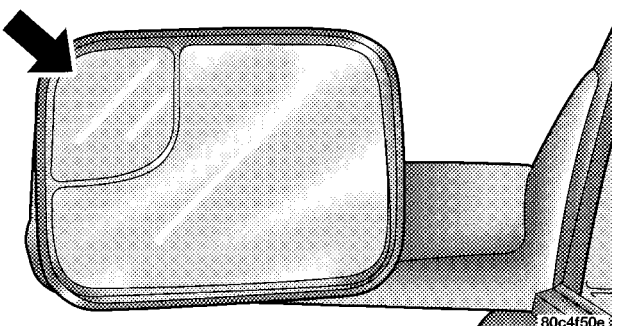
Trailer Towing Mirrors – If Equipped

These mirrors are designed with an adjustable mirror head to provide a greater vision range when towing

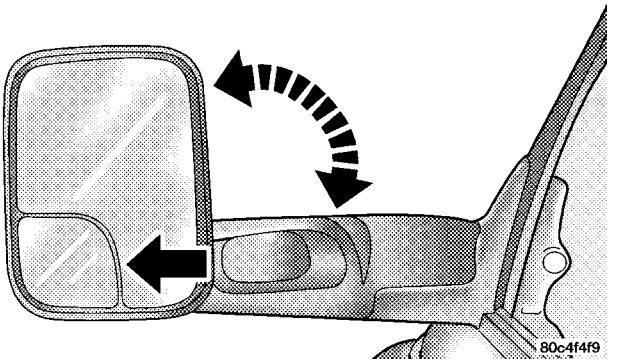
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

extra-wide loads. To change position inboard or outboard, the mirror head should be rotated (flipped out or in). A small blindspot mirror is integrated onto the main mirror surface.

NOTE: Fold the trailer towing mirrors rearward prior to entering an automated car wash.



Blindspot Mirror



Trailer Towing Position

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

HANDS-FREE COMMUNICATION (UConnect®) — IF EQUIPPED

NOTE: The sales code RER, REN and REU radios contain an integrated Hands-Free Communication (UConnect®) system. Refer to your "Navigation User's Manual" for UConnect® system operating instructions for these radios.

UConnect® is a voice-activated, hands-free, in-vehicle communications system. UConnect® allows you to dial a phone number with your cellular phone using simple voice commands (e.g., ″Call″ ... "Mike" ..."Work″ or ″Dial″ ... "248-555-1212″). Your cellular phone's audio is transmitted through your vehicle's audio system; the system will automatically mute your radio when using the UConnect® system.

NOTE: The UConnect® system requires a cellular phone equipped with the Bluetooth® ″Hands-Free Profile,″ Version 0.96 or higher. See the UConnect® website for supported phones.

NOTE: For UConnect® customer support, visit the following websites:

- www.chrysler.com / uconnect
- www.dodge.com / uconnect
- www.jeep.com / uconnect
- or call 1–877–855–8400

UConnect® allows you to transfer calls between the system and your cellular phone as you enter or exit your vehicle and enables you to mute the system's microphone for private conversation.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The UConnect® phonebook enables you to store up to 32 names, with four numbers per name. Each language has a separate 32-name phonebook accessible only in that language. This system is driven through your Bluetooth® "Hands-Free profile" cellular phone. UConnect® features Bluetooth® technology - the global standard that enables different electronic devices to connect to each other without wires or a docking station, so UConnect® works no matter where you stow your cellular phone (be it your purse, pocket, or briefcase), as long as your phone is turned on and has been paired to the vehicle's UConnect® system. The UConnect® system allows up to seven cellular phones to be linked to the system. Only one linked (or paired) cellular phone can be used with the system at a time. The system is available in English, Spanish, or French languages.

Phone Button

The rearview mirror contains the microphone for the system (depending on the type of mirror and radio equipped), and either the radio or the mirror has the two control buttons (PHONE Button and VOICE RECOGNITION button) that will enable you to access the system.

Voice Recognition Button

Actual button location may vary with radio. The individual buttons are described in the "Operation" section.

The UConnect® system can be used with any Hands-Free Profile certified Bluetooth® cellular phone. See the UConnect® website for supported phones. If your cellular phone supports a different profile (e.g., Headset Profile) you may not be able to use any UConnect® features. Refer to your cellular service provider or the phone manufacturer for details.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The UConnect® system is fully integrated with the vehicle's audio system. The volume of the UConnect® system can be adjusted either from the radio volume control knob or from the steering wheel radio control (right switch), if so equipped.

The radio display will be used for visual prompts from the UConnect® system such as ″CELL″ or caller ID on certain radios.

Operation

Voice commands can be used to operate the UConnect® system and to navigate through the UConnect® menu structure. Voice commands are required after most UConnect® system prompts. You will be prompted for a specific command and then guided through the available options.

- Prior to giving a voice command, one must wait for the beep, which follows the ″Ready″ prompt or another prompt.
- For certain operations, compound commands can be used. For example, instead of saying ″Setup″ and then ″Phone Pairing,″ the following compound command can be said: ″Setup Phone Pairing.″
- For each feature explanation in this section, only the combined form of the voice command is given. You can also break the commands into parts and say each part of the command when you are asked for it. For example, you can use the combined form voice command ″Phonebook New Entry,″ or you can break the combined form command into two voice commands: ″Phonebook″ and ″New Entry.″ Please remember, the UConnect® system works best when you talk in a normal conversational tone, as if speaking to someone sitting a few feet / meters away from you.

Voice Command Tree

Refer to "Voice Tree" in this section.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Help Command

If you need assistance at any prompt, or if you want to know your options at any prompt, say ″Help″ following the beep. The UConnect® system will play all the options at any prompt if you ask for help.

To activate the UConnect® system from idle, simply press the PHONE button and follow the audible prompts for directions. All UConnect® system sessions begin with a press of the PHONE button on the radio control head.

Cancel Command

At any prompt, after the beep, you can say ″Cancel″ and you will be returned to the main menu. However, in a few instances the system will take you back to the previous menu.

Pair (Link) UConnect® System to a Cellular Phone

To begin using your UConnect® system, you must pair your compatible Bluetooth® enabled cellular phone.

To complete the pairing process, you will need to reference your cellular phone Owner's Manual. The UConnect® website may also provide detailed instructions for pairing.

The following are general phone to UConnect® system pairing instructions:

- Press the PHONE button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Setup Phone Pairing.″
- When prompted, after the beep, say ″Pair a Phone″ and follow the audible prompts.
- You will be asked to say a four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN), which you will later need to enter into your cellular phone. You can enter any four-digit PIN. You will not need to remember this PIN after the initial pairing process.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- For identification purposes, you will be prompted to give the UConnect® system a name for your cellular phone. Each cellular phone that is paired should be given a unique phone name.
- You will then be asked to give your cellular phone a priority level between 1 and 7, with 1 being the highest priority. You can pair up to seven cellular phones to your UConnect® system. However, at any given time, only one cellular phone can be in use, connected to your UConnect® system. The priority allows the UConnect® system to know which cellular phone to use if multiple cellular phones are in the vehicle at the same time. For example, if priority 3 and priority 5 phones are present in the vehicle, the UConnect® system will use the priority 3 cellular phone when you make a call. You can select to use a lower priority cellular phone at any time (refer to ″Advanced Phone Connectivity″ in this section).

Dial by Saying a Number

- Press the PHONE button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Dial.″
- The system will prompt you to say the number you want to call.
- For example, you can say ″234-567-8901.″ The phone number that you enter must be of valid length and combination. Based on the country in which the vehicle was purchased, the UConnect® system limits the user from dialing an invalid combination of numbers. For example, in the U.S., 234-567-890 is nine digits long, which is not a valid U.S. phone number - the closest valid phone number has 10 digits.
- The UConnect® system will confirm the phone number and then dial. The number will appear in the display of certain radios.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Call by Saying a Name

- Press the PHONE button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say “Call.″
- The system will prompt you to say the name of the person you want to call.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say the name of the person you want to call. For example, you can say ″John Doe,″ where John Doe is a previously stored name entry in the UConnect® phonebook. To learn how to store a name in the phonebook, refer to ″Add Names to Your UConnect® Phonebook,″ in this section.
- The UConnect® system will confirm the name and then dial the corresponding phone number, which may appear in the display of certain radios.

Add Names to Your UConnect® Phonebook

NOTE: Adding names to the phonebook is recommended when the vehicle is not in motion.

- Press the PHONE button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Phonebook New Entry.″
- When prompted, say the name of the new entry. Use of long names helps the voice recognition and it is recommended. For example, say ″Robert Smith″ or ″Robert″ instead of ″Bob.″
- When prompted, enter the number designation (e.g., ″Home,″ ″Work,″ ″Mobile,″ or ″Pager″). This will allow you to store multiple numbers for each phonebook entry, if desired.
- When prompted, recite the phone number for the phonebook entry that you are adding.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

After you are finished adding an entry into the phonebook, you will be given the opportunity to add more phone numbers to the current entry or to return to the main menu.

The UConnect® system will allow you to enter up to 32 names in the phonebook with each name having up to four associated phone numbers and designations. Each language has a separate 32-name phonebook accessible only in that language.

Phonebook Download

UConnect® allows the user to download entries from their phone via Bluetooth®. To use this feature, press the PHONE button and say "Phonebook Download." The system prompts, "Ready to accept "V" card entry via Bluetooth®…" The system is now ready to accept phonebook entries from your phone using the Bluetooth® Object Exchange Profile (OBEX). Please see your phone Owner's Manual for specific instructions on how to send these entries from your phone.

NOTE:

- The phone handset must support Bluetooth® OBEX transfers of phonebook entries to use this feature.
- Some phones cannot send phonebook entries if they are already connected to any system via Bluetooth®, and you may see a message on the phone display that the Bluetooth® link is busy. In this case, the user must first disconnect or drop the Bluetooth® connection to the UConnect® system, and then send the address book entry via Bluetooth®. Please see your phone Owner's Manual for specific instructions on how to drop the Bluetooth® connection.
- If the phonebook entry is longer than 24 characters, it will only use the first 24 characters.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Edit Entries in the UConnect® Phonebook

NOTE: Editing names in the phonebook is recommended when the vehicle is not in motion.

- Press the PHONE button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Phonebook Edit.″
- You will then be asked for the name of the phonebook entry that you wish to edit.
- Next, choose the number designation (home, work, mobile, or pager) that you wish to edit.
- When prompted, recite the new phone number for the phonebook entry that you are editing.

After you are finished editing an entry in the phonebook, you will be given the opportunity to edit another entry in the phonebook, call the number you just edited, or return to the main menu.

″Phonebook Edit″ can be used to add another phone number to a name entry that already exists in the phonebook. For example, the entry John Doe may have a mobile and a home number, but you can add ”John Doe’s” work number later using the ″Phonebook Edit″ feature.

Delete Entries in the UConnect® Phonebook

NOTE: Editing phonebook entries is recommended when the vehicle is not in motion.

- Press the PHONE button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Phonebook Delete.″
- After you enter the Phonebook Delete menu, you will then be asked for the name of the entry that you wish to delete. You can either say the name of a phonebook entry that you wish to delete or you can say ″List Names″ to hear a list of the entries in the phonebook

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

from which you choose. To select one of the entries from the list, press the "Voice Recognition" button while the UConnect® system is playing the desired entry and say ″Delete.″

- After you enter the name, the UConnect® system will ask you which designation you wish to delete: home, work, mobile, pager, or all. Say the designation you wish to delete.
- Note that only the phonebook entry in the current language is deleted.

Delete All Entries in the UConnect® Phonebook

- Press the PHONE button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Phonebook Erase All.″
- The UConnect® system will ask you to verify that you wish to delete all the entries from the phonebook.
- After confirmation, the phonebook entries will be deleted.
- Note that only the phonebook in the current language is deleted.

List All Names in the UConnect® Phonebook

- Press the PHONE button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Phonebook List Names.″
- The UConnect® system will play the names of all the phonebook entries.
- To call one of the names in the list, press the "Voice Recognition" button during the playing of the desired name, and say ″Call.″

NOTE: The user can also exercise ″Edit″ or ″Delete″ operations at this point.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- The UConnect® system will then prompt you as to the number designation you wish to call.
- The selected number will be dialed.

Phone Call Features

The following features can be accessed through the UConnect® system if the feature(s) are available on your cellular service plan. For example, if your cellular service plan provides three-way calling, this feature can be accessed through the UConnect® system. Check with your cellular service provider for the features that you have.

Answer or Reject an Incoming Call - No Call Currently in Progress

When you receive a call on your cellular phone, the UConnect® system will interrupt the vehicle audio system, if on, and will ask if you would like to answer the call. Press the PHONE button to accept the call. To reject the call, press and hold the PHONE button until you hear a single beep, indicating that the incoming call was rejected.

Answer or Reject an Incoming Call - Call Currently in Progress

If a call is currently in progress and you have another incoming call, you will hear the same network tones for call waiting that you normally hear when using your cell phone. Press the PHONE button to place the current call on hold and answer the incoming call.

NOTE: The UConnect® system compatible phones in the market today do not support rejecting an incoming call when another call is in progress. Therefore, the user can only answer an incoming call or ignore it.

Making a Second Call While Current Call in Progress

To make a second call while you are currently on a call, press the “Voice Recognition” button and say ″Dial″ or ″Call″ followed by the phone number or phonebook entry you wish to call. The first call will be on hold while the second call is in progress. To go back to the first call, refer

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

to "Toggling Between Calls" in this section. To combine two calls, refer to "Conference Call" in this section.

Place/Retrieve a Call From Hold

To put a call on hold, press the PHONE button until you hear a single beep. This indicates that the call is on hold. To bring the call back from hold, press and hold the PHONE button until you hear a single beep.

Toggling Between Calls

If two calls are in progress (one active and one on hold), press the PHONE button until you hear a single beep, indicating that the active and hold status of the two calls have switched. Only one call can be placed on hold at one time.

Conference Call

When two calls are in progress (one active and one on hold), press and hold the PHONE button until you hear a double beep indicating that the two calls have been joined into one conference call.

Three-Way Calling

To initiate three-way calling, press the "Voice Recognition" button while a call is in progress, and make a second phone call, as described under "Making a Second Call While Current Call in Progress." After the second call has established, press and hold the PHONE button until you hear a double beep, indicating that the two calls have been joined into one conference call.

Call Termination

To end a call in progress, momentarily press the PHONE button. Only the active call(s) will be terminated and if there is a call on hold, it will become the new active call. If the active call is terminated by the far end, a call on hold may not become active automatically. This is cell phone-dependent. To bring the call back from hold, press and hold the PHONE button until you hear a single beep.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Redial

- Press the PHONE button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Redial.″
- The UConnect® system will call the last number that was dialed from your cellular phone.

NOTE: This may not be the last number dialed from the UConnect® system.

Call Continuation

Call continuation is the progression of a phone call on the UConnect® system after the vehicle ignition key has been switched to OFF. Call continuation functionality available on the vehicle can be any one of three types:

- After the ignition key is switched to OFF, a call can continue on the UConnect® system either until the call ends, or until the vehicle battery condition dictates cessation of the call on the UConnect® system and transfer of the call to the mobile phone.
- After the ignition key is switched to OFF, a call can continue on the UConnect® system for a certain duration, after which the call is automatically transferred from the UConnect® system to the mobile phone.
- An active call is automatically transferred to the mobile phone after the ignition key is switched to OFF.

UConnect® System Features

Language Selection

To change the language that the UConnect® system is using:

- Press the PHONE button to begin.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say the name of the language you wish to switch to English, Espanol, or Francais.
- Continue to follow the system prompts to complete language selection.

After selecting one of the languages, all prompts and voice commands will be in that language.

NOTE: After every UConnect® language change operation, only the language-specific 32-name phonebook is usable. The paired phone name is not language-specific and usable across all languages.

Emergency Assistance

If you are in an emergency and the mobile phone is reachable:

- Pick up the phone and manually dial the emergency number for your area.

If the phone is not reachable and the UConnect® system is operational, you may reach the emergency number as follows:

- Press the PHONE button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Emergency″ and the UConnect® system will instruct the paired cellular phone to call the emergency number. This feature is supported in the U.S., Canada, and Mexico.

NOTE: The emergency number dialed is based on the country where the vehicle is purchased (911 for the U.S. and Canada and 060 for Mexico). The number dialed may not be applicable with the available cellular service and area.

The UConnect® system does slightly lower your chances of successfully making a phone call as to that for the cell phone directly.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Your phone must be turned on and paired to the UConnect® system to allow use of this vehicle feature in emergency situations, when the cell phone has network coverage and stays paired to the UConnect® system.

Towing Assistance
If you need towing assistance:

- Press the PHONE button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Towing Assistance.″

NOTE: The Towing Assistance number dialed is based on the country where the vehicle is purchased (1-800-528-2069 for the U.S., 1-877-213-4525 for Canada, 55-14-3454 for Mexico City and 1-800-712-3040 for outside Mexico City in Mexico).

Please refer to the 24-Hour “Towing Assistance” coverage details in the Warranty Information Booklet and on the 24–Hour Towing Assistance Card.

Paging
To learn how to page, refer to ″Working with Automated Systems.″ Paging works properly except for pagers of certain companies, which time out a little too soon to work properly with the UConnect® system.

Voice Mail Calling
To learn how to access your voice mail, refer to ″Working with Automated Systems.″

Working with Automated Systems
This method is used in instances where one generally has to press numbers on the cellular phone keypad while navigating through an automated telephone system.

You can use your UConnect® system to access a voice mail system or an automated service, such as a paging service or automated customer service line. Some services require immediate response selection. In some instances, that may be too quick for use of the UConnect® system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When calling a number with your UConnect® system that normally requires you to enter in a touch-tone sequence on your cellular phone keypad, you can press the "Voice Recognition" button and say the sequence you wish to enter, followed by the word ″Send.″ For example, if required to enter your PIN followed with a pound, (3 7 4 6 #), you can press the "Voice Recognition" button and say, ″3 7 4 6 # Send.″ Saying a number, or sequence of numbers, followed by ″Send,″ is also to be used for navigating through an automated customer service center menu structure, and to leave a number on a pager.

You can also send stored UConnect® phonebook entries as tones for fast and easy access to voice mail and pager entries. To use this feature, dial the number you wish to call and then press the "Voice Recognition" button and say, "Send." The system will prompt you to enter the name or number and say the name of the phonebook entry you wish to send. The UConnect® system will then send the corresponding phone number associated with the phonebook entry, as tones over the phone.

NOTE:

- You may not hear all of the tones due to cellular phone network configurations; this is normal.
- Some paging and voice mail systems have system time out settings that are too short and may not allow the use of this feature.

Barge In - Overriding Prompts

The "Voice Recognition" button can be used when you wish to skip part of a prompt and issue your voice recognition command immediately. For example, if a prompt is asking ″Would you like to pair a phone, clear a...,″ you could press the "Voice Recognition" button and say, ″Pair a Phone″ to select that option without having to listen to the rest of the voice prompt.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Turning Confirmation Prompts On/Off

Turning confirmation prompts off will stop the system from confirming your choices (e.g., the UConnect® system will not repeat a phone number before you dial it).

- Press the PHONE button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Setup Confirmations.″ The UConnect® system will play the current confirmation prompt status and you will be given the choice to change it.

Phone and Network Status Indicators

If available on the radio and/or on a premium display such as the instrument panel cluster, and supported by your cell phone, the UConnect® system will provide notification to inform you of your phone and network status when you are attempting to make a phone call using UConnect®. The status is given for roaming, network signal strength, phone battery strength, etc.

Dialing Using the Cellular Phone Keypad

You can dial a phone number with your cellular phone keypad and still use the UConnect® system (while dialing via the cell phone keypad, the user must exercise caution and take precautionary safety measures). By dialing a number with your paired Bluetooth® cellular phone, the audio will be played through your vehicle's audio system. The UConnect® system will work the same as if you dial the number using voice recognition.

NOTE: Certain brands of mobile phones do not send the dial ring to the UConnect® system to play it on the vehicle audio system, so you will not hear it. Under this situation, after successfully dialing a number the user may feel that the call did not go through even though the call is in progress. Once your call is answered, you will hear the audio.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Mute/Un-Mute (Mute Off)
When you mute the UConnect® system, you will still be able to hear the conversation coming from the other party, but the other party will not be able to hear you. In order to mute the UConnect® system:

- Press the "Voice Recognition" button.
- Following the beep, say "Mute."

In order to un-mute the UConnect® system:

- Press the "Voice Recognition" button.
- Following the beep, say "Mute off."

Advanced Phone Connectivity

Transfer Call to and from Cellular Phone
The UConnect® system allows ongoing calls to be transferred from your cellular phone to the UConnect® system without terminating the call. To transfer an ongoing call from your UConnect® paired cellular phone to the UConnect® system or vice versa, press the "Voice Recognition" button and say "Transfer Call."

Connect or Disconnect Link Between the UConnect® System and Cellular Phone
Your cellular phone can be paired with many different electronic devices, but can only be actively "connected" with one electronic device at a time.

If you would like to connect or disconnect the Bluetooth® connection between a UConnect® paired cellular phone and the UConnect® system, follow the instructions described in your cellular phone User's Manual.

List Paired Cellular Phone Names

- Press the PHONE button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Phone Pairing."

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- When prompted, say ″List Phones.″
- The UConnect® system will play the phone names of all paired cellular phones in order from the highest to the lowest priority. To “select” or “delete” a paired phone being announced, press the “Voice Recognition” button and say “Select” or “Delete.” Also, see the next two sections for an alternate way to “select” or “delete” a paired phone.

Select Another Cellular Phone

This feature allows you to select and start using another phone paired with the UConnect® system.

- Press the PHONE button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Setup Select Phone″ and follow the prompts.
- You can also press the “Voice Recognition” button at any time while the list is being played, and then choose the phone that you wish to select.
- The selected phone will be used for the next phone call. If the selected phone is not available, the UConnect® system will return to using the highest priority phone present in or near (approximately within 30 ft [9 m]) the vehicle.

Delete UConnect® Paired Cellular Phones

- Press the PHONE button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Setup Phone Pairing.″
- At the next prompt, say ″Delete″ and follow the prompts.
- You can also press the “Voice Recognition” button at any time while the list is being played, and then choose the phone you wish to delete.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Things You Should Know About Your UConnect® System

UConnect® Tutorial

To hear a brief tutorial of the system features, press the PHONE button and say "UConnect® Tutorial."

Voice Training

For users experiencing difficulty with the system recognizing their voice commands or numbers, the UConnect® system Voice Training feature may be used. To enter this training mode, follow one of the two following procedures:

From outside the UConnect® mode (e.g., from radio mode):

- Press and hold the "Voice Recognition" button for five seconds until the session begins, or,
- Press the "Voice Recognition" button and say the ″Setup, Voice Training″ command.

Repeat the words and phrases when prompted by the UConnect® system. For best results, the Voice Training session should be completed when the vehicle is parked with the engine running, all windows closed, and the blower fan switched OFF.

This procedure may be repeated with a new user. The system will adapt to the last trained voice only.

To restore the Voice Recognition system to factory default settings, enter the Voice Training session via the above procedure and follow the prompts.

Voice Recognition (VR)

- For best performance, adjust the rearview mirror to provide at least ½ in (1 cm) gap between the overhead console (if equipped) and the mirror.
- Always wait for the beep before speaking.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Speak normally, without pausing, just as you would speak to a person sitting a few feet / meters away from you.
- Make sure that no one other than you is speaking during a voice recognition period.
- Performance is maximized under:
  - low-to-medium blower setting,
  - low-to-medium vehicle speed,
  - low road noise,
  - smooth road surface,
  - fully closed windows,
  - dry weather condition.
- Even though the system is designed for users speaking in North American English, French, and Spanish accents, the system may not always work for some.
- When navigating through an automated system such as voice mail, or when sending a page, at the end of speaking the digit string, make sure to say ″Send.″
- Storing names in the phonebook when the vehicle is not in motion is recommended.
- It is not recommended to store similar sounding names in the UConnect® phonebook.
- The UConnect® phonebook nametag recognition rate is optimized for the person who stored the name in the phonebook.
- You can say ″O″ (letter ″O″) for ″0″ (zero). ″800″ must be spoken ″eight-zero-zero.″
- Even though international dialing for most number combinations is supported, some shortcut dialing number combinations may not be supported.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- In a convertible vehicle, system performance may be compromised with the convertible top down.

Far End Audio Performance

- Audio quality is maximized under:
  - low-to-medium blower setting,
  - low-to-medium vehicle speed,
  - low road noise,
  - smooth road surface,
  - fully closed windows,
  - dry weather conditions, and
  - operation from the driver's seat.
- Performance, such as audio clarity, echo, and loudness to a large degree rely on the phone and network, and not the UConnect® system.
- Echo at the far end can sometimes be reduced by lowering the in-vehicle audio volume.
- In a convertible vehicle, system performance may be compromised with the convertible top down.

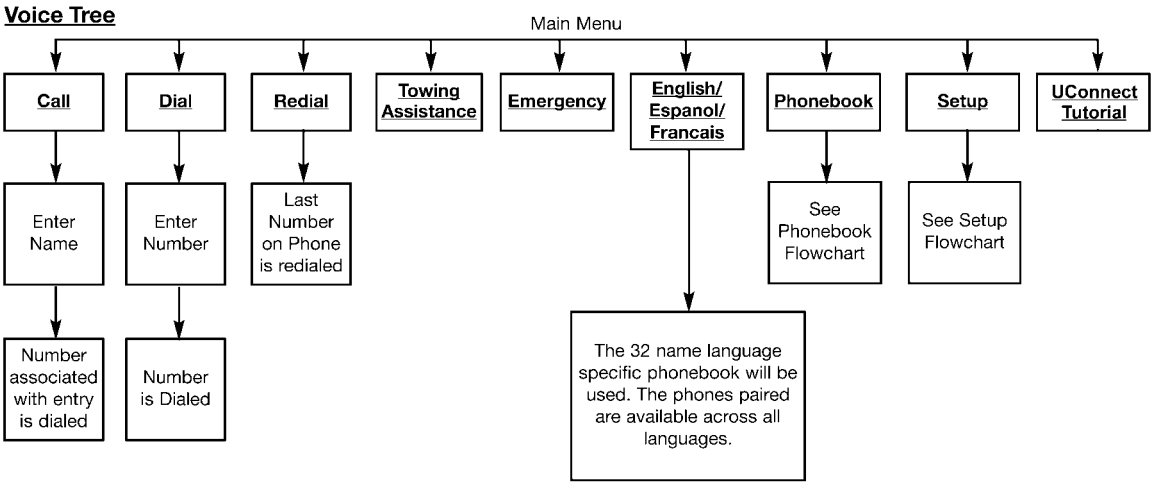
Bluetooth® Communication Link

Cellular phones have been found to lose connection to the UConnect® system. When this happens, the connection can generally be re-established by switching the phone off / on. Your cell phone is recommended to remain in Bluetooth® ON mode.

Power-Up

After switching the ignition key from OFF to either ON or ACC position, or after a language change, you must wait at least five seconds prior to using the system.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

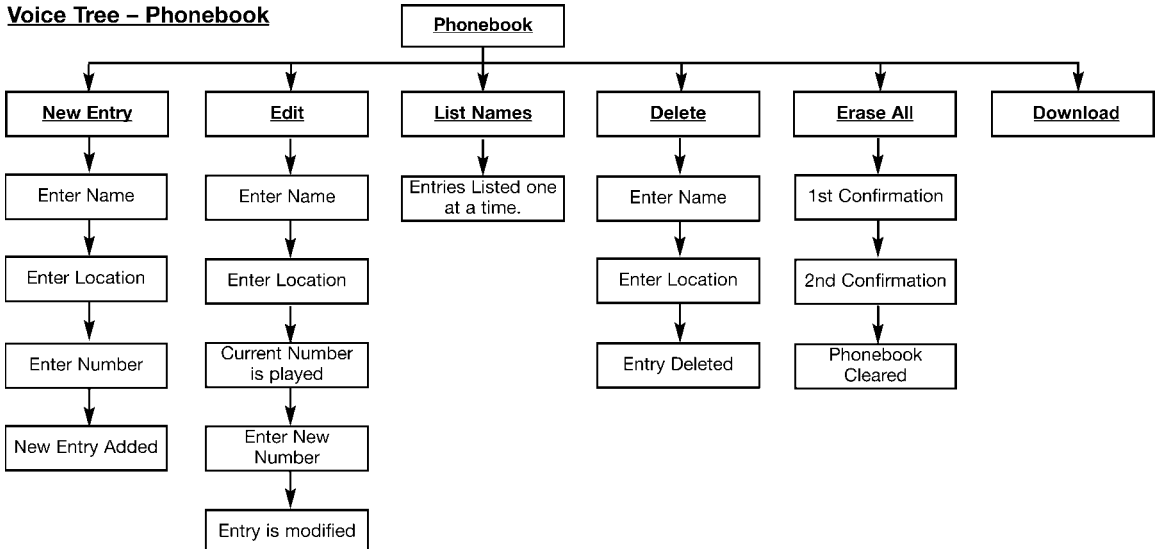


Note: **Available Voice commands are shown in bold face and are underlined.**

81c6bf7b

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Voice Tree – Phonebook

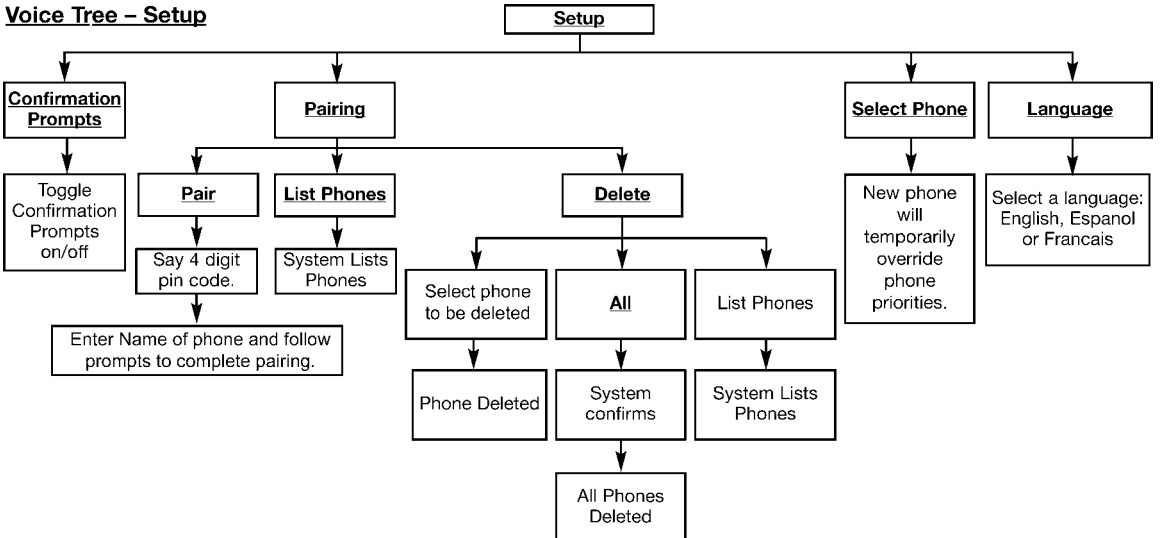


Note: **Available Voice commands are shown in bold face and are underlined.**

81c6bf80

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Voice Tree – Setup



Note: Available Voice commands are shown in bold face and are underlined. 819402e4

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Voice Commands	
Primary	Alternate(s)
zero	
one	
two	
three	
four	
five	
six	
seven	
eight	
nine	
star (*)	
plus (+)	
pound (#)	
add location	
all	

Voice Commands	
Primary	Alternate(s)
call	
cancel	
confirmation prompts	
continue	
delete	
dial	
download	
edit	
emergency	
English	
erase all	
Espanol	
Francais	
help	
home	

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Voice Commands	
Primary	Alternate(s)
language	
list names	
list phones	
mobile	
mute	
mute off	
new entry	
no	
pager	
pair a phone	
phone pairing	pairing
phonebook	phone book
previous	
record again	
redial	

Voice Commands	
Primary	Alternate(s)
return to main menu	return or main menu
select phone	select
send	
set up	phone settings or phone set up
towing assistance	
transfer call	
UConnect® Tutorial	
try again	
voice training	
work	
yes	

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

General Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules and RSS 210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

SEATS

The seating options available in this truck are the result of extensive customer research and evaluations.

Seats are also a primary part of the Occupant Restraint (protection) System of the vehicle. They need to be used properly for safe operation of the vehicle.

WARNING!

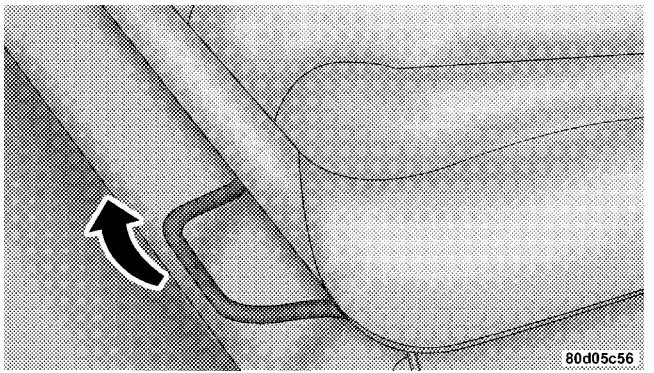
It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.

Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.

Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

40-20-40 Front Seat



Manual Seat Adjuster

As the name implies, the seat is divided into three segments. The outboard seat portions are each 40% of the total width of the seat. The back of the center portion (20%) easily folds down to provide an armrest/center storage compartment (if equipped).

Each outboard seat is independently adjustable forward or rearward and is equipped with a back recliner. The manual forward or rearward seat adjustment handle is found at the front edge of each seat cushion. Pull up on the handle and slide the seat to get the most comfortable position.

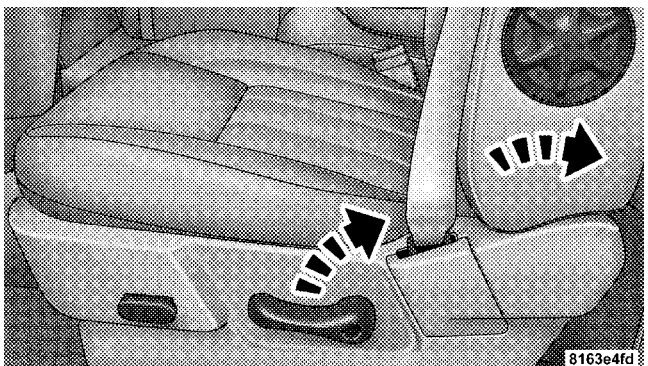
WARNING!

Adjusting a seat while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. The sudden movement of the seat could cause you to lose control. The seat belt might not be properly adjusted and you could be injured. Adjust any seat only while the vehicle is parked.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Reclining Seats (1500 Regular and Quad Cab® Models)

The recliner handle is on the outside of the seat cushion. Pull up on the handle, as shown, to release the seatback and adjust for comfort.



Seat Recliner Handle

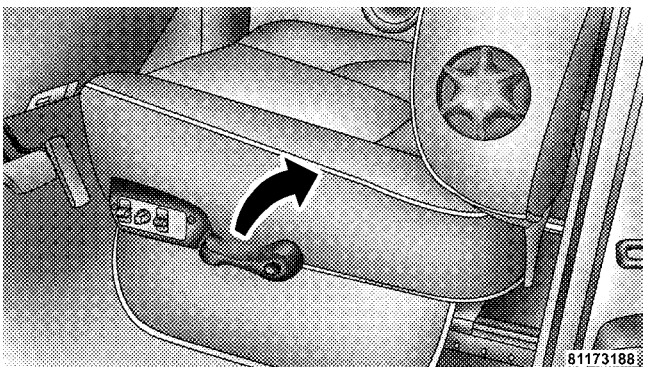
WARNING!

You can be seriously, even fatally, injured riding in a seat with the seatback reclined. Do not ride with the seatback reclined so that the shoulder belt is no longer resting against your chest. If you ride in this position, the shoulder harness will no longer be restraining you. In a collision you could slide under the seat belt and receive serious or fatal injuries. Recline in a seat only when the vehicle is parked.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Reclining Seats (2500/3500/Mega Cab Models)

The recliner handle is on the outside of the seat cushion. Pull up on the handle, as shown, to release the seatback and adjust for comfort.



Seat Recliner Handle

WARNING!

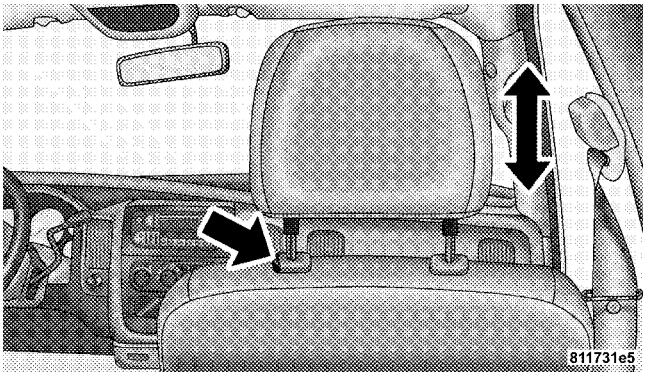
You can be seriously, even fatally, injured riding in a seat with the seatback reclined. Do not ride with the seatback reclined so that the shoulder belt is no longer resting against your chest. If you ride in this position, the shoulder harness will no longer be restraining you. In a collision you could slide under the seat belt and receive serious or fatal injuries. Recline in a seat only when the vehicle is parked.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjustable Head Restraints

Head restraints can reduce the risk of neck injury in the event of impact from the rear. Pull up or push down on the restraints so that the upper edge is as high as practical, at least to the level of the ears.

To lower the head restraint, push in the button and then push down on the head restraint.

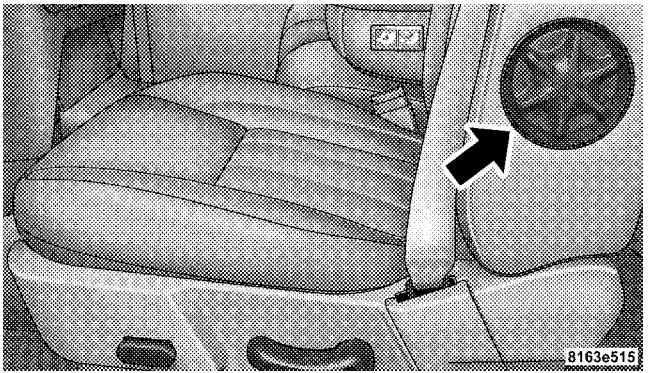


Head Restraints

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Manual Rotary Lumbar Support Adjustment — If Equipped

Rotating the lumbar control knob on the left side of the driver's seatback, and on the right side of the passenger's seatback, increases or decreases the lumbar (lower back) support.



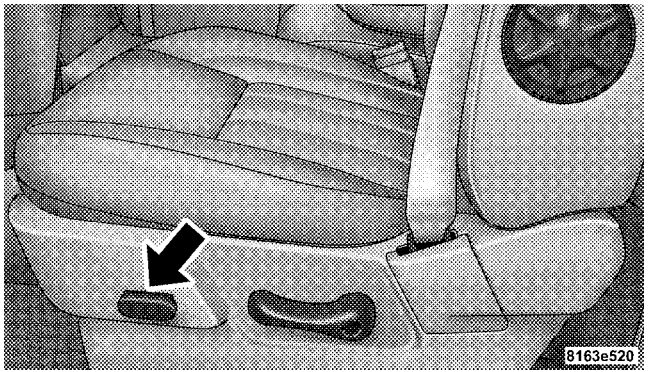
Manual Lumbar Adjustment

Power Seats (1500 Regular and Quad Cab® Models) — If Equipped

CAUTION!

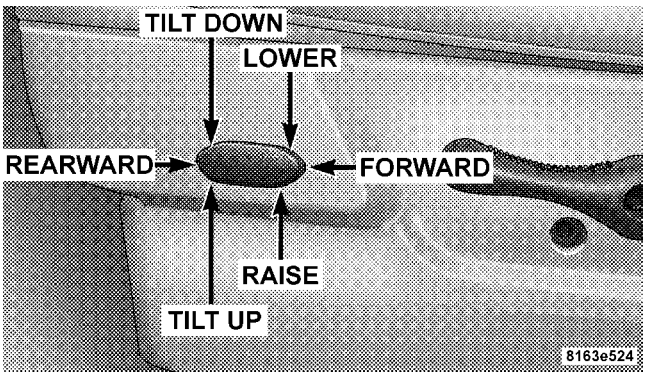
Don't put anything under a power seat. It may cause damage to the seat controls.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Power Seat Switch

The power seat controls are on the outboard side of the front seat cushions. One switch controls the seat movement. The six-way switch can be moved forward or backward to get the most comfortable position. The same switch can be moved up and down to control seat height, or to change the seat angle by tilting it up or down.



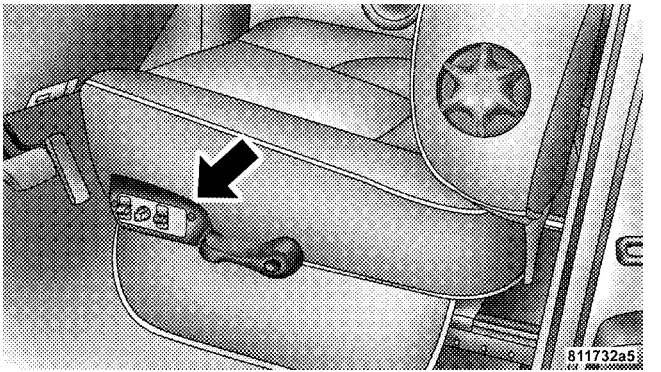
Power Seat Switch Position

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Seats (2500/3500/Mega Cab Models) — If Equipped

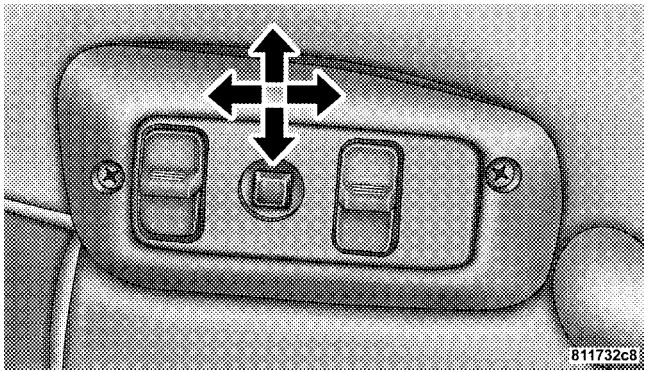
CAUTION!

Don't put anything under a power seat. It may cause damage to the seat controls or the Occupant Classification System.



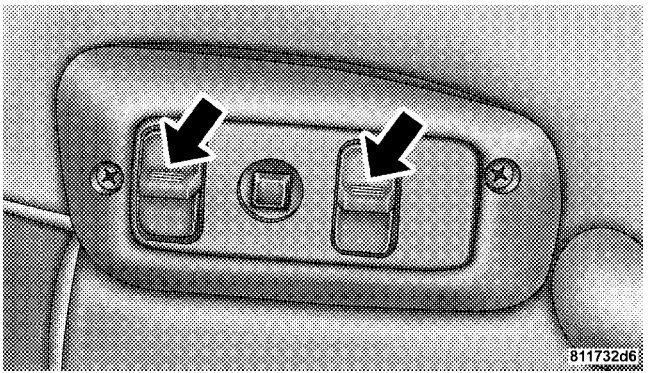
Power Seat Switch

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Up, Down, Forward, and Rearward

The power seat controls are on the outboard side of the front seat cushions. Three switches control the seat movement. The four-way switch in the center can be moved forward or backward to get the most comfortable position. The same switch can be moved up and down to control seat height. Change the seat angle by using the two toggle switches, tilting it up or down.



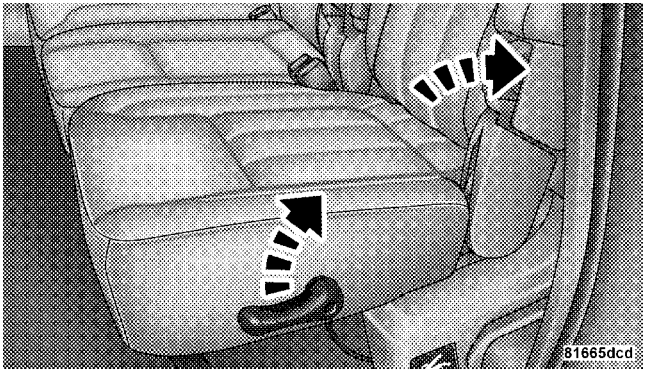
Tilt Adjustment

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Seat Features — Mega Cab Models

Reclining Rear Seats — Mega Cab Models

The recliner handle is on the outside of the seat cushion. Pull up on the handle, as shown, to release the seatback and adjust for comfort.



Rear Seat Recliner Handle

Folding Rear Seat (Table Mode) — Mega Cab Models

Both the left and right rear seatbacks can be folded down and used as a table.

To fold either rear seatback down (Table Mode), lift the handle and fold the seatback forward. Simply lift the seat back to return the seat to the upright position. Verify that it is locked in place.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

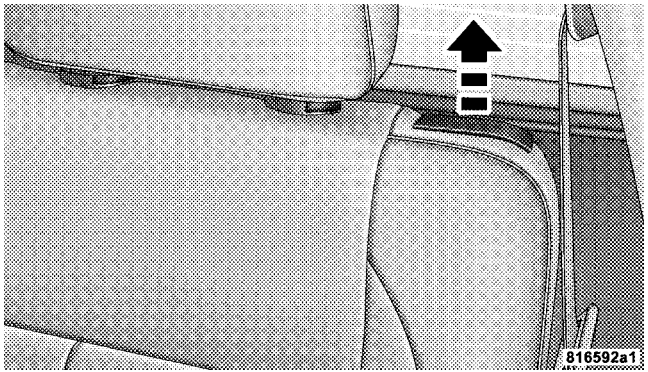


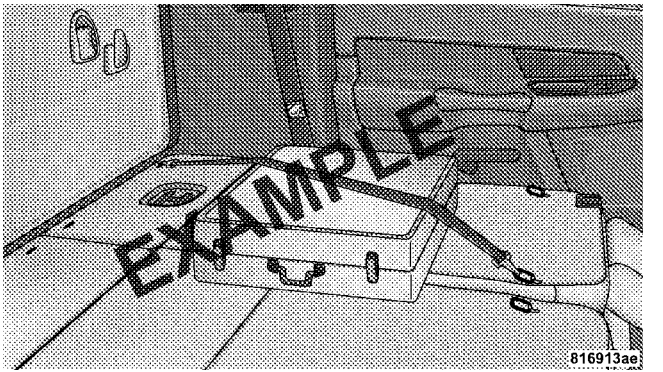
Table Mode Handle

Table Mode

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Folding Rear Seat (Kneel Mode) — Mega Cab Models

Both the left and right rear seats can be folded flat (Kneel Mode) and used for carrying cargo. Each of the rear seatbacks provide two2 D-rings and each of the rear storage bin lids provide two slotted cutouts. Use a cargo tie-down to secure cargo in the cargo carrying area.



Securing Cargo

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

- **It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.**
- **Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.**
- **Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.**

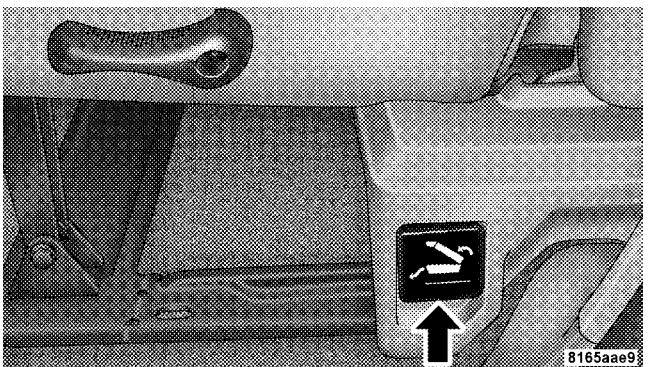
WARNING!

Cargo must be securely tied down before driving your vehicle. Improperly secured cargo can fly around in a sudden stop and strike someone in the vehicle, causing serious injury or possible death. Secure cargo with a cargo tie-down using the D-Rings provided on the back of the seats and the slotted cutouts in the rear storage bin lid.

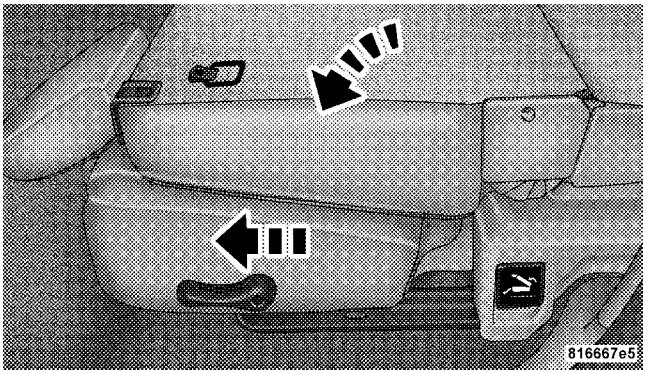
NOTE: The rear seat will drop and move forward in Kneel Mode.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

To fold either rear seat flat (Kneel Mode), lift the handle and fold the seat forward. Simply lift the seatback to return the seat to the upright position. Verify that it is locked in place.



Kneel Mode Handle



Kneel Mode

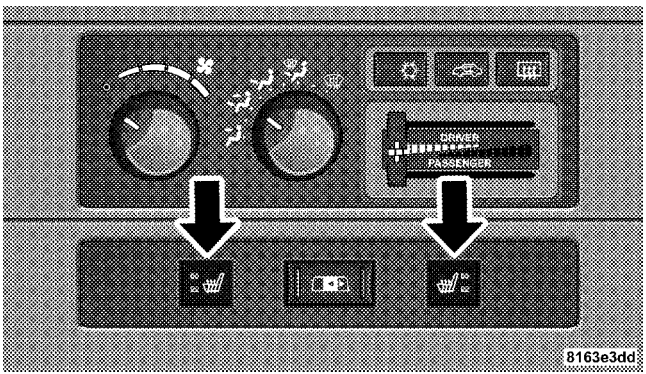
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Be certain that the seatback is securely locked into position. If the seatback in not securely locked into position the seat will not provide the proper stability for child seats and/or passengers. An improperly latched seat could cause serious injury.

Heated Seats — If Equipped

The heated seat switches are located in the instrument panel under the climate controls.



Heated Seat Switches

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Each heated seat switch has two settings (HI and LOW). Press the switch once to obtain High heat level, then press the switch again to obtain Low heat level. Pressing the switch a third time will turn the heated seats OFF. If you do not purposefully turn the switch OFF, the seat heating level will automatically change to the next lower level, or OFF. The High heat level operates for 30 minutes (approximate), the Low heat level operates for 30 minutes (approximate). The seat heat will also turn OFF when the ignition is turned OFF. Both of the indicators ON identifies High heat level. The lower indicator On only, identifies Low heat level. Flashing indicator lights on the switch indicate that the Heated Seat System needs servicing.

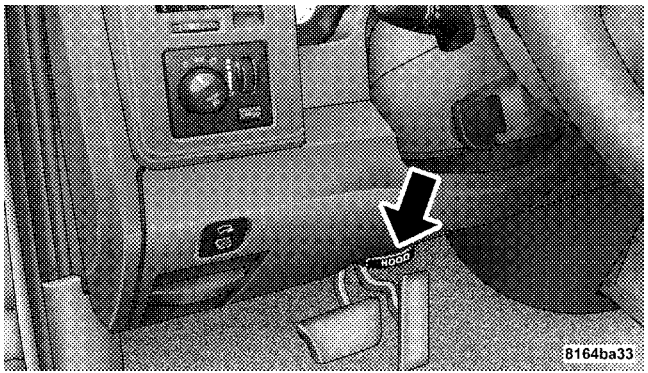
WARNING!

Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical condition must exercise care when using the seat heater. It may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time.

Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the seat heater to overheat.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

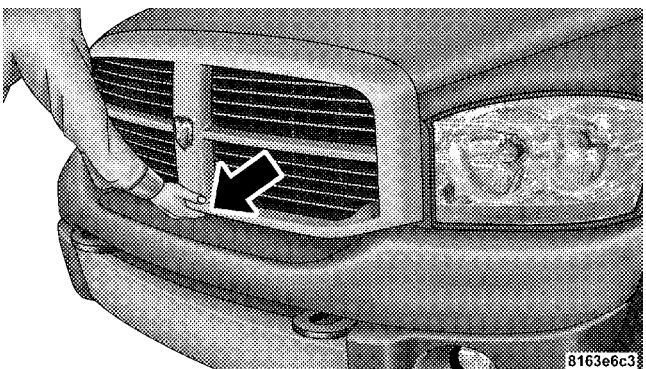
TO OPEN AND CLOSE THE HOOD



Hood Release Lever

To open the hood, two latches must be released. First pull the hood release lever located below the steering wheel at the base of the instrument panel. Once the hood is released you must reach into the opening beneath the center of the grille and push up the latch to release the safety catch before raising the hood.

To prevent possible damage, do not slam the hood to close it. Use a firm downward push at the front center of the hood to ensure that both latches engage.



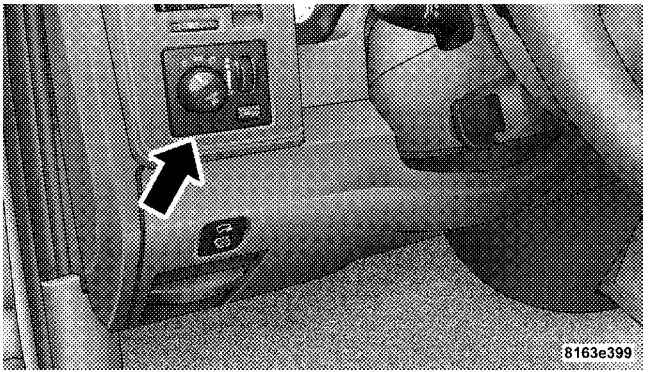
Secondary Latch

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

If the hood is not fully latched, it could fly up when the vehicle is moving and block your forward vision. Be sure all hood latches are latched fully before driving.

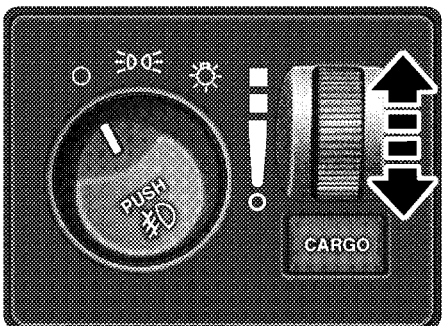
LIGHTS



Headlight Switch Location

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Interior Lights



Dimmer Control

Courtesy and dome lights are turned on when the front doors are opened, when the dimmer control (rotating wheel on the right side of the switch) is rotated to the upward detent position, or if equipped, when the UNLOCK button is pressed on the key fob. When a door is open and the interior lights are on, rotating the dimmer control all the way down to the OFF detent will cause all the interior lights to go out. This is also known as the ″Party″ mode because it allows the doors to stay open for extended periods of time without discharging the vehicle's battery.

The brightness of the instrument panel lighting can be regulated by rotating the dimmer control up (brighter) or down (dimmer). When the headlights are ON you can supplement the brightness of the odometer, trip odometer, radio and overhead console by rotating the control up until you hear a click. This feature is termed the "Parade" mode and is useful when headlights are required during the day.

Mega Cab®/Quad Cab® models may have an optional switched dome lamp that may be operated by pressing the lens.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Battery Saver

To protect the life of your vehicle's battery, load shedding is provided for both the interior and exterior lights.

If the ignition is OFF and any door is left ajar for 10 minutes or the dimmer control is rotated upwards for 10 minutes, the interior lights will automatically turn off.

If the headlamps remain on while the ignition is cycled OFF, the exterior lights will automatically turn off after eight minutes. If the headlamps are turned on and left on for eight minutes while the ignition is OFF, the exterior lights will automatically turn off.

NOTE: Battery saver mode is cancelled if the ignition is ON.

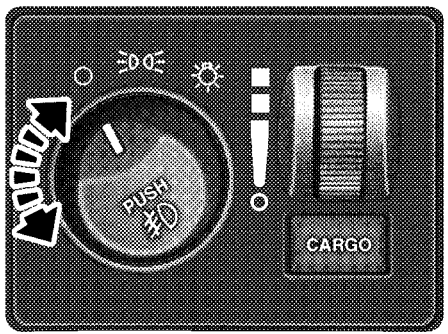
Headlamp Delay

To aid in your exit, your vehicle is equipped with a headlamp delay that will leave the headlamps on for 90 seconds. This delay is initiated when the ignition is turned OFF while the headlamp switch is ON, and then the headlamp switch is cycled OFF. Headlamp delay can be cancelled by either turning the headlamp switch ON then OFF, or by turning the ignition ON.

Headlights, Parking Lights, Panel Lights

When the headlight switch is rotated to the first position, the parking lights, taillights, side marker lights, license plate light and instrument panel lights are all turned on. The headlights will turn ON when the switch is rotated to the second position.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Light Switch Rotation

Your vehicle is equipped with plastic headlight lenses that are lighter and less susceptible to stone breakage than glass headlights.

Plastic is not as scratch resistant as glass and therefore different lens cleaning procedures must be followed.

To minimize the possibility of scratching the lenses and reducing light output, avoid wiping with a dry cloth. To remove road dirt, wash with a mild soap solution followed by rinsing.

Do not use abrasive cleaning components, solvents, steel wool or other abrasive materials to clean the lenses.

Daytime Running Lights (Canada Only and Fleet Vehicles)

The headlights on your vehicle will illuminate when the engine is started and the transmission is in any gear except PARK. This provides a constant ″Lights ON″ condition until the ignition is turned OFF. The lights illuminate at less than 50% of normal intensity. If the parking brake is applied, the Daytime Running Lights (DRL) will turn OFF. Also, if a turn signal is activated, the DRL lamp on the same side of the vehicle will turn off for the duration of the turn signal activation. Once the turn signal is no longer active, the DRL lamp will illuminate.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

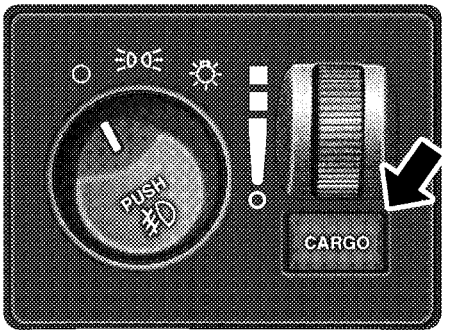
Lights-on Reminder

If the headlights, parking lights, or cargo lights are left on after the ignition is turned OFF, a chime will sound when the driver's door is opened.

Fog Lights — If Equipped

The fog lights are turned ON by placing the headlight rotary control in the parking light or headlight position and pushing in the headlight rotary control. The fog lights will operate only when the parking lights are on or when the vehicle headlights are on low beam. An indicator light located in the instrument cluster will illuminate when the fog lights are on. The fog lights will turn off when the switch is pushed a second time, when the headlight switch is rotated to the OFF position, or the high beam is selected.

Cargo Light — If Equipped



814830fd

Cargo Light Switch

The cargo lights are turned ON by pressing on the CARGO button. The interior lights will also turn on when the cargo lights are on. The cargo lights will also turn ON for 30 seconds when a key fob UNLOCK is pressed, as part of the illuminated entry feature.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Multifunction Control Lever

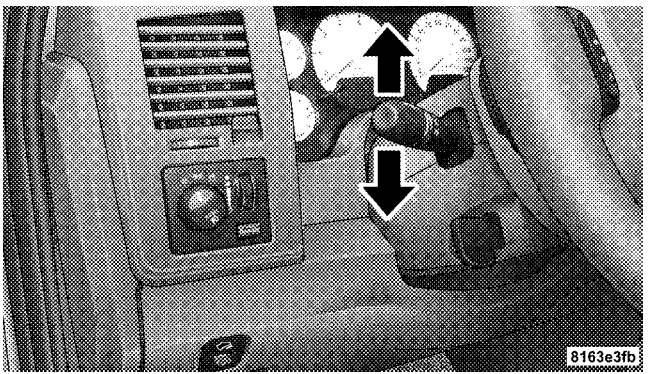
The multifunction control lever is located on the left side of the steering column.

Turn Signals

Move the lever up or down to signal a right-hand or left-hand turn.

The arrow on either side of the instrument cluster flashes to indicate the direction of the turn, and proper operation of the front and rear turn signal lights. If a defective bulb or wiring circuit is detected for the turn signal system, the arrow indicators will flash at a faster rate. If an indicator fails to light when the lever is moved, it would suggest that the switch or indicator lamp is defective.

You can signal a lane change by moving the lever partially up or down.



Turn Signal Lever

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Turn Signal Auto Mode

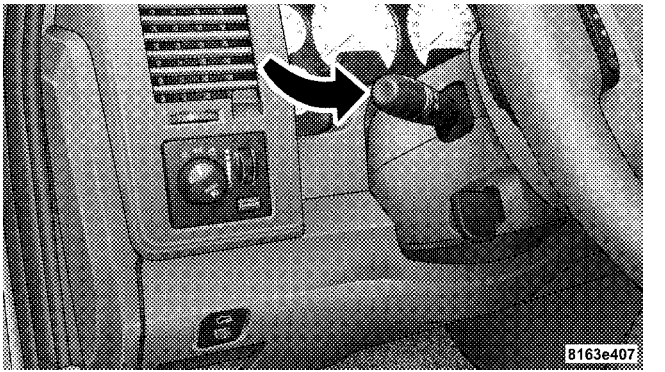
Tap the multifunction control lever once and the turn signal (left or right) will flash three times, and automatically turn off.

Passing Light

You can signal another vehicle with your headlights by partially pulling the multifunction lever toward the steering wheel. This will cause the high beam headlights to turn on until the lever is released.

High Beam / Low Beam Select Switch

Pull the multifunction control lever fully toward the steering wheel to switch the headlights from HIGH or LOW beam.



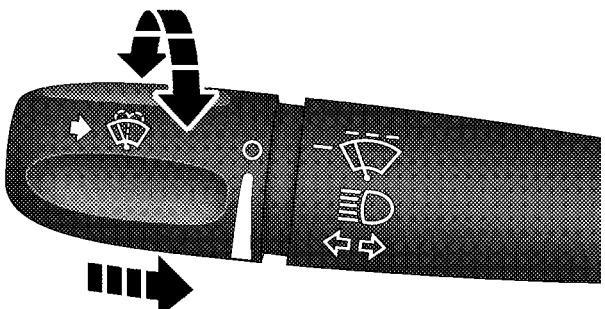
High Beam / Low Beam

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WINDSHIELD WIPERS AND WASHERS

Windshield Wipers

The wipers and washers are operated by a switch in the multifunction control lever. Turn the end of the handle to select the desired wiper speed.



815be820

Windshield Wiper / Washer Switch

Intermittent Wiper System

The intermittent feature of this system was designed for use when weather conditions make a single wiping cycle, with a variable pause between cycles, desirable. For maximum delay between cycles, rotate the control knob into the upper end of the delay range.

The delay interval decreases as you rotate the knob until it enters the LOW continual speed position. The delay can be regulated from a maximum of about 15 seconds between cycles, to a cycle every two seconds. The delay intervals will double in duration when the vehicle speed is 10 mph (16 km/h) or less.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Sudden loss of visibility through the windshield could lead to an accident. You might not see other vehicles or other obstacles. To avoid sudden icing of the windshield during freezing weather, warm the windshield with the defroster before and during windshield washer use.

Windshield Washers

To use the washer, push in on the washer knob on the end of the multifunction control lever and hold while spray is desired. If the washer knob is depressed while in the delay range, the wiper will operate for several seconds after the washer knob is released. It will then resume the intermittent interval previously selected. If the washer knob is pushed for a period greater than one second while in the OFF position, the wiper will wipe approximately three wipes after the wash knob is released.

To prevent freeze-up of your windshield washer system in cold weather, select a solution or mixture that meets or exceeds the temperature range of your climate. This rating information can be found on most washer fluid containers.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

TILT STEERING COLUMN

To tilt the column, pull rearward on the lever below the turn signal control and move the wheel up or down, as desired. Push the lever forward to lock the column firmly in place.

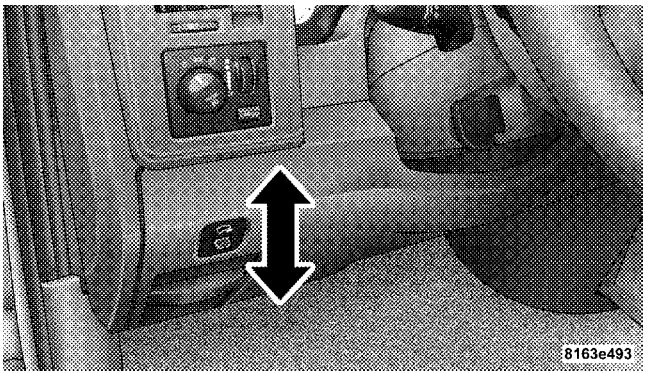
Tilt Steering Control Lever

WARNING!

Tilting the steering column while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Without a stable steering column, you could lose control of the vehicle and have an accident. Adjust the column only while the vehicle is stopped. Be sure it is locked before driving.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

DRIVER ADJUSTABLE PEDALS — IF EQUIPPED



Adjustable Pedals Switch

The power adjustable accelerator and brake pedals allow the driver to establish a comfortable position relative to the steering wheel and pedals.

Adjustment

1. Position the driver seat so that you are at least 10 in (254 mm) away from the airbag located in the center of the steering wheel.

2. Fasten and adjust the seatbelts.

3. Move the adjustable pedal switch, located to the left of the steering column near the parking brake release, in the direction you desire to move the pedals.

4. The pedals **cannot** be adjusted when the vehicle is in REVERSE or when the Electronic Speed Control is SET.

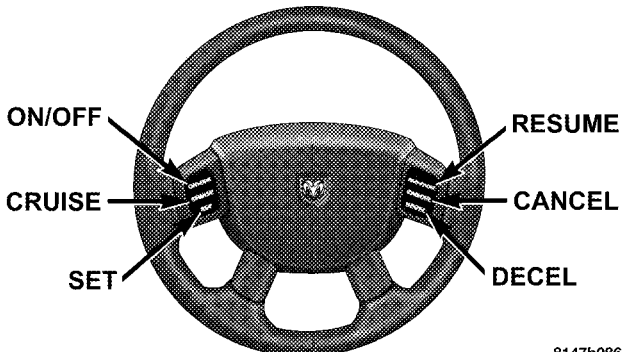
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Do not place any article under the adjustable pedals or impede its ability to move as it may cause damage to the pedal controls. Pedal travel may become limited if movement is stopped by an obstruction in the adjustable pedal's path.

ELECTRONIC SPEED CONTROL — IF EQUIPPED

When engaged, this device takes over accelerator operation at speeds greater than 25 mph (40 km/h). The controls are mounted on the steering wheel.



NOTE: The Electronic Speed Control System has been designed to shut down if multiple speed control switch buttons (i.e., SET and CANCEL) are operated simultaneously in order to ensure proper operation. The system can be reactivated by pushing the speed control switch ON/OFF button and re-establishing the desired vehicle SET speed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To Activate

Push the ON/OFF button to the ON position. In the instrument cluster, the word "CRUISE" illuminates when the system is on.

To Set At A Desired Speed

When the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press and release the SET button. Release the accelerator and the vehicle will operate at the selected speed.

To Deactivate

A soft tap on the brake pedal, normal braking, clutch pressure while slowing the vehicle, or pressing the CANCEL button will deactivate speed control without erasing the memory. Pushing the ON/OFF button to the OFF position or turning off the ignition erases the memory.

WARNING!

Leaving the Speed Control ON when not in use is dangerous. You could accidentally set the system to cause it to go faster than you want. You could lose control and have an accident. Always leave the system OFF when you aren't using it.

To Resume Speed

To resume a previously set speed, push and release the RESUME button. Resume can be used at any speed above 20 mph (32 km/h).

To Vary The Speed Setting

When the speed control is on, speed can be increased by pressing and holding the ACCEL button. When the button is released, a new set speed will be established.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Tapping the RESUME ACCEL button once will result in a speed increase of 1 mph (2 km/h). Each time the button is tapped, speed increases so that tapping the button three times will increase speed by 3 mph (4.8 km/h).

Tapping the SET DECEL button once will result in a 1 mph (2 km/h) speed decrease. Each time the button is tapped, speed decreases. For example, tapping the button three times will decrease the speed by 3 mph (4.8 km/h)

To decrease speed while speed control is ON, push down and hold SET DECEL. Release the lever when the desired speed is reached, and the new speed will be set.

To Accelerate For Passing

Depress the accelerator as you would normally. When the pedal is released, the vehicle will return to the set speed.

NOTE: When driving uphill, at elevations above 2,000 ft (610 m), or when the vehicle is heavily loaded (especially when towing) the vehicle may slow below the SET speed. If the vehicle speed drops below 25 mph (40 km/h), the speed control will automatically disengage. If this happens, you can push down on the accelerator pedal to maintain the desired speed.

Vehicles equipped with a 5–speed-manual transmission should be operated in 4th gear or lower under the above conditions.

Vehicles equipped with a Automatic transmission may exhibit several downshifts under the above conditions. To reduce the frequency of the downshifts and to improve vehicle performance, it is advisable to use either TOW HAUL or O/D OFF modes, which can be selected by pressing the TOW HAUL O/D OFF button located at the end of the gear shift lever.

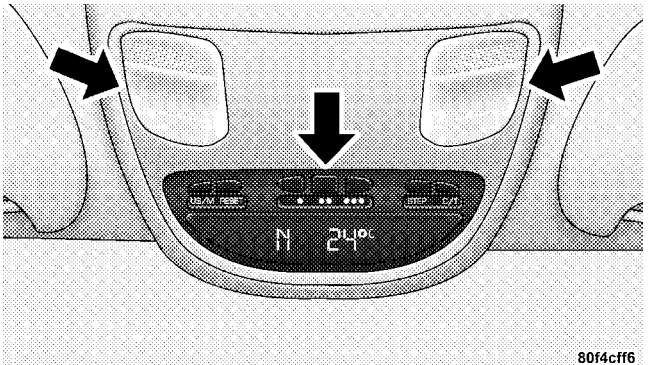
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Speed Control can be dangerous where the system can't maintain a constant speed. Your vehicle could go too fast for the conditions, and you could lose control. An accident could be the result. Don't use Speed Control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, icy, snow-covered, or slippery.

OVERHEAD CONSOLE — IF EQUIPPED

The two optional overhead consoles may consist of the following features:



Overhead Console Features

- Courtesy/Reading Lights
- Compass/Temperature Mini-Trip Computer (CMTC) — If Equipped
- Universal Garage Door Opener — If Equipped

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Courtesy/Reading Lights

In the middle of the console are two courtesy/reading lights.

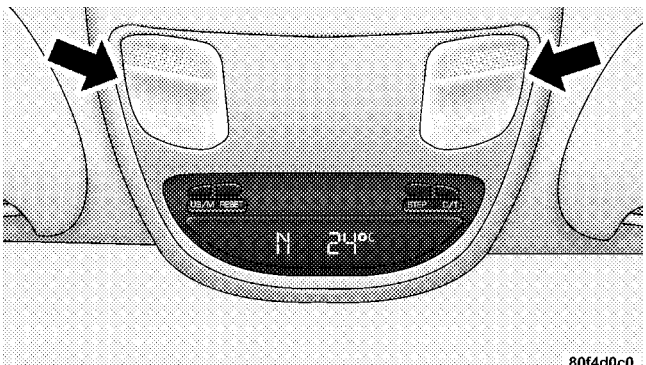
Both lights illuminate as courtesy lights when a door is opened, when the dimmer control is rotated to the courtesy light position (fully-upward position), or when the UNLOCK button is pressed on the Remote Keyless Entry transmitter, if equipped. These lights are also operated individually as reading lights by pressing the recessed area of the corresponding lens.

NOTE: The courtesy/reading lights will remain on until the switch is pressed a second time, so be sure they have been turned off before leaving the vehicle. If the interior lights are left on after the vehicle is turned off, they will extinguish after 15 minutes.

OVERHEAD CONSOLE WITH COMPASS/TEMPERATURE MINI-TRIP COMPUTER — IF EQUIPPED

This optional overhead console consists of the following:

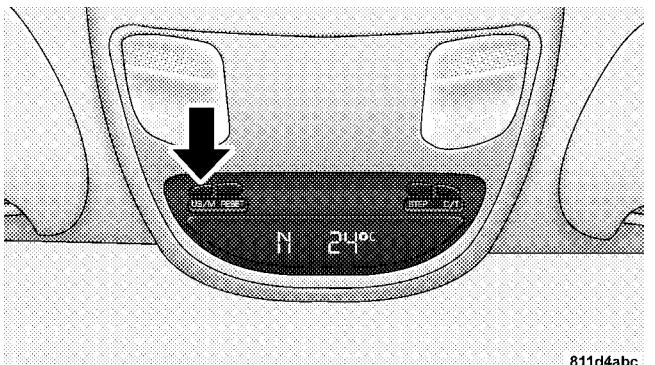
- Courtesy Lights
- Compass/Temperature Mini-Trip Computer (CMTC)



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

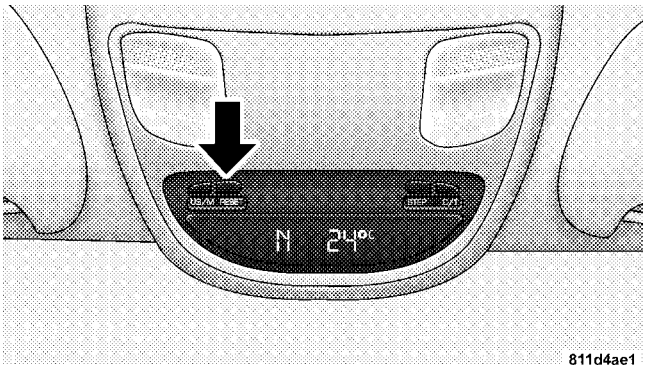
This overhead console allows you to choose between a compass/temperature display and one of four trip conditions being monitored.

US/M Button



Use this button to change the display from U.S. to METRIC measurement units.

RESET Button



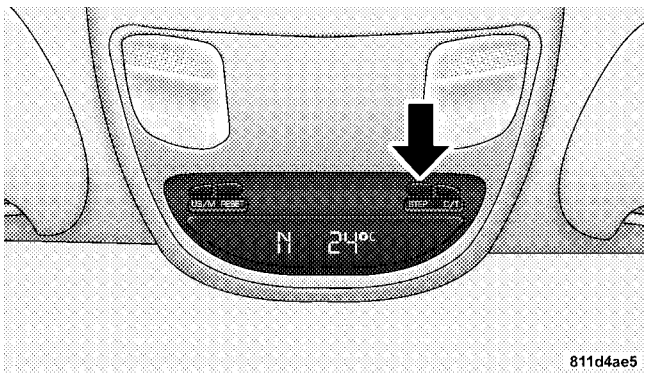
Use this button to reset the following displays:
Average Fuel Economy (AVG ECO)
Trip Odometer (ODO)
Elapsed time (ET)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Global Reset

If the RESET button is pressed twice within two seconds while in any of the three resettable displays (AVG ECO, ODO, ET), the Global Reset will reset all three displays.

Step Button



Use this button to choose or cycle through the four trip conditions.

Average Fuel Economy (AVG ECO)

Shows the average fuel economy since the last reset. Average fuel economy is a running average of the amount of fuel used and the distance the vehicle has traveled.

When the fuel economy is reset, the display will momentarily blank. Then, the history will be erased, and the **AVERAGING WILL CONTINUE FROM WHERE IT WAS BEFORE THE RESET**. The reset value is based on a minimal amount of fuel used and the distance traveled from the previous drive cycle. The display **may take several miles/kilometers** for this value to change dependent upon driving habits.

3

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Distance To Empty (DTE)

Shows the estimated distance that can be traveled with the fuel remaining in the tank. This estimated distance is determined by weighted average of the instantaneous and average fuel economy, according to the current fuel tank level. This is not resettable

NOTE: Significant changes in driving style or vehicle loading will greatly affect the actual drivable distance of the vehicle, regardless of the DTE displayed value.

When the DTE value is less than 30 mi (48 km/h) estimated driving distance, the DTE display will change to an alternating test display of "LO" and "FUEL". This display will continue until the vehicle runs out of fuel. Adding a significant amount of fuel to the vehicle will turn off the "LO FUEL" text and a new DTE value will be displayed, based on the current values in the DTE calculation and the current fuel tank level.

NOTE: It is possible for DTE to display "LO FUEL" before the low fuel warning light turns on in the instrument cluster. This could occur because low fuel warning is set to a specified fuel tank volume and DTE is an estimated distance calculation based on fuel economy and remaining fuel tank volume.

Ram fuel tank volumes are as follows:

- 26 gal (98 L) - 1500 short box models
- 34 gal (128 L) - 1500 Quad Cab® (if equipped)/2500/3500/Power Wagon short box models
- 35 gal (132 L) - 1500/2500/3500/ /Power Wagon long box models

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Trip Odometer (ODO)

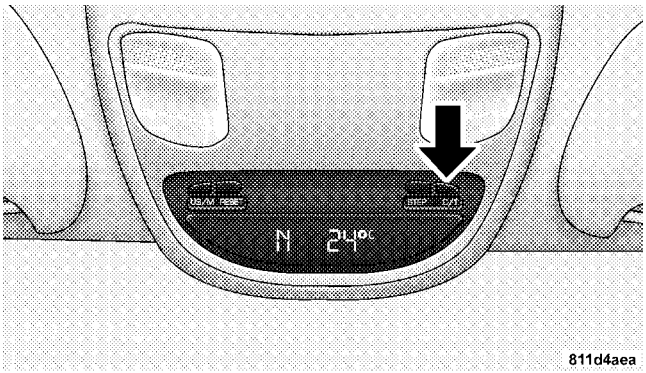
NOTE: The maximum value is approximately 6000 mi (9956 km/h). Then the trip odometer must be reset in order to update the trip odometer miles/kilometers.

This display shows the distance traveled since the last reset. Resetting of this screen will cause the trip odometer to change to zero.

Elapsed Time (ET)

This display shows the accumulated ignition ON time since the last reset. Resetting the Elapsed Time will cause the display to change to zero.

C/T Button



Use this button to select a readout of the outside temperature and one of eight compass headings that indicate the direction in which the vehicle is facing.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Even if the display still reads a few degrees above 32° F (0° C), the road surface may be icy, particularly in woods or on bridges. Drive carefully under such conditions to prevent an accident and possible personal injury or property damage.

Automatic Compass Calibration

This compass is self-calibrating which eliminates the need to manually set the compass. When the vehicle is new, the compass may appear erratic and the CAL symbol will be displayed.

After completing up to three 360° turns, with the vehicle traveling less than 5 mph (8 km/h), in an area free from large metal or metallic objects, the CAL symbol will turn off and the compass will function normally.

Manual Compass Calibration

NOTE: To ensure proper compass calibration, make sure the compass variance is properly set before manually calibrating the compass.

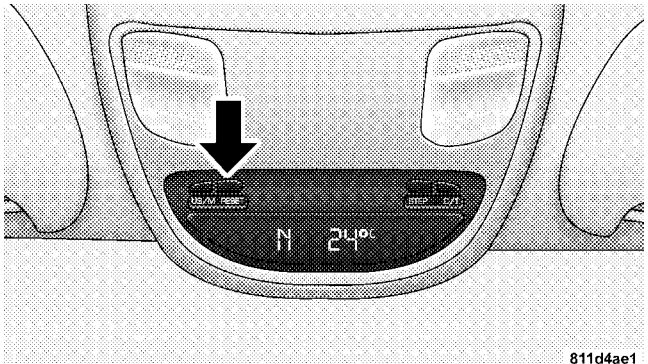
If the compass appears erratic and the CAL symbol does not appear, you must manually put the compass into the "Calibration" mode.

Recalibrating The Compass

Turn ON the ignition and set the display to "Compass/Temperature." Press and hold the RESET button to change the display between VAR (compass variance) and CAL (compass calibration) modes. When the CAL symbol is displayed, complete one 360° turn in an area free from large metal objects or power lines. The CAL symbol will turn off and the compass will function normally.

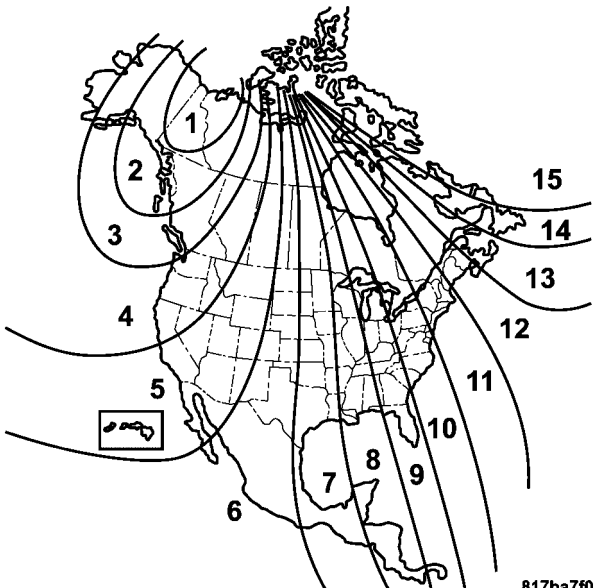
NOTE: Magnetic materials should be kept away from the overhead console. This is where the compass sensor is located.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



Reset Button

Compass Variance is the difference between magnetic north and geographic north. In some areas of the country, the difference between magnetic and geographic north is great enough to cause the compass to give false readings. If this occurs, the compass variance must be set according to the Compass Variance Map.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: The default for the compass variance is zone 8.

To set the variance: Turn the ignition ON and set the display to "Compass/Temperature." Press and hold the RESET button approximately five seconds. The last variance zone number will be displayed. Press the STEP button to select the new variance zone and press the RESET button to resume normal operation.

Outside Temperature

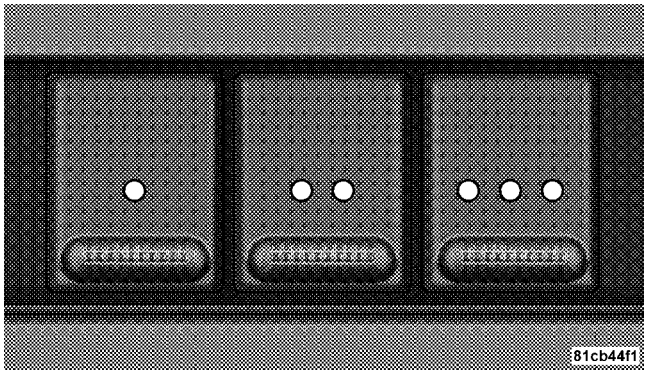
Because the ambient temperature sensor is located underhood, engine temperature can influence the displayed temperature, therefore, temperature readings are slowly updated when the vehicle speed is below 20 mph (30 km/h) or during stop and go driving.

GARAGE DOOR OPENER — IF EQUIPPED

HomeLink® replaces up to three remote controls (handheld transmitters) that operate devices such as garage door openers, motorized gates, lighting, or home security systems. The HomeLink® unit operates off of your vehicle's battery.

The HomeLink® buttons are located in the overhead console, and contain one, two, or three dots/lines designating the different HomeLink® channels.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



HomeLink Buttons

NOTE: HomeLink® is disabled when the Vehicle Theft Alarm is active.

WARNING!

Your motorized door or gate will open and close while you are training the Universal Transceiver. Do not train the transceiver if people or pets are in the path of the door or gate. Only use this transceiver with a garage door opener that has a "stop and reverse" feature as required by federal safety standards. This includes most garage door opener models manufactured after 1982. Do not use a garage door opener without these safety features. Call toll-free 1–800–355–3515 or, on the Internet at www.HomeLink.com for safety information or assistance.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Vehicle exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas. Do not run your vehicle in the garage while training the transceiver. Exhaust gas can cause serious injury or death.

Programming HomeLink®

Before You Begin

The Compass Mini-Trip Computer (CMTC) illuminates the HomeLink® symbol (a house with an arrow inside it) along with 1, 2 or 3 indicators under it, when a HomeLink® button is pressed.

Pay attention to the indicator(s), as they will flash at different rates, or remain solid during training.

If you have not trained any of the HomeLink® buttons, erase all channels before you begin training.

To do this, press and hold the two outside buttons for 20 seconds. Release the buttons when the indicators start to flash.

It is recommended that a **new battery** be placed in the hand-held transmitter of the device being programmed to HomeLink®, for more efficient training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

Your vehicle should be parked outside of the garage while training.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position.

2. Place the hand-held transmitter 1 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm) from the HomeLink® buttons, while keeping the HomeLink® display in view.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

For optimal training, point the battery end of the hand-held transmitter away from the HomeLink®.

3. Simultaneously, press and hold both the chosen HomeLink®button and the hand-held transmitter button until the indicator(s) change from a slow to a rapid flash rate.

Then release both the HomeLink® and hand-held transmitter buttons.

It may take up to 30 seconds, or longer in rare cases. The garage door may open & close while you train.

If the signal is too weak to train, replace the battery in the original hand-held transmitter.

NOTE: Some gate operators and garage door openers may require you to replace Step #3 with procedures noted in the "Gate Operator/Canadian Programming" section.

4. Press and hold the just-trained HomeLink® button. If the indicator(s) blink rapidly for two seconds and then remains constant, continue with the next section: Programming A Rolling Code System.

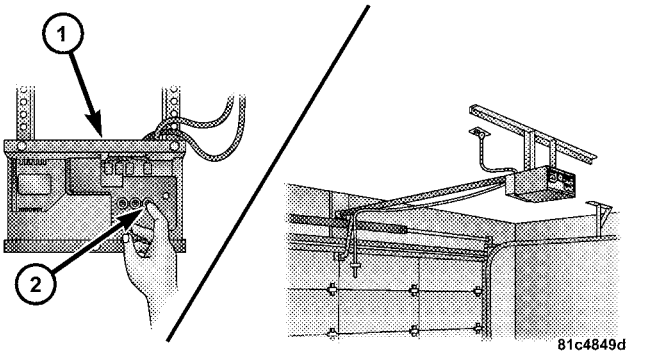
NOTE: After training a HomeLink® channel, if the garage door does not operate with HomeLink® and the garage door opener was manufactured after 1995, the garage door opener may have rolling code. If so, proceed to the heading, "Programming A Rolling Code System."

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. PROGRAMMING A ROLLING CODE SYSTEM

At the garage door opener motor (in the garage), locate the “learn” or “training” button.

This can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the garage door opener motor (it is NOT the button normally used to open & close the door).



1 — Garage Door Opener
2 — Training Button

6. Firmly press and release the “learn” or “training” button. The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.

NOTE: There are 30 seconds in which to initiate the next step after the “Learn” button has been pressed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

7. Return to the vehicle and press the programmed HomeLink® button twice (holding the button for 2 seconds each time). If the device is plugged in and activates, programming is complete.

If the device does not activate, press the button a third time (for 2 seconds) to complete the training.

If you are have any problems, or require assistance, please call toll-free 1–800–355–3515 or, on the Internet at www.HomeLink.com for information or assistance.

To program the remaining two HomeLink® buttons, repeat each step for each remaining button. DO NOT erase the channels.

Gate Operator/Canadian Programming

Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to "time-out" (or quit) after several seconds of transmission – which may not be long enough for HomeLink® to pick up the signal during programming. Similar to this Canadian law, some U.S. gate operators are designed to "time-out" in the same manner.

It may be helpful to unplug the device during the cycling process, to prevent possible overheating of the garage door or gate motor.

If you are having difficulties programming a garage door opener or a gate operator, replace "Programming HomeLink," Step 3, with the following:

3. Continue to press and hold the HomeLink® button, while you press and release - every two seconds ("cycle"), your hand-held transmitter until HomeLink® has successfully accepted the frequency signal. The indicator(s) will change from a slow flash, to a rapid flash when trained.

If you unplugged the device for training, plug it back in at this time.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Then proceed with Step 4 under, "Programming HomeLink®," earlier in this section.

Using HomeLink®

To operate, simply press and release the programmed HomeLink® button. Activation will now occur for the trained device (i.e., garage door opener, gate operator, security system, entry door lock, home/office lighting, etc.) The hand-held transmitter of the device may also be used at any time.

Reprogramming A Single HomeLink® Button

To reprogram a channel that has been previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position.

2. Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button, for 20 seconds, until the indicator(s) starts to flash. **Do not release the button.**

3. **Without releasing the button,** proceed with PROGRAMMING HOMELINK®, Step #2, and follow all remaining steps.

Security

It is advised to erase all channels before you sell or turn in your vehicle.

To do this, press and hold the two outside buttons, for 20 seconds, until the indicators begin to flash. Note that all channels will be erased. Individual channels cannot be erased.

The HomeLink® Universal Transceiver is disabled when the Vehicle Theft Alarm is active.

Troubleshooting Tips

If you are having trouble programming HomeLink®, here are some of the most common solutions:

- Replace the battery in the original transmitter.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Press the “Learn” button on the Garage Door Opener to complete the training for Rolling Code.
- Did you unplug the device for training, and remember to plug it back in?

If you have any problems, or require assistance, please call toll-free 1–800–355–3515 or, on the Internet at www.HomeLink.com, for information or assistance.

General Information

This device complies with FCC rules part 15 and Industry Canada RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference

2. This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation

NOTE: The transmitter has been tested and it complies with FCC and IC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the device.

The term “IC” before the certification / registration number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

POWER SUNROOF — IF EQUIPPED

The power sunroof switch is located between the sun visors on the overhead console.

NOTE: The Power Accessory Delay feature will allow the power sunroof to operate for ten minutes after the ignition is turned OFF or a front door is opened.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

- **Never leave children alone in a vehicle. Leaving unattended children in a vehicle is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Don't leave the key in the ignition. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.**
- **In an accident, there is a greater risk of being thrown from a vehicle with an open sunroof. You could also be seriously injured or killed. Always fasten your seat belt properly and make sure all passengers are properly secured too.**
- **Do not allow small children to operate the sunroof. Never allow fingers or other body parts, or any object to project through the sunroof opening. Injury may result.**

Open Sunroof - Express Mode

Momentarily pressing the switch rearward will activate the Express Open Feature, causing the sunroof to open automatically. During the Express Open operation, any movement of the switch will stop the sunroof and it will remain in a partial open position. Again, momentarily pressing the switch rearward will activate the Express Open Feature.

Closing Sunroof - Express

Press the switch forward and release, and the sunroof will close automatically from any position. The sunroof will close fully and stop automatically. This is called Express Close. During Express Close operation, any movement of the switch will stop the sunroof.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Pinch Protect Feature

This feature will detect an obstruction in the opening of the sunroof during Express Close operation. If an obstruction in the path of the sunroof is detected, the sunroof will automatically retract. Remove the obstruction if this occurs. Next, press the switch forward and release to Express Close.

Pinch Protect Override

If a known obstruction (ice, debris, etc.) prevents closing, press the switch forward and hold for two seconds after the reversal occurs. This allows the sunroof to move towards the closed position.

NOTE: Pinch protection is disabled while the switch is pressed.

Venting Sunroof - Express

Press and release the ″V″ button, and the sunroof will open to the vent position. This is called Express Vent, and will occur regardless of sunroof position. During Express Vent operation, any movement of the switch will stop the sunroof.

Sunshade Operation

The sunshade can be opened manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically as the sunroof opens.

NOTE: The sunshade cannot be closed if the sunroof is open.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Wind Buffeting

Wind buffeting can be described as the perception of pressure on the ears or a helicopter type sound in the ears. Your vehicle may exhibit wind buffeting with the windows down, or the sunroof (if equipped) in certain open or partially open positions. This is a normal occurrence and can be minimized. If the buffeting occurs with the rear windows open, open the front and rear windows together to minimize the buffeting. If the buffeting occurs with the sunroof open, adjust the sunroof opening to minimize the buffeting or open any window.

Sunroof Maintenance

Use only a non-abrasive cleaner and a soft cloth to clean the glass panel.

Sunroof Fully Closed

Press the switch forward and release to ensure that the sunroof is fully closed.

ELECTRICAL POWER OUTLETS

The auxiliary electrical outlet can provide power for in-cab accessories designed for use with the standard “cigar lighter” plug. The outlet is located in the instrument panel below and to the right of the Climate Control Panel. A cap is attached to the outlet base indicating “Power Outlet” 12 Volt -20A.

There is an additional power outlet inside the center console of vehicles equipped with 40-20-40, or Bucket front seats. There is also a power outlet located on the rear of the center console for Quad Cab® or Mega Cab® vehicles (only) equipped with bucket seats.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The outlet(s) has/have a fused direct feed from the battery so it/they receive power whether the ignition is ON or OFF.

All accessories connected to this/these outlet(s) should be removed or turned OFF when the vehicle is not in use to protect the battery against discharge.

NOTE: If desired, all of the power outlets can be converted by your authorized dealer to provide power with the ignition switch in the ON position only.

CAUTION!

Electrical Outlet Use With Engine Off

- **Many accessories that can be plugged in draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent engine starting.**
- **Accessories that draw higher power (i.e., coolers, vacuum cleaners, lights, etc.), will discharge the battery even more quickly. Only use these intermittently and with greater caution.**
- **After the use of high power draw accessories, or long periods of the vehicle not being started (with accessories still plugged in), the vehicle must be driven a sufficient length of time to allow the generator to recharge the vehicle's battery.**

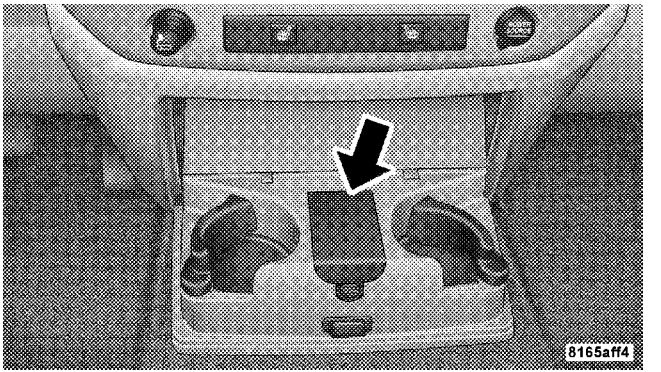
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CIGAR LIGHTER AND ASH RECEIVER

The removable ash receiver is located in the instrument panel cupholder tray.

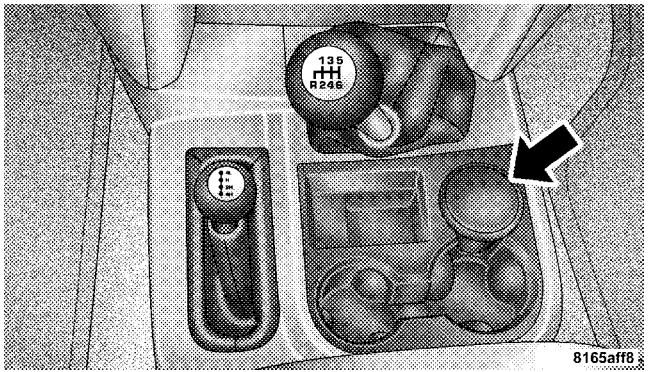
The cigar lighter is located on the instrument panel, above and to the left of the ash receiver.

As a child safety precaution, the lighter only operates with the ignition switch ON. It heats when pushed in and pops out automatically when ready for use. **To preserve the heating element, do not hold the lighter in the heating position.**



Ash Receiver Automatic Transmission

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Ash Tray Manual Transmission

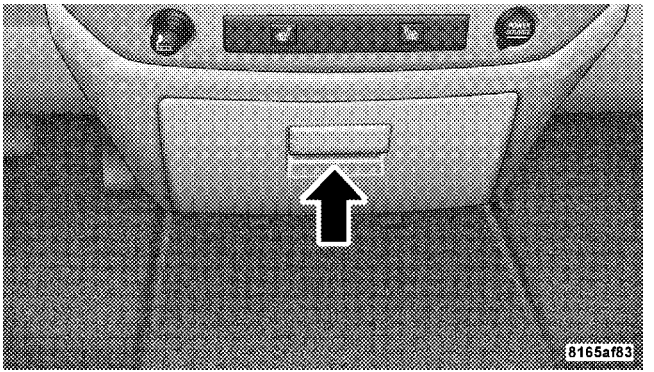
CUPHOLDERS

Front Instrument Panel Cupholders (40–20–40 Seats) — Automatic Transmission

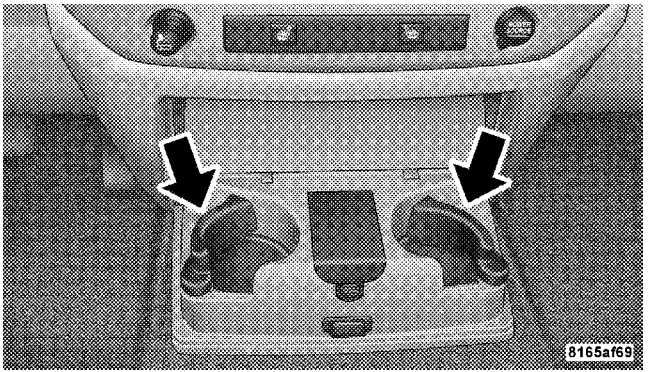
Your new vehicle is equipped with two adjustable cupholders. The cupholder is opened by pulling on the cup holder door handle located on the front surface. Each opening in the cupholder is adjustable and will hold cups and mugs of various sizes.

To secure the cup, place the cup to be held into one of the cup wells and then push the cupholder arm toward the cup until it is held stable.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Cupholder Door Handle

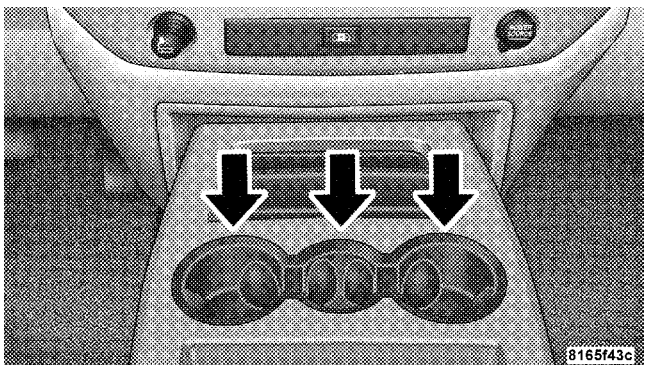


Cupholders Automatic Transmission

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

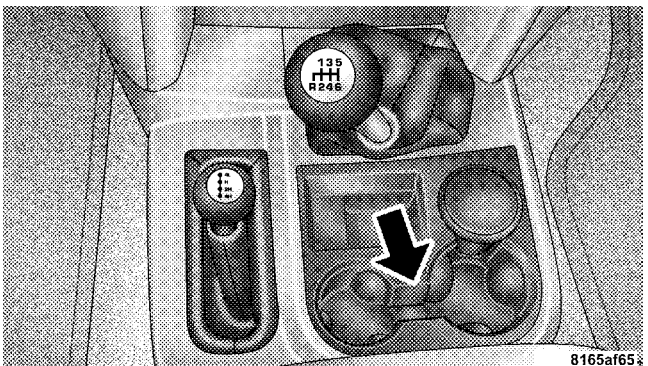
Front Instrument Panel Cupholders (Bucket Seats) — Automatic Transmission

If your new vehicle is equipped with bucket seats there are three cupholders located on the front of the center console.



Cupholders Bucket Seat

Front Instrument Panel Cupholders — Manual Transmission



Cupholders Manual Transmission

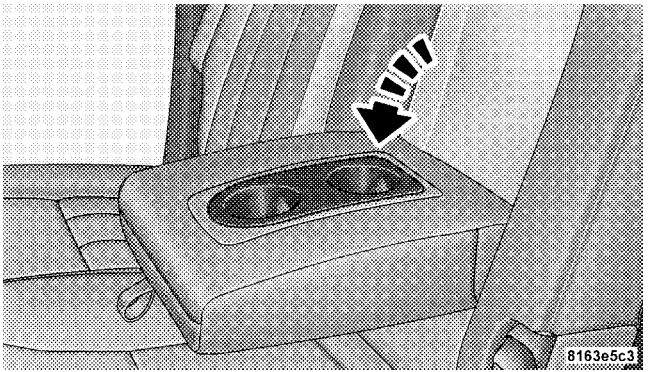
Information Provided by:
DEALER
E-PROCESS

Rear Cupholder (Quad Cab®) — If Equipped

Quad Cab® vehicles may be equipped with a rear cupholder that consists of two cup wells for rear passenger convenience.

Rear Cupholder (Mega Cab®)

Mega Cab® vehicles are equipped with rear cupholders located in the center armrest.

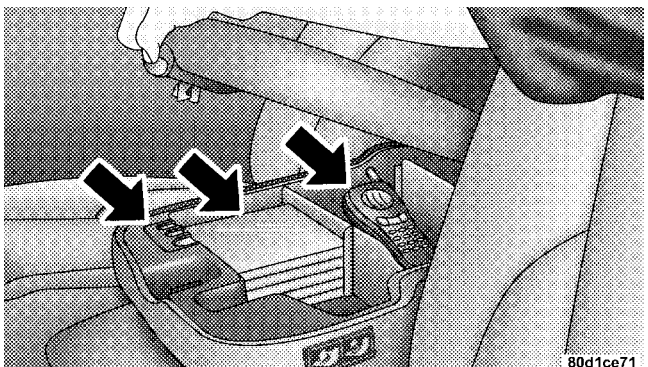


Mega Cab® Rear Armrest Cupholder

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STORAGE

Center Storage Compartment (40–20–40 Seat) – If Equipped



Center Storage Compartment

The center portion of the seat folds down to provide an armrest with unique storage compartments under the lid. Push the button on the front of the armrest to raise the cover. Inside there is a power outlet (if equipped), removable coin holder (if equipped), and two dividers to configure the storage area into compartments. For example, compartments can be configured to hold a lap-top computer, a cellular telephone, CDs and miscellaneous items. The top of the cover provides a generous firm surface to serve as a desktop for your "mobile office."

WARNING!

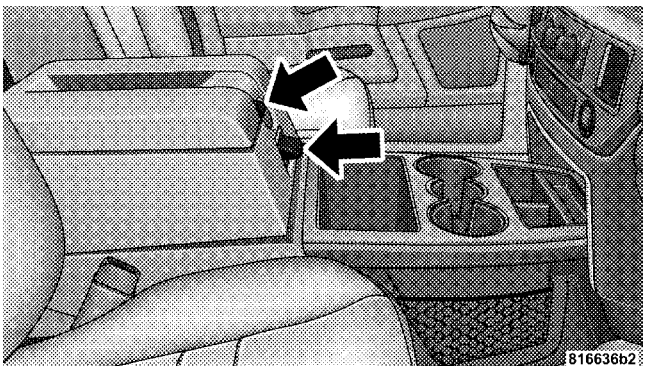
- **This armrest is not a seat. Anyone seated on the armrest could be seriously injured during vehicle operation, or an accident. Only use the center seating position when the armrest is fully upright.**
- **In an accident, the latch may open if the total weight of the items stored exceeds about 10 lbs (4.5 kg). These items could be thrown about endangering occupants of the vehicle. Items stored should not exceed a total of 10 lbs (4.5 kg).**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

- **Many accessories that can be plugged in draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent engine starting.**
- **Accessories that draw higher power (i.e., coolers, vacuum cleaners, lights, etc.), will degrade the battery even more quickly. Only use these intermittently and with greater caution.**
- **After the use of high power draw accessories, or long periods of the vehicle not being started (with accessories still plugged in), the vehicle must be driven a sufficient length of time to allow the generator to recharge the vehicle's battery.**

Center Storage Compartment (Bucket Seats) – If Equipped



Center Storage Compartment

Push the upper button on the front of the armrest to raise the upper cover. Inside is a power outlet (if equipped), a cutout for a cell phone charger cord, removable coin holder (if equipped), and a divider to configure the

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

storage area into separate compartments. Lift the lower handle on the front of the armrest, and raise the armrest for access to the lower storage bin. On Quad Cab® and Mega Cab® models the rear of the floor console offers a power outlet, and a tip out bin.

WARNING!

- **This armrest is not a seat. Anyone seated on the armrest could be seriously injured during vehicle operation, or an accident. Only use the center seating position when the armrest is fully upright.**
- **In an accident, the latch may open if the total weight of the items stored exceeds about 10 lbs (4.5 kg). These items could be thrown about endangering occupants of the vehicle. Items stored should not exceed a total of 10 lbs (4.5 kg).**

CAUTION!

- **Many accessories that can be plugged in draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent engine starting.**
- **Accessories that draw higher power (i.e., coolers, vacuum cleaners, lights, etc.), will degrade the battery even more quickly. Only use these intermittently and with greater caution.**
- **After the use of high power draw accessories, or long periods of the vehicle not being started (with accessories still plugged in), the vehicle must be driven a sufficient length of time to allow the generator to recharge the vehicle's battery.**

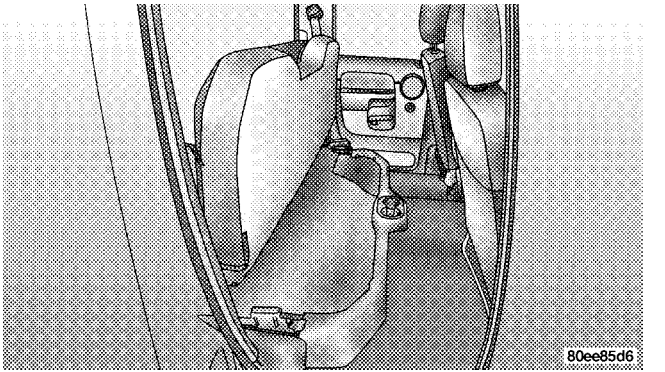
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Storage and Seats (Quad Cab® Models)

Located in the center of the front 40–20–40 seat cushion there is a storage compartment.

Regular Cab models also have storage behind the seat.

The Quad Cab® models provide additional storage under the rear seat. Lift the seat to access the storage compartment.



Quad Cab® Storage

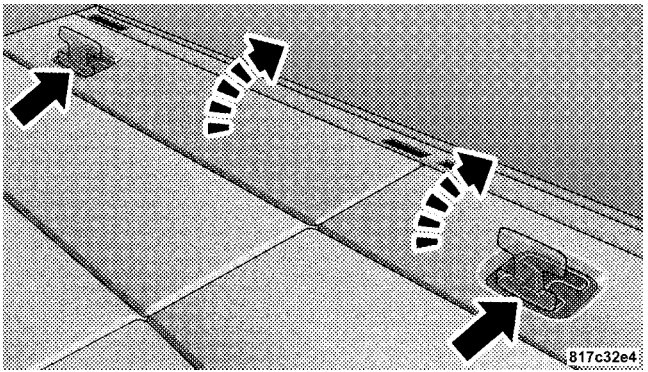
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Storage and Seats (Mega Cab Models)

The Mega Cab models provide additional storage behind the rear seat.

To gain access to the Mega Cab rear storage, fold the rear seats to the “kneel position”. (See page 128 for more information.)

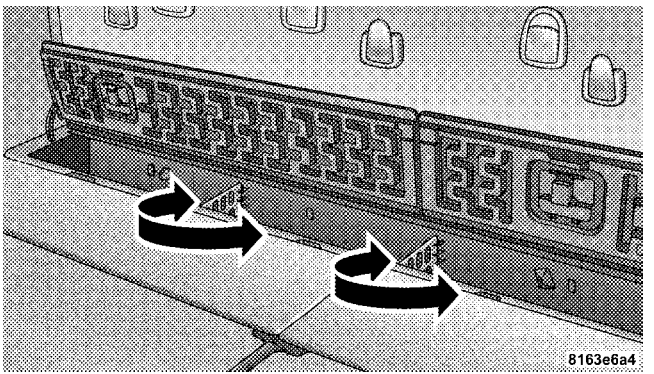
Push down on the front of the storage compartment handle and lift the storage compartment cover.



Mega Cab Rear Storage Compartment Handle

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

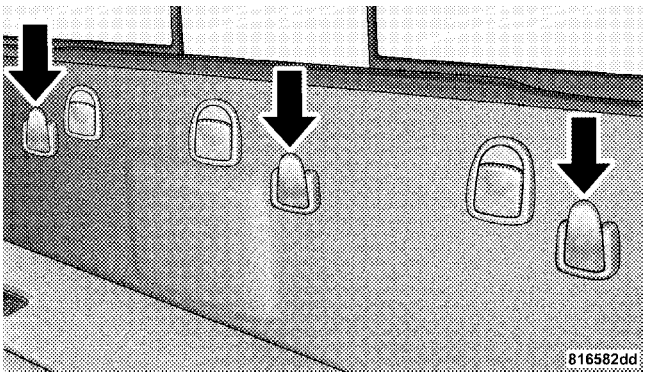
The rear storage compartment can be divided into three separate compartments by using the divider doors inside the storage compartment.



Mega Cab Rear Storage Dividers

Plastic Grocery Bag Retainers (Mega Cab Models)

Retainer hooks which will hold plastic grocery bag handles are built into the back panel of the cab, behind the rear seat.

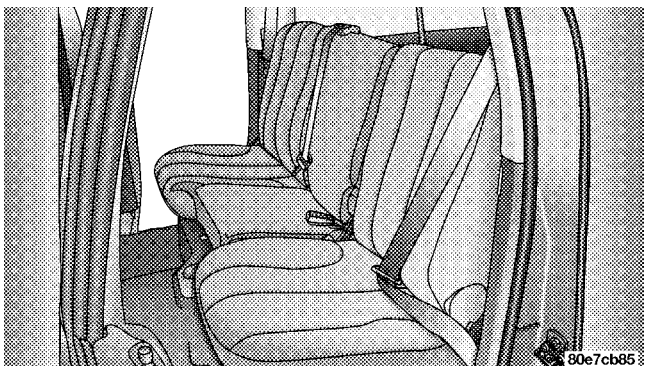


Grocery Bag Hooks

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

FOLD FLAT LOAD FLOOR — IF EQUIPPED

Quad Cab® models with a 60/40 rear seat may be equipped with a folding load floor.



Quad Cab® Rear 60/40 Seat

WARNING!

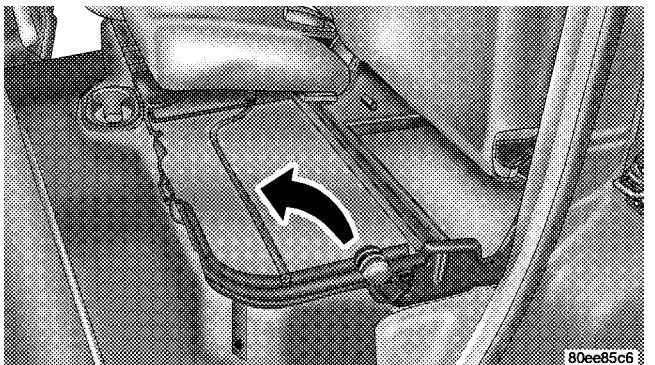
Do not operate the vehicle with loose items stored on the load floor. While driving or in an accident you may experience abrupt stopping, rapid acceleration, or sharp turns. Loose objects stored on the load floor may move around with force and strike occupants, resulting in serious or fatal injury.

3

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

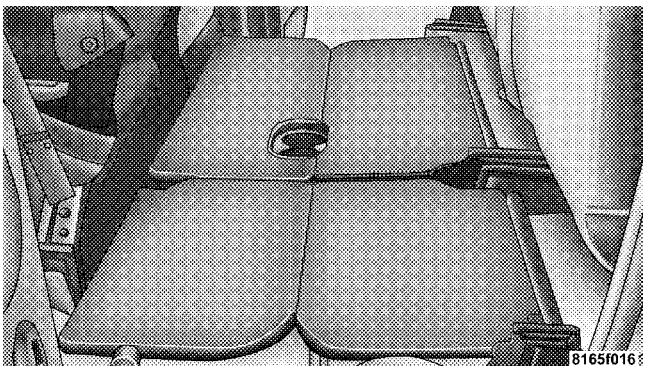
Unfolding the Load Floor

1. Lift the 60/40 seat cushion(s) to the upward position.



Unfolding The Load Floor

2. Grasp the knob on the load floor and lift the knob until the load floor unfolds into position.



Load Floor In Open Position

3. Reverse the procedure to store the load floor.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Positioning the Load Floor for Storage Access Under the Seat

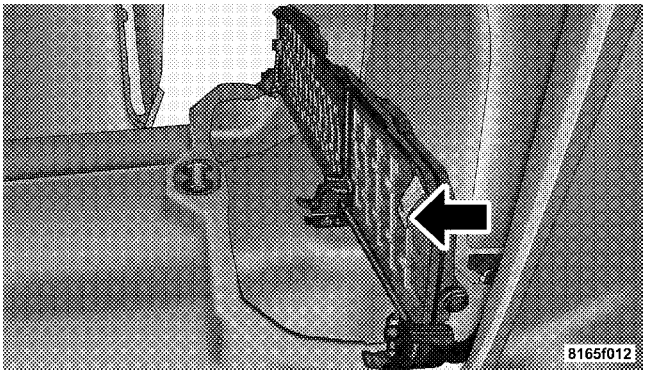
1. Lift the 60/40 seat cushion(s) to the upward position.

2. Unsnap the securing snap located at either side of the load floor.

3. Lift the load floor up to access storage under the load floor.

WARNING!

Do not drive with the load floor in the up position. When stopping fast or in an accident, the load floor could move to the down position causing serious injury.



Load Floor Securing Straps

4. Reverse the procedure to put the load floor back in the secured down position before you operate the vehicle.

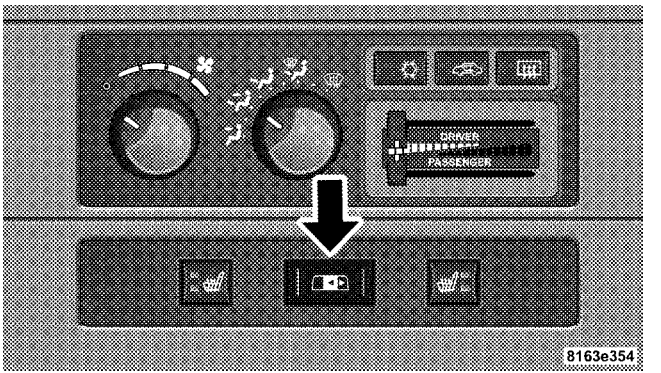
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

REAR WINDOW FEATURES

Electric Rear Window Defroster and Heated Sideview Mirrors — If Equipped

The Electric Rear Window Defroster and Heated Sideview Mirrors are activated by pressing the heated grid button, located on the Climate Control panel, with the ignition ON. Turning OFF the ignition will deactivate the Electric Rear Window Defroster and Heated Sideview Mirrors feature. These features also turn off after activation, when 15 minutes have elapsed. For ten more minutes of operation, push the button again.

Power Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped



Power Sliding Rear Window Switch

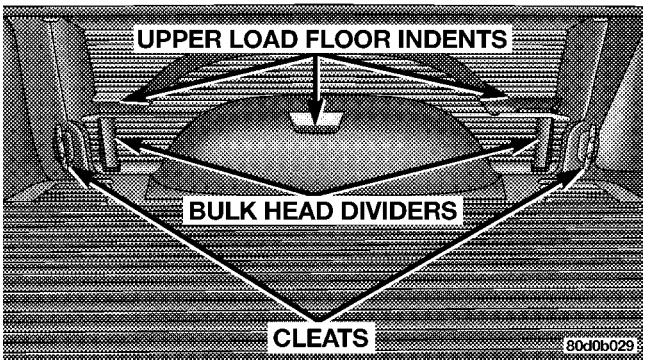
The power sliding rear window switch is located on the instrument panel below the climate controls. Press the right side of the switch to open the glass and the left side of the switch to close the glass.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped

A locking device in the center of the window helps to prevent entry from the rear of the vehicle. Squeeze the lock to release the window.

PICKUP BOX



Pickup Box Features

The pickup box on your new vehicle has many features designed for utility and convenience.

NOTE: If you are installing a toolbox to the front of the pickup box, you must use Mopar® toolbox brackets available from your authorized dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

You can carry wide building materials (sheets of plywood, etc.) by building a raised load floor. Place lumber across the box in the indentations provided above the wheel housings and in the bulkhead dividers to form the floor.

WARNING!

The pickup box is intended for load carrying purposes only, not for passengers, who should sit in seats and use seat belts.

WARNING!

- **Care should always be exercised when operating a vehicle with unrestrained cargo. Vehicle speeds may need to be reduced. Severe turns or rough roads may cause shifting or bouncing of the cargo that may result in vehicle damage. If wide building materials are to be frequently carried, the installation of a support is recommended. This will restrain the cargo and transfer the load to the pickup box floor.**
- **If you wish to carry more than 600 lbs (272 kg) of material suspended above the wheelhouse, supports must be installed to transfer the weight of the load to the pickup box floor or vehicle damage may result. The use of proper supports will permit loading up to the rated payload.**
- **Unrestrained cargo may be thrown forward in an accident causing serious or fatal injury.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

There are stampings in the sheet metal on the inner side bulkheads of the box in front of and behind both wheel housings. Place wooden boards across the box from side to side to create separate load compartments in the pickup box.

There are four tie-down cleats bolted to the lower sides of the pickup box that can sustain loads up to 1000 lbs (450 kg) total.

SLIDE-IN CAMPERS

Camper Applications

Certain truck models are not recommended for slide-in campers. To determine if your vehicle is excluded, please refer to the "Consumer Information Truck-Camper Loading" document available from your authorized dealer. For safety reasons, follow all instructions in this important document.

NOTE: When a cap or pickup camper is installed on a vehicle, an alternate CHMSL (Center High-Mounted Stop Light) must be provided.

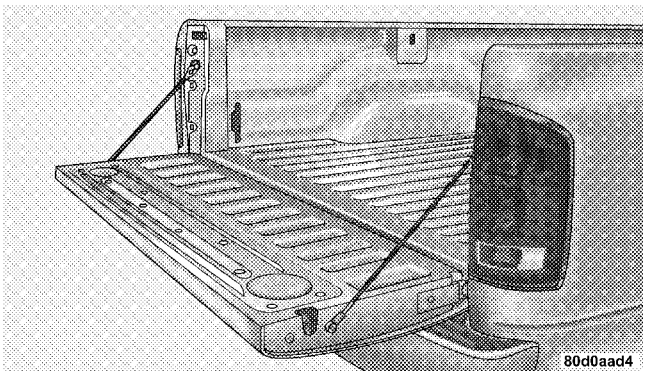
EASY-OFF TAILGATE

To simplify mounting of a camper unit with an overhang, the tailgate can be removed quickly. If the truck is a 3500 dual rear wheel model, unplug the tailgate wire harness from under the rear of the truck and pull the harness out of the cargo box access hole. Unlatch the tailgate and remove the support cables by releasing the lock tang from the pivot, then rotate and pull away from the box. Once the cables are free, move to the right side of the tailgate hinge bracket.

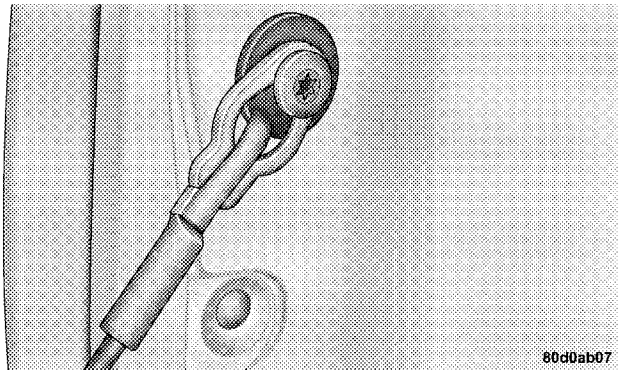
Raise the right side of the tailgate until the right side pivot clears the hanger bracket. Slide the entire tailgate to the right to free the left side pivot. Remove the tailgate from the vehicle, entirely. Do not carry the tailgate loose in the truck pickup box.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: Dual rear wheel pickup models require properly spaced rear clearance lights. If such a vehicle is operated without a tailgate, suitable lights must be installed.



Tailgate Open



Tailgate Support Strap Attachment

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

To avoid inhaling carbon monoxide, which is deadly, the exhaust system on vehicles equipped with "Cap or Slide-In Campers" should extend beyond the overhanging camper compartment and be free of leaks.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

UNDERSTANDING YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL

CONTENTS

- Instruments And Controls 193
- Instrument Cluster 194
  - Premium Cluster – If Equipped 194
  - Base Cluster – If Equipped 195
- Instrument Cluster Description 196
- Electronic Digital Clock 209
  - Clock Setting Procedure 209
- Radio General Information 209
  - Radio Broadcast Signals 209
  - Two Types Of Signals 210
- Sales Code REF — AM/FM/CD (Single-Disc) Radio With Optional Satellite Radio And Hands-Free Phone Capability 211
  - Operating Instructions - Radio Mode 211
  - Operating Instructions - CD Mode 215
  - Operating Instructions - Auxiliary Mode 217
  - Operating Instructions - Hands-Free Phone — If Equipped 218

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- □ Operating Instructions - Satellite Radio — If Equipped 218

■ Sales Code RAQ – AM/FM/CD (6-Disc) Radio With Optional Satellite Radio, Hands-Free Phone, And Video Entertainment System (VES™) Capabilities 219

- □ Operating Instructions - Radio Mode 219
- □ Operating Instructions - (CD Mode For CD Audio Play) 224
- □ Load/Eject Button (CD Mode For CD Audio Play) 226
- □ Notes On Playing MP3 Files 228
- □ Operating Instructions - (CD Mode For MP3 Audio Play) 230
- □ Load/Eject Button (CD Mode For MP3 Play) . .230

■ Sales Code RAK – AM/FM/Cassette/CD (6-Disc) Radio With Optional Satellite Radio, Hands Free Phone, Video, MP3, And WMA Capabilities 233

- □ Operating Instructions - Radio Mode 233
- □ Operating Instructions — Tape Player 237
- □ Seek Button 238
- □ Fast Forward (FF) 238
- □ Rewind (RW) 238
- □ Tape Eject 238
- □ Scan Button 238
- □ Changing Tape Direction 239
- □ Metal Tape Selection 239
- □ Pinch Roller Release 239

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- □ Noise Reduction 239
- □ Operating Instructions - (CD Mode For CD Audio Play) 240
- □ Load/Eject Button (CD Mode For CD Audio Play) 241
- □ Notes On Playing MP3 Files 243
- □ Operating Instructions - (CD Mode For MP3 And WMA Audio Play) . .245
- □ Load/Eject Button (CD Mode For MP3 And WMA Play) 245

■ Sales Code REC — AM/FM/CD (6–Disc) Radio With Navigation System 248

- □ Operating Instructions — Satellite Radio — If Equipped 248
- □ REC Setting The Clock 248

■ Video Entertainment System (Sales Code XRV) — If Equipped 251

■ Satellite Radio — If Equipped 251

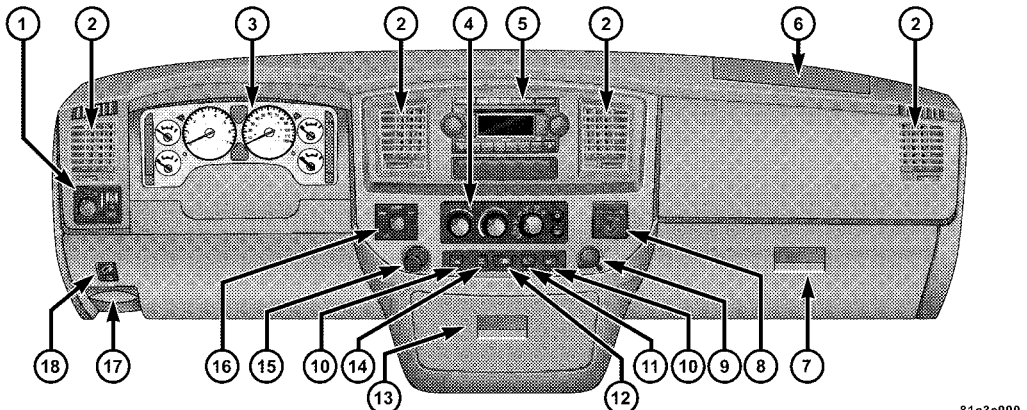
- □ System Activation 251
- □ Electronic Serial Number/Sirius Identification Number (ESN/SID) 251
- □ Selecting Satellite Mode In REF, RAQ, And RAK Radios 252
- □ Selecting A Channel 253
- □ Storing And Selecting Preset Channels 253
- □ Using The PTY (Program Type) Button — If Equipped 254
- □ PTY Button Scan 254
- □ PTY Button Seek 254

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- □ Satellite Antenna 254
- □ Reception Quality 255
- ■ Remote Sound System Controls — If Equipped . .255
- □ Radio Operation 256
- □ Tape Player 256
- □ CD Player 256
- ■ Cassette Tape And Player Maintenance 257
- ■ Compact Disc Maintenance 258
- ■ Radio Operation And Cellular Phones 258
- ■ Climate Controls 259
- □ Heater Only — If Equipped 259
- □ Air Conditioning And Heating — If Equipped 261
- □ Air Conditioning With Dual Zone Temperature Control — If Equipped 264
- □ Operating Tips 268
- □ Operating Tips Chart 271

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

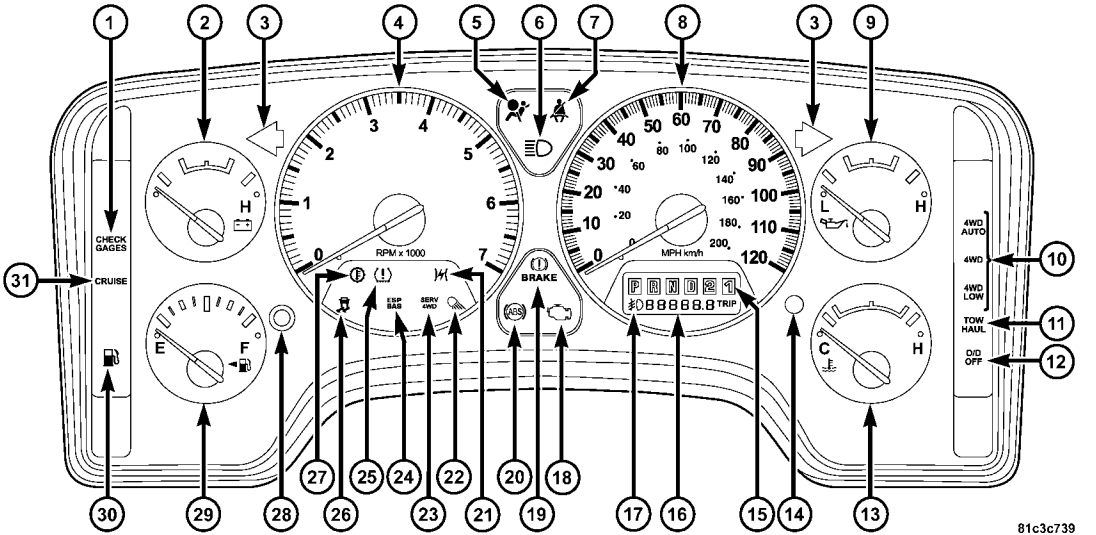


1 — Headlight Switch
2 — Air Outlets
3 — Instrument Cluster
4 — Climate Controls
5 — Radio
6 — Passenger Airbag
7 — Glove Box
8 — Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch*
9 — Power Outlet
10 — Heated Seat Switch
11 — TPMS "Light Load" Reset Switch*
12 — Power Sliding Back Glass Switch*
13 — Cupholders
14 — ESP Off Switch*
15 — Cigar Lighter
16 — Transfer Case Control Switch*
17 — Parking Brake Release Lever
18 — Adjustable Pedal Control Switch*
* If Equipped

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

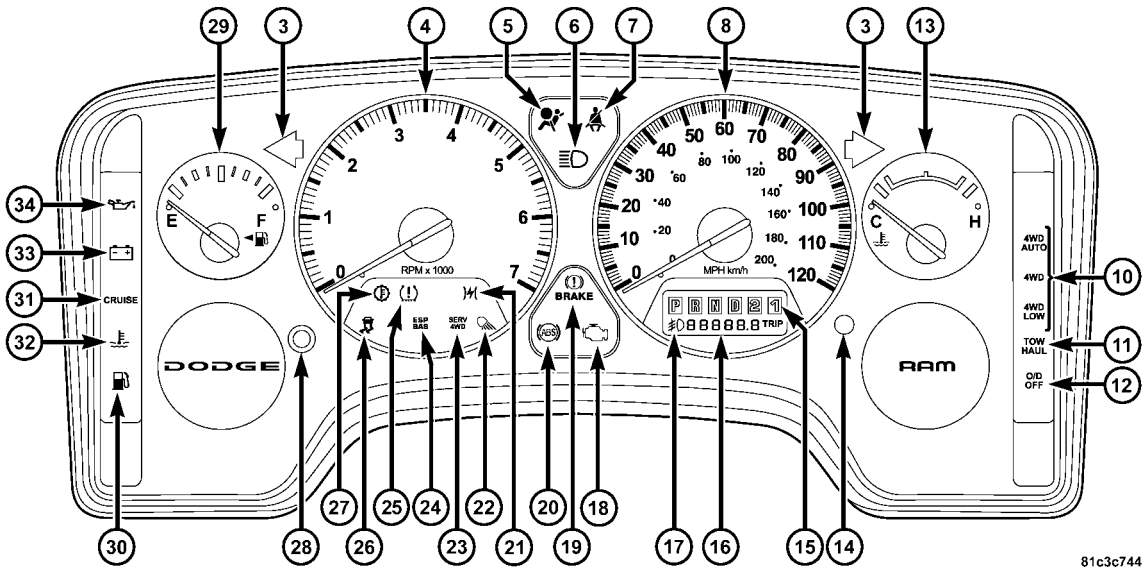
INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Premium Cluster – If Equipped



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Base Cluster – If Equipped



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DESCRIPTION

1. Check Gauges – Premium Cluster Only

CHECK GAGES This light illuminates when the Voltmeter, Engine Oil Pressure or Engine Coolant Temperature gauges indicate a reading either too high or too low. Examine the gauges carefully, and follow the instructions contained below for each indicated problem.

NOTE: When the ignition switch is turned to OFF, the Fuel Gauge, Voltmeter, Oil Pressure and Engine Coolant Temperature gauges may not show accurate readings. When the engine is not running, turn the ignition switch to ON to obtain accurate readings.

2. Voltmeter

When the engine is running, the gauge indicates the electrical system voltage. The pointer should stay within the normal range if the battery is charged. If the pointer moves to either extreme left or right and remains there during normal driving, the electrical system should be serviced.

NOTE: If the gauge pointer moves to either extreme of the gauge, the "Check Gauges" indicator will illuminate and a single chime will sound. The "Check Gauges" indicator may also illuminate prior to the voltage gauge moving out of normal range. In either case, see you local authorized Dealer for system service.

3. Turn Signal Indicators

Lights in instrument cluster flash when outside turn signals are operating.

4. Tachometer

The Tachometer indicates engine speed in revolutions per minute.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Do not operate the engine with the tachometer pointer at high rpm for extended periods. Engine damage may occur.

5. Airbag Indicator Light

The indicator lights and remains lit for six to eight seconds when the ignition is first turned ON. If the light stays on, flickers or comes on while driving, have the airbag system checked by an authorized dealer.

6. High Beam Indicator

This indicator shows that headlights are on high beam.

7. Seat Belt Reminder Light

When the ignition switch is first turned ON, this light will turn on for five to eight seconds as a bulb check. During the bulb check, if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled, a chime will sound. After the bulb check or when driving, if the driver's seat belt remains unbuckled, the Seat Belt Warning Light will flash or remain on continuously. Refer to ″Enhanced Driver Seat Belt Reminder System (BeltAlert®)″ in the Occupant Restraints section for more information.(See page 46 for more information.)

8. Speedometer

The Speedometer shows the vehicle speed in miles per hour and/or kilometers per hour (mph/kph).

9. Oil Pressure Gauge — Premium Cluster Only

The pointer should always indicate some oil pressure when the engine is running. A continuous high or low reading, under normal driving conditions, may indicate a lubrication system malfunction. Immediate service should be obtained from an authorized dealer.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: If the gauge pointer moves to either extreme of the gauge, the "Check Gauges" indicator will illuminate and a single chime will sound.

10. Transfer Case Position

This display indicator shows the transfer case position selection.

For additional information refer to "4-Wheel Drive Operation" in section 5 of this manual.

11. TOW HAUL

The TOW HAUL button is located at the end of the gear shift lever. This light will illuminate when the TOW HAUL OD/OFF button is pushed once.

12. OD/OFF

The OD/OFF button is located at the end of the gear shift lever. This light will illuminate when the TOW HAUL OD/OFF button is pushed twice.

13. Temperature Gauge

The Temperature Gauge indicates engine coolant temperature. Any reading within the normal range indicates that the cooling system is operating satisfactorily. The gauge needle will likely indicate a higher temperature when driving in hot weather, up mountain grades, in heavy traffic, or when towing a trailer. If the needle rises to the "245° F (118° C)" mark, stop the vehicle, shift into NEUTRAL, and increase the engine idle speed for two to three minutes. If the temperature reading does not return to normal, shut your engine OFF and allow it to cool. Seek authorized service immediately. Refer to "Cooling System" under "Maintaining Your Vehicle" in section 7.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Do not leave your vehicle unattended with the engine running as you would not be able to react to the temperature indicator if the engine overheats.

NOTE: Engine idle speed will automatically increase to 1000 rpm at elevated coolant temperatures to improve engine cooling.

NOTE: If the gauge pointer moves to either extreme of the gauge, the "Check Gauges" indicator will illuminate and a single chime will sound.

14. Security Light

This light will flash rapidly for approximately 15 seconds when the Vehicle Security Alarm is arming. The light will flash at a slower speed continuously after the alarm is set. The Security light will also come on for about three seconds when the ignition is first turned on.

15. Transmission Range Indicator (Automatic Transmissions Only)

When the gear selector lever is moved, this indicator shows the automatic transmission gear range selected.

16. Odometer/Trip Odometer

The odometer shows the total distance the vehicle has been driven. U.S. federal regulations require that upon transfer of vehicle ownership, the seller certify to the purchaser the correct mileage that the vehicle has been driven. Therefore, if the odometer reading is changed during repair or replacement, be sure to keep a record of the reading before and after the service so that the correct mileage can be determined.

The two trip odometers show individual trip mileage. To switch from odometer to trip odometers, press and release the Trip Odometer button.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

To reset a trip odometer, display the desired trip odometer to be reset then push and hold the button until the display resets (approximately two seconds).

Vehicle Warning Messages

When the appropriate conditions exist, messages such as "door" (indicates that a door(s) may be ajar), "hood" (if the hood is open or ajar, on vehicles with remote start), "gASCAP" (which indicates that your gas cap is possibly loose or damaged), ″CHANgE OIL" (indicates that the engine oil should be change), "LoWASH" (low washer fluid), "ESPOFF" (indicates that ESP is turned off), and "noFUSE" (indicates that the IOD fuse is removed from the Integrated Power Module), will display in the odometer.

NOTE: There is also an engine hour function. This indicates the total number of hours the engine has been running. To display the engine hours perform the following: Place the ignition in RUN, but do not start the engine. With the odometer value displayed, hold the trip button down for a period of six seconds. The odometer will change to trip value first, then it will display the engine hour value. The engine hours will be displayed for a period of 30 seconds until the ignition is turned OFF or the engine is started.

Change Oil Message

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine oil change indicator system. The "CHANgE OIL" message will flash in the instrument cluster odometer for approximately 12 seconds after a single chime has sounded to indicate the next scheduled oil change interval. The engine oil change indicator system is duty cycle based, which means the engine oil change interval may fluctuate dependent upon your personal driving style.

Unless reset, this message will continue to display each time you turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position. To turn off the message temporarily, press and

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

release the Trip Odometer button on the instrument cluster. To reset the oil change indicator system (after performing the scheduled maintenance) refer to the following procedure.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position **(Do not start the engine).**
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal slowly three times within 10 seconds.
3. Turn the ignition switch to the OFF/LOCK position.

NOTE: If the indicator message illuminates when you start the vehicle, the oil change indicator system did not reset. If necessary repeat this procedure.

17. Front Fog Light Indicator — If Equipped

This light shows when the front fog lights are ON.

18. Malfunction Indicator Light

This light is part of an onboard diagnostic system which monitors the emissions and engine control system. If the vehicle is ready for emissions testing, the light will come on when the ignition is first turned on and remain on, as a bulb check, until the engine is started. If the vehicle is not ready for emissions testing the light will come on when the ignition is first turned on and remain on for 15 seconds, then blink for 5 seconds, and remain on until the vehicle is started. If the bulb does not come on during starting, have the condition investigated promptly.

If this light comes on and remains on while driving, it suggests a potential engine control problem and the need for system service.

Although your vehicle will usually be drivable and not need towing, see your authorized dealer for service as soon as possible.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Prolonged driving with the MIL on could cause damage to the engine control system. It also could affect fuel economy and drivability.

If the MIL is flashing, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.

19. Brake System Warning Light

This light illuminates when the ignition key is turned to the ON position and remains on for a few seconds. If the light stays on longer, it may be an indication that the parking brake has not been released. This light will illuminate if the brake fluid is low, especially when braking or accelerating hard. This light will illuminate if the ABS indicator light has a malfunction. This light will flash if the engine is running and the parking brake is on. If the light remains on when the parking brake is released, it indicates a possible brake hydraulic system malfunction. In this case, the light will remain on until the cause is corrected.

If brake failure is indicated, immediate repair is necessary and continued operation of the vehicle in this condition is dangerous.

Acceleration which causes the rear wheels to slip for a period of time may result in the red brake light illuminating and a brake switch code being set on ABS equipped vehicles. Depressing the brake pedal should extinguish the red brake light.

20. ABS Warning Light

(ABS) This light monitors the Anti-Lock Brake System which is described elsewhere in this manual. This light will come on when the ignition key is turned to the ON position and may stay on for five seconds. If the ABS light remains on or comes on during driving, it indicates

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

that the anti-lock portion of the brake system is not functioning and that service is required. See your authorized dealer immediately. The ABS light could also illuminate during loss of traction and remain illuminated until the brake pedal is pressed.

21. Electronic Throttle Control (ETC)

This light informs you of a problem with the Electronic Throttle Control system. If a problem is detected the light will come on while the engine is running. If the light remains lit with the engine running your vehicle will usually be drivable, however, see your authorized dealer for service as soon as possible. If the light is flashing when the engine is running, immediate service is required and you may experience reduced performance, an elevated / rough idle or engine stall and your vehicle may require towing. The light will come on when the ignition is first turned ON and remain on for 15 seconds as a bulb check. If the light does not come on during starting, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

22. Cargo Light

The Cargo Lamp light will illuminate when the Cargo Lamp is activated by pressing the Cargo Light Button on the headlight switch.

23. SERV 4WD Indicator

The 4WD indicator will be illuminated whenever the 4WD mode is engaged for either the manual or electric shift 4WD systems. The SERV 4WD indicator monitors the electric shift 4WD system. If the SERV 4WD light stays on or comes on during driving, it means that the 4WD system is not functioning properly and that service is required.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

24. ESP/BAS Warning Lamp – If Equipped

ESP
BAS

The lamp indicates a problem with one or more of the functions of ESP. The yellow "ESP/BAS Warning Lamp" in the instrument cluster comes on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position as a bulb check. It should go out with the engine running. If the "ESP/BAS Warning Lamp" comes on continuously with the engine running, a malfunction has been detected in the ESP system. If this light remains on after several ignition cycles, and the vehicle has been driven several miles/kilometers at speeds greater than 30 mph (48 km/h), see your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

NOTE: "The "ESP/BAS Warning Lamp" come on momentarily each time the ignition switch is turned ON.

The ESP Control System will make buzzing or clicking sounds when it is actively operating.

25. Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light — If Equipped

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

can lead to tire failure. Under inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. TPMS pressures and warning have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system operation or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size, type, and/or style. Aftermarket wheels can cause sensor damage. Do not use tire sealant from a can, or balance beads if your vehicle is equipped with a TPMS, as damage to the sensors may result.

TPMS "Light Load" Reset Switch – If Equipped

The TPMS "Light Load" reset switch allows you to choose between Light Load vehicle conditions and Max Load vehicle conditions tire pressures and related TPMS warning levels. The switch is located in the instrument panel, below the climate control panel. For additional information refer to "Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) — If Equipped" in section 5 of this manual.

26. Electronic Stability Program (ESP) Indicator Light — If Equipped

This lamp indicates the ESP system is active when it is flashing or that a part, or all, of the features of the ESP system are not able to function when it is on solid. The yellow "ESP Indicator Light" is located in the tachometer area. The ″ESP / TCS Indicator Light″ starts to flash as soon as the tires lose traction and the ESP system becomes active. The ″ESP / TCS Indicator Light″ also flashes when TCS is active. If the ″ESP / TCS Indicator Light″ begins to flash during acceleration, ease up on the accelerator and apply as little throttle as possible. Be sure to adapt your speed and driving to the prevailing road conditions. The "ESP / TCS Indicator Light" becomes illuminated when the ESP-OFF button has been pressed or ESP is only partially available.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

27. Transmission Oil Temperature Warning Light (Automatic Transmissions Only)

This light indicates that there is excessive transmission fluid temperature that might occur with severe usage such as trailer towing. It may also occur when operating the vehicle in a high torque converter slip condition, such as 4-wheel-drive operation (e.g., snow plowing, off- road operation). If this light comes on, stop the vehicle and run the engine at idle or faster, with the transmission in NEUTRAL until the light goes off.

28. Odometer/Trip Odometer Button

Press this button to toggle between the odometer and the trip odometer display. Holding the button in resets the trip odometer reading when in trip mode.

29. Fuel Gauge

Shows level of fuel in tank when ignition switch is in the ON position.

30. Low Fuel Warning Light

When the fuel level drops to 1/16 tank, the fuel symbol will light and a single chime will sound.

NOTE: If your vehicle is equipped with an overhead console module (CMTC), it is possible for DTE to display "LO FUEL" before the low fuel warning light turns on in the instrument cluster. This could occur because the low fuel warning is set to a specified fuel tank volume and DTE is an estimated distance calculation based on vehicle fuel economy and remaining fuel tank volume.

Vehicle fuel tank volumes are as follows:

- 26 gal (98 L) - 1500 short box models
- 34 gal (128 L) - 1500/2500/3500 short box models
- 35 gal (132 L) - 1500/2500/3500 long box models

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

31. CRUISE Light

This indicator lights when the electronic speed control system is turned on.

32. Coolant Temperature Light – Base Cluster Only

This light indicates engine coolant temperature is to high. If the light comes on, stop the vehicle, shift into NEUTRAL, and increase the engine idle speed for two to three minutes. If the light does not turn off, shut your engine OFF and allow it to cool. See an authorized dealer for service immediately. Refer to "Cooling System" under "Maintaining Your Vehicle" in section 7.

CAUTION!
Do not leave your vehicle unattended with the engine running as you would not be able to react to the temperature indicator if the engine overheats.

NOTE: Engine idle speed will automatically increase to 1000 rpm at elevated coolant temperatures to improve engine cooling.

33. Battery Voltage Indicator Light – Base Cluster Only

When the engine is running, this light indicates the electrical system voltage is out of normal range. This indicator may also illuminate prior to the voltage gauge moving out of normal range. In either case, see you local authorized dealer for system service.

34. Oil Pressure Indicator light – Base Cluster Only

This light indicates continuous high or low oil pressure, and under normal driving conditions, may indicate a lubrication system malfunction. Immediate service should be obtained.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

ELECTRONIC DIGITAL CLOCK

The clock and radio each use the display panel built into the radio. A digital readout shows the frequency and/or time in hours and minutes (depending on your radio model) whenever the ignition switch is in the ON or ACC position.

When the ignition switch is in the OFF position, or when the radio frequency is being displayed, time keeping is accurately maintained.

On the RAQ radio the time button alternates the location of the time and frequency on the display. On the REF only one of the two, time or frequency, is displayed at a time.

Clock Setting Procedure

1. Press and hold the time button until the hours blink.

2. Adjust the hours by turning the right side Tune/Audio control.

3. After the hours are adjusted, press the right side Tune/Audio control to set the minutes.

4. Adjust the minutes using the right side Tune/Audio control.

5. To exit, press any button/knob or wait approximately five seconds.

RADIO GENERAL INFORMATION

RADIO BROADCAST SIGNALS

The radio will provide excellent reception under most operating conditions. Like any system, however, automotive radios have performance limitations, due to mobile operation and natural phenomena, which might lead you to believe your sound system is malfunctioning. To help you understand and save you concern about these “apparent” malfunctions, you must understand a point or two about the transmission and reception of radio signals.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Electrical Disturbances

Radio waves may pick up electrical disturbances during transmission. They mainly affect the wave amplitude, and thus remain a part of the AM reception. They interfere very little with the frequency variations that carry the FM signal.

TWO TYPES OF SIGNALS

There are two basic types of radio signals: AM or Amplitude Modulation, in which the transmitted sound causes the amplitude, or height, of the radio waves to vary; and FM or Frequency Modulation, in which the frequency of the wave is varied to carry the sound.

AM Reception

AM sound is based on wave amplitude, so AM reception can be disrupted by such things as lightning, power lines and neon signs.

FM Reception

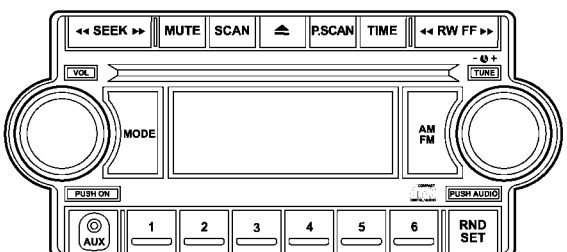
Because FM transmission is based on frequency variations, interference that consists of amplitude variations can be filtered out, leaving the reception relatively clear, which is the major feature of FM radio.

NOTE: The radio, steering wheel radio controls (if equipped), and six-disc CD/DVD changer (if equipped) will remain active for up to 10 minutes after the ignition switch has been turned OFF. Opening a vehicle front door will cancel this feature.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

SALES CODE REF — AM/FM/CD (SINGLE-DISC) RADIO WITH OPTIONAL SATELLITE RADIO AND HANDS-FREE PHONE CAPABILITY

NOTE: The radio sales code is located on the lower right side of your radio faceplate.



REF Radio

Operating Instructions - Radio Mode

NOTE: The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

Power Switch/Volume Control (Rotary)
Press the ON/VOL control to turn the radio ON. Press the ON/VOL a second time to turn OFF the radio.

Electronic Volume Control
The electronic volume control turns continuously (360 degrees) in either direction without stopping. Turning the volume control to the right increases the volume and to the left decreases it.

When the audio system is turned on, the sound will be set at the same volume level as last played.

For your convenience, the volume can be turned down, but not up, when the audio system is off and the ignition is ON.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Mode Button (Radio Mode)
Press the MODE button repeatedly to select between the CD player and Satellite Radio (if equipped).

SEEK Button (Radio Mode)
Press and release the SEEK button to search for the next listenable station in either AM/FM or Satellite (if equipped) mode. Press the right side of the button to seek up and the left side to seek down. The radio will remain tuned to the new station until you make another selection. Holding the button will bypass stations without stopping until you release it.

MUTE Button (Radio Mode)
Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound from the speakers. MUTE will display. Press the MUTE button a second time and the sound from the speakers will return. Rotating the volume control, turning the radio ON/OFF, or turning ON/OFF the ignition, will cancel the MUTE feature.

NOTE: In Hands-Free Phone (if equipped) mode, the MUTE button mutes the microphone.

SCAN Button (Radio Mode)
Pressing the SCAN button causes the tuner to search for the next listenable station in either, AM, FM, or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies, pausing for five seconds at each listenable station before continuing to the next. To stop the search, press SCAN a second time.

PSCAN Button (Radio Mode)
Pressing the PSCAN button causes the tuner to scan through preset stations in either, AM, FM, or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies, pausing for five seconds at each preset station before continuing to the next. To stop the search, press PSCAN a second time.

TIME Button
Press the TIME button and the time of day will display for five seconds.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Clock Setting Procedure

1. Press and hold the TIME button until the hours blink.

2. Adjust the hours by turning the TUNE/AUDIO control.

3. After the hours are adjusted, press the TUNE/AUDIO control to set the minutes. The minutes will begin to blink.

4. Adjust the minutes using the TUNE/AUDIO control.

5. To exit, press any button/knob or wait five seconds.

RW/FF (Radio Mode)
Pressing the Rewind/Fast Forward button causes the tuner to search for the next frequency in the direction of the arrows. This feature operates in either AM, FM or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies.

TUNE Control (Radio Mode)
Turn the rotary TUNE control clockwise to increase or counterclockwise to decrease the frequency.

AM/FM Button (Radio Mode)
Press the button to select AM or FM modes.

Setting the Tone, Balance, and Fade
Press the rotary TUNE control, and BASS will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Bass tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a second time and MID will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Mid-Range tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a third time and TREB will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Treble tones.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Press the rotary TUNE control a fourth time and BAL will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to adjust the sound level from the right or left side speakers.

Press the rotary TUNE control a fifth time and FADE will display. Turn the TUNE control to the left or right to adjust the sound level between the front and rear speakers.

Press the tune control again or wait five seconds to exit setting tone, balance, and fade.

RND/SET Button (Radio Mode) To Set The Pushbutton Memory

When you are receiving a station that you wish to commit to pushbutton memory, press the SET button. The symbol SET 1 will now show in the display window. Select the button (1-6) you wish to lock onto this station and press and release that button. If a button is not selected within five seconds after pressing the SET button, the station will continue to play but will not be stored into pushbutton memory.

You may add a second station to each pushbutton by repeating the above procedure with this exception: Press the SET button twice and SET 2 will show in the display window. Each button can be set for SET 1 and SET 2 in both AM and FM. This allows a total of 12 AM, 12 FM, and 12 Satellite (if equipped) stations to be stored into pushbutton memory. The stations stored in SET 2 memory can be selected by pressing the pushbutton twice.

Every time a preset button is used, a corresponding button number will display.

Preset Buttons 1 - 6 (Radio Mode)

These buttons tune the Radio to the stations that you commit to pushbutton memory, 12 AM, 12 FM, and 12 Satellite (if equipped) stations.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Operating Instructions - CD Mode

NOTE: The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

Inserting The Compact Disc (Single CD Player)
Gently insert one CD into the CD player with the CD label facing up. The CD will automatically be pulled into the CD Player and the CD icon will illuminate on the radio display.

If the volume control is ON, the unit will switch to CD mode and begin to play. The display will show the track number and play time in minutes and seconds. Play will begin at the start of track one.

NOTE:

- On some vehicles, you may insert or eject a disc with the radio or ignition switch OFF.
- If you insert a disc with the ignition ON and the radio OFF, the CD will automatically be pulled into the CD player.
- This radio does not play discs with MP3 tracks.

SEEK Button (CD Mode)
Press the right side of the SEEK button for the next track on the CD. Press the left side of the button to return to the beginning of the current track, or return to the beginning of the previous track if the CD is within the first 10 seconds of the current selection.

MUTE Button (CD Mode)
Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound from the speakers. ″MUTE″ will display. Press the MUTE button a second time and the sound from the speakers will return. Rotating the volume control or turning OFF the ignition will also return the sound from the speakers.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

SCAN Button (CD Mode)
Press this button to play the first 10 seconds of each track. To stop the scan function, press the button a second time.

EJECT Button (CD Mode)

Press this button and the disc will unload and move to the entrance for easy removal. The unit will switch to the last selected mode.

If you do not remove the disc within 15 seconds, it will be reloaded. The radio mode will continue to appear.

TIME Button (CD Mode)
Press this button to change the display from elapsed CD playing time to time of day. The time of day will display for five seconds.

RW/FF (CD Mode)
Press and hold the FF (Fast Forward) and the CD player will begin to fast forward until FF is released. The RW (Reverse) button works in a similar manner.

Press and hold the FF button to fast forward through the tracks. Release the FF button to stop the fast forward feature. If the RW button is pressed, the current track will reverse to the beginning of the track and begin playing.

RND/SET Button (Random Play Button) (CD Mode)
Press this button while the CD is playing to activate Random play. This feature plays the selections on the compact disc in random order to provide an interesting change of pace.

Press the SEEK button to move to the next randomly selected track.

Press the RND button a second time to stop Random play.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Operating Instructions - Auxiliary Mode

The auxiliary (AUX) jack is an audio input jack, which allows the user to plug in a portable device such as an MP3 player, cassette player, or microphone and utilize the vehicle's audio system to amplify the source and play through the vehicle speakers.

The auxiliary mode becomes active when an electrical device is plugged into the AUX jack using a standard 3.5 mm stereo audio cable and the user presses and releases the MODE button until AUX appears on the display.

NOTE: The radio will return to the last stored mode if the ignition switch is turned from the OFF/LOCK position to the ACC position, the radio is turned on, and the radio was previously in the AUX mode.

SEEK Button (Auxiliary Mode)
No function.

MUTE Button (Auxiliary Mode)
Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound from the speakers. ″MUTE″ will display. Press the MUTE button a second time and the sound from the speakers will return. Rotating the volume control or turning off the ignition will also return the sound from the speakers.

SCAN Button (Auxiliary Mode)
No function.

EJECT Button (Auxiliary Mode)
No function.

PSCAN Button (Auxiliary Mode)
No function.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

TIME Button (Auxiliary Mode)
Press this button to change the display from elapsed playing time to time of day. The time of day will display for five seconds.

RW/FF (Auxiliary Mode)
No function.

RND/SET Button (Auxiliary Mode)
No function.

Mode Button (Auxiliary Mode)
Press the MODE button repeatedly to select between the CD player and Satellite Radio (if equipped).

Operating Instructions - Hands-Free Phone — If Equipped

Refer to the "Hands-Free Phone (UConnect®)" section of this Owner's Manual.

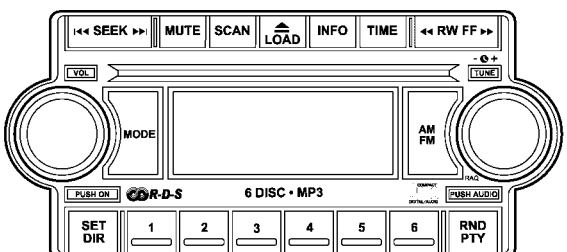
Operating Instructions - Satellite Radio — If Equipped

Refer to the "Satellite Radio" section of this Owner's Manual.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

SALES CODE RAQ – AM/FM/CD (6-DISC) RADIO WITH OPTIONAL SATELLITE RADIO, HANDS-FREE PHONE, AND VIDEO ENTERTAINMENT SYSTEM (VES™) CAPABILITIES

NOTE: The radio sales code is located on the lower right side of your radio faceplate.



RAQ Radio

Operating Instructions - Radio Mode

NOTE: The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

Power Switch/Volume Control (Rotary)
Press the ON/VOL control to turn the radio ON. Press the ON/VOL a second time to turn off the radio.

Electronic Volume Control
The electronic volume control turns continuously (360 degrees) in either direction without stopping. Turning the volume control to the right increases the volume and to the left decreases it.

When the audio system is turned on, the sound will be set at the same volume level as last played.

For your convenience, the volume can be turned down, but not up, when the audio system is off and the ignition is ON.

4

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Mode Button (Radio Mode)
Press the MODE button repeatedly to select between the CD player, Satellite Radio, or Video Entertainment System (VES)™ (if equipped).

SEEK Button (Radio Mode)
Press and release the SEEK button to search for the next listenable station in either AM/FM or Satellite (if equipped) mode. Press the right side of the button to seek up and the left side to seek down. The radio will remain tuned to the new station until you make another selection. Holding the button will bypass stations without stopping until you release it.

MUTE Button (Radio Mode)
Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound from the speakers. ″MUTE″ will be displayed. Press the MUTE button a second time and the sound from the speakers will return. Rotating the volume control, turning the radio ON/OFF, or turning OFF the ignition will also return the sound from the speakers

NOTE: In Hands-Free Phone (if equipped) mode, the MUTE button mutes the microphone.

SCAN Button (Radio Mode)
Pressing the SCAN button causes the tuner to search for the next listenable station, in either AM, FM or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies, pausing for five seconds at each listenable station before continuing to the next. To stop the search, press SCAN a second time.

MSG or INFO Button (Radio Mode)
Press the MSG or INFO button for an RBDS station (one with call letters displayed). The radio will return a Radio Text message broadcast from an FM station (FM mode only).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

TIME Button
Press the TIME button and the time of day will be displayed for five seconds.

Clock Setting Procedure

1. Press and hold the time button until the hours blink.

2. Adjust the hours by turning the TUNE/AUDIO control.

3. After the hours are adjusted, press the TUNE/AUDIO control to set the minutes. The minutes will begin to blink.

4. Adjust the minutes by turning the TUNE/AUDIO control.

5. To exit, press any button/knob or wait five seconds.

RW/FF (Radio Mode)
Pressing the Rewind/Fast Forward button causes the tuner to search for the next frequency in the direction of the arrows. This feature operates in either AM, FM or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies.

TUNE Control (Radio Mode)
Turn the rotary TUNE control clockwise to increase or counterclockwise to decrease the frequency.

AM/FM Button (Radio Mode)
Press the button to select AM or FM Modes.

Setting the Tone, Balance, and Fade
Press the rotary TUNE control, and BASS will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Bass tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a second time and MID will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Mid Range tones.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Press the rotary TUNE control a third time and TREBLE will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Treble tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a fourth time and BALANCE will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to adjust the sound level from the right or left side speakers.

Press the rotary TUNE control a fifth time and FADE will display. Turn the TUNE control to the left or right to adjust the sound level between the front and rear speakers.

Press the rotary TUNE control again to exit setting tone, balance and fade.

RND/PTY Button (Radio Mode)

Pressing this button once will turn on the PTY mode for five seconds. If no action is taken during the five second time out the PTY icon will turn off. Pressing the PTY button or turning the TUNE rotary knob within five seconds will allow the program format type to be selected. Many radio stations do not currently broadcast PTY information.

Toggle the PTY button to select the following format types:

Program Type	16 Digit-Character Display
No program type or undefined	None
Adult Hits	Adult_Hits
Alert Alert	Alert Alert
Classical	Classical
Classic Rock	Classic_Rock
College	College
Country	Country
Emergency Test	Emergency Test

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Program Type	16 Digit-Character Display
Foreign Language	Foreign_Language
Information	Information
Jazz	Jazz
News	News
Nostalgia	Nostalgia
Oldies	Oldies
Personality	Personality
Public	Public
Rhythm and Blues	Rhythm_and_Blues
Religious Music	Religious_Music
Religious Talk	Religious_Talk
Rock	Rock
Soft	Soft
Soft Rock	Soft_Rock
Soft Rhythm and Blues	Soft_R_&_B
Sports	Sports
Talk	Talk
Top 40	Top_40
Weather	Weather

By pressing the SEEK button when the PTY icon is displayed, the radio will be tuned to the next frequency station with the same selected PTY name. The PTY function only operates when in the FM mode.

If a preset button is activated while in the PTY (Program Type) mode, the PTY mode will be exited and the radio will tune to the preset station.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

SET/DIR Button (Radio Mode) — To Set the Pushbutton Memory

When you are receiving a station that you wish to commit to pushbutton memory, press the SET/DIR button. The symbol SET 1 will now show in the display window. Select the button (1-6) you wish to lock onto this station and press and release that button. If a button is not selected within five seconds after pressing the SET/DIR button, the station will continue to play but will not be stored into pushbutton memory.

You may add a second station to each pushbutton by repeating the above procedure with this exception: Press the SET/DIR button twice and SET 2 will show in the display window. Each button can be set for SET 1 and SET 2 in both AM and FM. This allows a total of 12 AM, 12 FM and 12 Satellite (if equipped) stations to be stored into pushbutton memory. The stations stored in SET 2 memory can be selected by pressing the pushbutton twice.

Every time a preset button is used, a corresponding button number will be displayed.

Buttons 1 - 6 (Radio Mode)

These buttons tune the Radio to the stations that you commit to pushbutton memory, 12AM, 12 FM, and 12 Satellite (if equipped) stations.

Operating Instructions - (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)

NOTE: The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

NOTE: This Radio is capable of playing compact discs (CD), recordable compact discs (CD-R), rewritable compact discs (CD-RW) compact discs with MP3 tracks and multisession compact discs with CD and MP3 tracks.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Inserting Compact Disc(s)
Gently insert one CD into the CD player with the CD label facing up. The CD will automatically be pulled into the CD Player and the CD icon will illuminate on the radio display.

CAUTION!
This CD player will accept 4 3/4 in (12 cm) discs only. The use of other sized discs may damage the CD player mechanism.

You may eject a disc with the radio OFF.

If you insert a disc with the ignition ON and the radio ON, the unit will switch from radio to CD mode and begin to play when you insert the disc. The display will show the disc number, the track number, and index time in minutes and seconds. Play will begin at the start of track one.

SEEK Button (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)
Press the right side of the SEEK button for the next selection on the CD. Press the left side of the button to return to the beginning of the current selection, or return to the beginning of the previous selection if the CD is within the first 10 seconds of the current selection.

MUTE Button (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)
Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound from the speakers. ″MUTE″ will be displayed. Press the MUTE button a second time and the sound from the speakers will return. Rotating the volume control, turning the radio ON/OFF, or turning OFF the ignition will also return the sound from the speakers.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

SCAN Button (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)
Press the SCAN button to scan through each track on the CD currently playing.

LOAD/EJECT Button (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)

LOAD/ EJECT - Load

Press the LOAD/EJECT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD is being loaded. The radio will display PLEASE WAIT and prompt when to INSERT DISC. After the radio displays ″LOAD DISC″ insert the CD into the player.

Radio display will show ″LOADING DISC″ when the disc is loading, and “READING DISC” when the radio is reading the disc.

LOAD / EJT - Eject

Press the LOAD/ EJT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD was loaded and the disc will unload and move to the entrance for easy removal. Radio display will show ″EJECTING DISC″ when the disc is being ejected and prompt the user to remove the disc.

Press and hold the LOAD/ EJT button for five seconds and all CDs will be ejected from the radio.

If you have ejected a disc and have not removed it within 15 seconds, it will be reloaded. If the CD is not removed, the radio will continue to play the non-removed CD. If the CD is removed and there are other CDs in the radio, the radio will play the next CD after a two minute timeout. If the CD is removed and there are no other CDs in the radio, the radio will remain in CD mode and

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

display ″INSERT DISC” for 10 seconds. If no discs are inserted within 10 seconds “NO DISCS LOADED” will be displayed.

On some vehicles a disc can be ejected with the radio and ignition OFF.

TIME Button (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)
Press this button to change the display from a large CD playing time display to a small CD playing time display.

RW/FF (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)
Press and hold FF (Fast Forward) and the CD player will begin to fast forward until FF is released or RW or another CD button is pressed. The RW (Reverse) button works in a similar manner.

Press and hold the FF button to fast forward through the tracks. Release the FF button to stop the fast forward feature.

TUNE Control (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)
Pressing the TUNE control allows the setting of the Tone, Fade, and Balance. See Radio Mode.

AM/FM Button (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)
Switches the Radio to the Radio mode.

RND/PTY Button (Random Play Button) (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)
Press this button while the CD is playing to activate Random Play. This feature plays the selections on the compact disc in random order to provide an interesting change of pace.

Press the SEEK button to move to the next randomly selected track.

Press the RND button a second time to stop Random play.

Buttons 1 - 6 (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)
Selects disc positions 1 - 6 for Play/Load/Eject.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Notes On Playing MP3 Files

The radio can play MP3 files, however, acceptable MP3 file recording media and formats are limited. When writing MP3 files, pay attention to the following restrictions.

Supported Media (Disc Types)

The MP3 file recording media supported by the radio are CD-ROM, CD-R and CD-RW.

Supported Medium Formats (File Systems)

The medium formats supported by the radio are ISO 9660 Level 1 and Level 2 and includes the Joliet extension. When reading discs recorded using formats other than ISO 9660 Level 1 and Level 2, the radio may fail to read files properly and may be unable to play the file normally. UDF and Apple HFS formats are not supported.

The radio uses the following limits for file systems:

- Maximum number of directory levels: 15
- Maximum number of files: 255
- Maximum number of folders: 100
- Maximum number of characters in file/folder names:
  - Level 1: 12 (including a separator ″.″ and a 3-character extension)
  - Level 2: 31 (including a separator ″.″ and a 3-character extension)

Multisession disc formats are supported by the radio. Multisession discs may contain combinations of normal CD audio tracks and computer files (including MP3 files). Discs created with an option such as ″keep disc open after writing″ are most likely multisession discs. The use of multisession for CD audio or MP3 playback may result in longer disc loading times.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Supported MP3 File Formats

The radio will recognize only files with the *.mp3 extension as MP3 files. Non-MP3 files named with the *.mp3 extension may cause playback problems. The radio is designed to recognize the file as an invalid MP3 and will not play the file.

When using the MP3 encoder to compress audio data to an MP3 file, the bit rate and sampling frequencies in the following table are supported. In addition, variable bit rates (VBR) are also supported. The majority of MP3 files use a 44.1 kHz sampling rate and a 192, 160, 128, 96 or VBR bit rates.

MPEG Specification	Sampling Frequency (kHz)	Bit rate (kbps)
MPEG-1 Audio Layer 3	48, 44.1, 32	320, 256, 224, 192, 160, 128, 112, 96, 80, 64, 56, 48, 40, 32
MPEG-2 Audio Layer 3	24, 22.05, 16	160, 128, 144, 112, 96, 80, 64, 56, 48, 40, 32, 24, 16, 8

ID3 Tag information for artist, song title and album title are supported for version 1 ID3 tags. ID3 version 2 is not supported by the radios.

Playlist files are not supported. MP3 Pro files are not supported.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Playback of MP3 Files

When a medium containing MP3 data is loaded, the radio checks all files on the medium. If the medium contains a lot of folders or files, the radio will take more time to start playing the MP3 files.

Loading times for playback of MP3 files may be affected by the following:

- Media - CD-RW media may take longer to load than CD-R media
- Medium formats - Multisession discs may take longer to load than non-multisession discs
- Number of files and folders - Loading times will increase with more files and folders

To increase the speed of disc loading, it is recommended to use CD-R media and single-session discs. To create a single-session disc, enable the Disc at Once option before writing to the disc.

Operating Instructions - (CD Mode for MP3 Audio Play)

SEEK Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)

Pressing the right side of the SEEK button plays the next MP3 File. Pressing the left side of the SEEK button plays the beginning of the MP3 file. Pressing the button within the first ten seconds plays the previous file.

LOAD/EJECT Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)

LOAD/EJECT - Load

Press the LOAD/ EJECT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD is being loaded. The radio will display PLEASE WAIT and prompt when to INSERT DISC. After the radio displays ″LOAD DISC″ insert the CD into the player.

Radio display will show ″LOADING DISC″ when the disc is loading.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

LOAD/EJECT - Eject

Press the LOAD / EJECT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD was loaded and the disc will unload and move to the entrance for easy removal. Radio display will show ″EJECTING DISC″ when the disc is being ejected and prompt the user to remove the disc.

If you have ejected a disc and have not removed it within 15 seconds, it will be reloaded. If the CD is not removed, the radio will continue to play the non-removed CD. If the CD is removed and there are other CDs in the radio, the radio will play the next CD after a two minute timeout. If the CD is removed and there are no other CD's in the radio, the radio will remain in CD mode and display ″INSERT DISC" for two minutes. After two minutes the radio will go to the previous tuner mode.

MSG or INFO Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Press and MSG or INFO button while playing MP3 disc. The radio scrolls through the following TAG information: Song Title, Artist, File Name, and Folder Name (if available).

Press the MSG or INFO button once more to return to ″elapsed time″ priority mode.

Press and hold the MSG or INFO button while in the message display priority mode or elapsed time display priority mode will display the song title for each file.

RW/FF (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Press the FF side of the button to move forward through the MP3 selection.

TUNE Control (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Pressing the TUNE control allows the adjustment of Tone, Balance, and Fade.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

AM/FM Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Switches back to Radio mode.

RND/ PTY Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Pressing this button plays files randomly.

SET/DIR Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Press the SET/DIR Button to display folders, when playing an MP3 discs that have a file/folder structure. Turn the TUNE control to display available folders or move through available folders. Press the TUNE control to select a folder.

Buttons 1 - 6 (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Selects disc positions 1 - 6 for Play/Load/Eject.

Operating Instructions - Hands-Free Phone (If Equipped)
Refer to Hands Free Phone in Section 3 of this Owner's Manual.

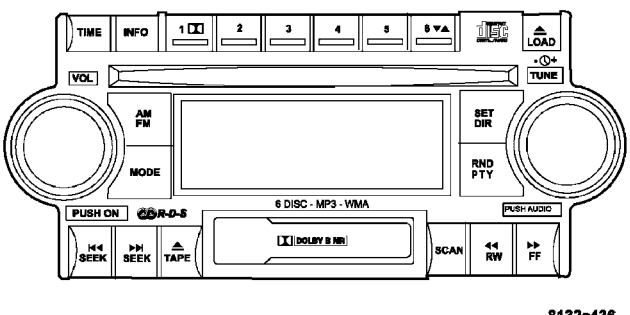
Operating Instructions - Satellite Radio Mode (If Equipped)
Refer to the Satellite Radio section of this Owner's Manual.

Operating Instructions - Video Entertainment System (VES™) (If Equipped)
Refer to separate Video Entertainment System (VES™) Guide.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

SALES CODE RAK – AM/FM/CASSETTE/CD (6-DISC) RADIO WITH OPTIONAL SATELLITE RADIO, HANDS FREE PHONE, VIDEO, MP3, and WMA CAPABILITIES

NOTE: The radio sales code is located on the lower right side of your radio faceplate.



RAK Radio

Operating Instructions - Radio Mode

NOTE: The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

Power Switch/Volume Control (Rotary)
Press the ON/VOL control to turn the radio ON. Press the ON/VOL a second time to turn OFF the radio.

Electronic Volume Control
The electronic volume control turns continuously (360 degrees) in either direction without stopping. Turning the volume control to the right increases the volume and to the left decreases it.

When the audio system is turned on, the sound will be set at the same volume level as last played.

Mode Button (Radio Mode)
Press the Mode button repeatedly to select between the CD player, Cassette, Satellite, or Vehicle Entertainment System (VES™) (if equipped).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

SEEK Button (Radio Mode)
Press and release the SEEK button to search for the next station in either AM/FM or Satellite (if equipped) mode. Press the right side of the button to seek up and the left side to seek down. The radio will remained tuned to the new station until you make another selection. Holding the button and will bypass stations without stopping until you release it.

SCAN Button (Radio Mode)
Pressing the SCAN button causes the tuner to search for the next station, in either AM, FM or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies, pausing for five seconds (satellite scan eight seconds) at each listenable station before continuing to the next. To stop the search, press SCAN a second time.

TIME Button
Press the time button and the time of day will display for five seconds.

Clock Setting Procedure

1. Press and hold the TIME button until the hours blink.

2. Adjust the hours by turning the right side Tune/Audio control.

3. After the hours are adjusted, press the right side Tune/Audio control to set the minutes. The minutes will begin to blink.

4. Adjust the minutes using the right side Tune/Audio control.

5. To exit, press any button/knob or wait five seconds.

INFO Button (Radio Mode)
Press the INFO button for an RBDS station (one with call letters displayed). The radio will return a Radio Text message broadcast (if available) from an FM station (FM mode only).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

RW/FF (Radio Mode)
Pressing the rewind / fast forward button causes the tuner to search for the next frequency in the direction of the arrows. This feature operates in either AM, FM or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies.

TUNE Control (Radio Mode)
Turn the right side rotary control to increase or decrease the frequency.

AM/FM Button (Radio Mode)
Press the button to select AM or FM modes.

Setting the Tone, Balance, and Fade
Press the rotary TUNE control and BASS will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Bass tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a second time and MID will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Mid-Range tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a third time and TREBLE will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Treble tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a fourth time and BAL will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to adjust the sound level from the right or left side speakers.

Press the rotary TUNE control a fifth time and FADE will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to adjust the sound level between the front and rear speakers.

Press the rotary TUNE control again to exit setting tone, balance, and fade.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

RND/PTY Button (Radio Mode)

Pressing this button once will turn on the PTY mode for five seconds. If no action is taken during the five-second time out, the PTY icon will turn off. Turning the tune knob within five seconds will allow the program format type to be selected. Many radio stations do not currently broadcast PTY information.

Turn the tune knob to select the following format types:

Program Type	16 Digit-Character Display
No program type or un-defined	None
News	News
Information	Information
Sports	Sports
Talk	Talk
Rock	Rock
Classic Rock	Classic_Rock
Adult Hits	Adult_Hits
Soft Rock	Soft_Rock
Top 40	Top_40
Country	Country
Oldies	Oldies
Soft	Soft
Nostalgia	Nostalgia
Jazz	Jazz
Classical	Classical
Rhythm and Blues	Rhythm_and_Blues
Soft Rhythm and Blues	Soft_R_&_B
Foreign Language	Foreign_Language
Religious Music	Religious_Music
Religious Talk	Religious_Talk
Personality	Personality

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Program Type	16 Digit-Character Display
Public	Public
College	College
Unassigned	
Weather	Weather

By pressing the SEEK button when the PTY icon is displayed, the radio will be tuned to the next frequency station with the same selected PTY name. The PTY function only operates when in the FM mode.

If a preset button is activated while in the PTY (Program Type) mode, the PTY mode will be exited and the radio will tune to the preset station.

NOTE: If you have selected a PTY with the tune knob, simply pressing the TUNE button in will go directly to a "PTY seek".

Buttons 1 - 6 (Radio Mode)

These buttons tune the Radio to the stations that you commit to push-button memory {12 AM, 12 FM, and 12 Satellite (if equipped) stations}.

Operating Instructions — Tape Player

Insert the cassette with the exposed tape side toward the left and the mechanical action of the player will gently pull the cassette into the play position.

NOTE: When subjected to extremely cold temperatures, the tape mechanism may require a few minutes to warm up for proper operation. Sometimes poor playback may be experienced due to a defective cassette tape. Clean and demagnetize the tape heads at least twice a year.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Seek Button

Press the SEEK button up for the next selection on the tape and down to return to the beginning of the current selection.

Press the SEEK button up or down to move the track number to skip forward or backward one to six selections. Press the SEEK button once to move one selection, twice to move two selections, etc.

Fast Forward (FF)

Press the FF button up momentarily to advance the tape in the direction that it is playing. The tape will advance until the button is pressed again or the end of the tape is reached. At the end of the tape, the tape will play in the opposite direction.

Rewind (RW)

Press the RW button momentarily to reverse the tape direction. The tape will reverse until the button is pressed again or until the end of the tape is reached. At the end of the tape, the tape will play in the opposite direction.

Tape Eject

Press this button and the cassette will disengage and eject from the radio.

SCAN Button

Press this button to play 10 seconds of each selection. Press the SCAN button a second time to cancel the feature.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing Tape Direction

If you wish to change the direction of tape travel (side being played), press Preset 6. The lighted arrow in the display window will show the new direction.

Metal Tape Selection

If a standard metal tape is inserted into the player, the player will automatically select the correct equalization.

Pinch Roller Release

If ignition power or the radio ON/OFF switch is turned off, the pinch roller will automatically retract to protect the tape from any damage. When power is restored to the tape player, the pinch roller will automatically reengage and the tape will resume play.

Noise Reduction

The Dolby Noise Reduction System* is on whenever the tape player is on, but may be switched off.

To turn off the Dolby Noise Reduction System: Press Preset 1 after you insert the tape. The NR light in the display will go off when the Dolby System is off.

* "Dolby" noise reduction is manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Operating Instructions - (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)

NOTE: The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

NOTE: This Radio is capable of playing compact discs (CD), recordable compact discs (CD-R), rewritable compact discs (CD-RW) compact discs with MP3 tracks and multisession compact discs with CD and MP3 tracks and WMA.

Inserting Compact Disc(s)

CAUTION!
This CD player will accept 4 3/4 inch (12 cm) discs only. The use of other sized discs may damage the CD player mechanism.

You may eject a disc with the radio OFF.

If you insert a disc with the ignition ON and the radio ON, the unit will switch from radio to CD mode and begin to play when you insert the disc. The display will show the disc number, the track number, and index time in minutes and seconds. Play will begin at the start of track one.

SEEK Button (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)
Press the right side of the SEEK button for the next selection on the CD. Press the left side of the button to return to the beginning of the current selection, or return to the beginning of the previous selection if the CD is within the first five seconds of the current selection.

SCAN Button (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)
Press the SCAN button to scan through each track on the CD currently playing.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

LOAD/EJECT Button (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)

LOAD/EJECT - Load

Press the LOAD/EJT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD is being loaded. The radio will display PLEASE WAIT and prompt when to INSERT DISC. After the radio displays ″INSERT DISC,″ insert the CD into the player.

Radio display will show ″LOADING DISC″ when the disc is loading and “READING DISC” when the radio is reading the disc.

LOAD/EJT - Eject

Press the LOAD/EJT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD was loaded and the disc will unload and move to the entrance for easy removal. Radio display will show ″EJECTING DISC″ when the disc is being ejected and prompt the user to remove the disc.

Press and hold the LOAD/EJT button for five seconds and all CDs will be ejected from the radio.

If you have ejected a disc and have not removed it within 15 seconds, it will be reloaded. If the CD is not removed, the radio will continue to play the non-removed CD. If the CD is removed and there are other CDs in the radio, the radio will play the next CD after a two-minute timeout. If the CD is removed and there are no other CDs in the radio, the radio will remain in CD mode and display ″INSERT DISC” for two minutes. After two minutes, the radio will go to the previous tuner mode.

The disc can be ejected with the radio and ignition OFF.

TIME Button (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)

Press this button to change the display from a large CD playing time display to a small CD playing time display.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

RW/FF (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)
Press and hold FF (Fast Forward) and the CD player will begin to fast forward until FF is released or RW or another CD button is pressed. The RW (Reverse) button works in a similar manner.

Press and hold the FF button to fast forward through the tracks. Release the FF button to stop the fast forward feature. If the RW button is pressed, the current track will reverse to the beginning of the track and begin playing.

TUNE Control (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)
Pressing the TUNE control allows the setting of the Tone, Fade, and Balance. See Radio Mode.

AM/FM Button (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)
Switches the Radio to the Radio mode.

RND/PTY Button (Random Play Button) (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)
Press this button while the CD is playing to activate Random play. This feature plays the selections on the compact disc in random order to provide an interesting change of pace.

NOTE: MP3 and WMA Random play are for file folders only.

Press the SEEK button to move to the next randomly selected track.

Press the RND button a second time to stop Random play.

Buttons 1 - 6 (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)
Selects disc positions 1 - 6 for Play / Load / Eject.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Notes On Playing MP3 Files

The radio can play MP3 files; however, acceptable MP3 file recording media and formats are limited. When writing MP3 files, pay attention to the following restrictions.

Supported Media (Disc Types)

The MP3 file recording media supported by the radio are CD-ROM, CD-R, and CD-RW.

Supported Medium Formats (File Systems)

The medium formats supported by the radio are ISO 9660 Level 1 and Level 2 and includes the Joliet extension. When reading discs recorded using formats other than ISO 9660 Level 1 and Level 2, the radio may fail to read files properly and may be unable to play the file normally. UDF and Apple HFS formats are not supported.

The radio uses the following limits for file systems:

- Maximum number of directory levels: 15
- Maximum number of files: 255
- Maximum number of folders: 100
- Maximum number of characters in file/folder names:
  - Level 1: 12 (including a separator ″.″ and a 3-character extension)
  - Level 2: 31 (including a separator ″.″ and a 3-character extension)

Multisession disc formats are supported by the radio. Multisession discs may contain combinations of normal CD audio tracks and computer files (including MP3 files). Discs created with an option such as ″keep disc open after writing″ are most likely multisession discs. The use of multisession for CD audio or MP3 playback may result in longer disc loading times.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Supported MP3 File Formats

The radio will recognize only files with the *.mp3 extension as MP3 files. Non-MP3 files named with the *.mp3 extension may cause playback problems. The radio is designed to recognize the file as an invalid MP3 and will not play the file.

When using the MP3 encoder to compress audio data to an MP3 file, the bit rate and sampling frequencies in the following table are supported. In addition, variable bit rates (VBR) are also supported. The majority of MP3 files use a 44.1 kHz sampling rate and a 192, 160, 128, 96 or VBR bit rates.

MPEG Specification	Sampling Frequency (kHz)	Bit rate (kbps)
MPEG-1 Audio Layer 3	48, 44.1, 32	320, 256, 224, 192, 160, 128, 112, 96, 80, 64, 56, 48, 40, 32
MPEG-2 Audio Layer 3	24, 22.05, 16	160, 128, 144, 112, 96, 80, 64, 56, 48, 40, 32, 24, 16, 8

ID3 Tag information for artist, song title, and album title are supported for version 1 ID3 tags. ID3 version 2 is not supported by the radios.

Playlist files are not supported. MP3 Pro files are not supported.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Playback of MP3 and WMA Files
When a medium containing MP3 data is loaded, the radio checks all files on the medium. If the medium contains a lot of folders or files, the radio will take more time to start playing the MP3 files.

Loading times for playback of MP3 and WMA files may be affected by the following:

- Media - CD-RW media may take longer to load than CD-R media
- Medium formats - Multisession discs may take longer to load than non-multisession discs
- Number of files and folders - Loading times will increase with more files and folders

To increase the speed of disc loading, it is recommended to use CD-R media and single-session discs. To create a single-session disc, enable the Disc at Once option before writing to the disc.

Operating Instructions - (CD Mode for MP3 and WMA Audio Play)

SEEK Button (CD Mode for MP3 and WMA Play)
Pressing the right side of the SEEK button plays the next file. Pressing the left side of the SEEK button plays the beginning of the file. Pressing the button within the first 10 seconds plays the previous file.

LOAD/EJECT Button (CD Mode for MP3 and WMA Play)

LOAD/EJT - Load

Press the LOAD/EJT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD is being loaded. The radio will display PLEASE WAIT and prompt when to INSERT DISC. After the radio displays ″INSERT DISC,″ insert the CD into the player.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The radio display will show ″LOADING DISC″ when the disc is loading.

LOAD/EJT - Eject

Press the LOAD/EJT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD was loaded and the disc will unload and move to the entrance for easy removal. Radio display will show ″EJECTING DISC″ when the disc is being ejected and prompt the user to remove the disc.

If you have ejected a disc and have not removed it within 15 seconds, it will be reloaded. If the CD is not removed, the radio will continue to play the non-removed CD. If the CD is removed and there are other CDs in the radio, the radio will play the next CD after a two-minute timeout. If the CD is removed and there are no other CDs in the radio, the radio will remain in CD mode and display ″INSERT DISC” for two minutes. After two minutes, the radio will go to the previous tuner mode.

INFO Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)

Press the INFO button while playing MP3 or WMA disc. The radio scrolls through the following TAG information: Song Title, Artist, File Name, and Folder Name (if available).

Press the INFO button once more to return to ″elapsed time″ priority mode.

Press and hold the INFO button while in the message display priority mode or elapsed time display priority mode will display the song title for each file.

RW/FF (CD Mode for MP3 and WMA Play)

Press the FF side of the button to move forward through the file or MP3 and WMA selection.

TUNE Control (CD Mode for MP3 Play)

Pressing the TUNE control allows the adjustment of Tone, Balance, and Fade.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

AM/FM Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Switches back to Radio mode.

RND/PTY Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Pressing this button plays files randomly.

SET/DIR Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Press the SET/DIR Button to display folders, when playing an MP3 discs that have a file/folder structure. Turn the TUNE control to display available folders or move through available folders. Press the TUNE control to select a folder.

Buttons 1 - 6 (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Selects disc positions 1 - 6 for Play/Load/Eject.

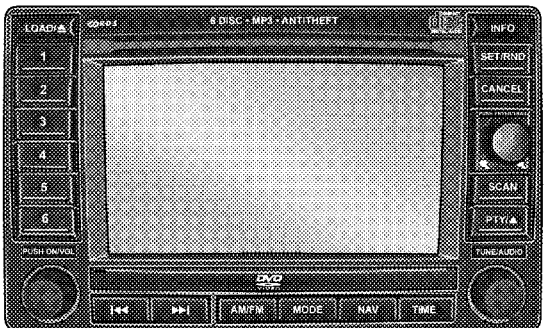
Operating Instructions - Hands Free Phone (If Equipped)
Refer to "Hands-Free Phone" in Section 3 of the Owner's Manual.

Operating Instructions - Satellite Radio Mode (If Equipped)
Refer to the "Satellite Radio" section of the Owner's Manual.

Operating Instructions - Video Entertainment System (VES™) (If Equipped)
Refer to separate "Video Entertainment System (VES™) Guide."

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

SALES CODE REC — AM/FM/CD (6–DISC) RADIO WITH NAVIGATION SYSTEM



81c704b4

Satellite Navigation Radio with CD Player with MP3 Capability (REC) - combines a Global-Positioning System-based navigation system with an integrated color screen to provide maps, turn identification, selection menus and instructions for selecting a variety of destinations and routes, AM/FM stereo radio and six-disc CD changer with MP3 capability.

Mapping information for navigation is supplied on a DVD that is loaded into the unit. One map DVD covers all of North America. Refer to your "Navigation User's Manual" for detailed operating instructions.

Operating Instructions — Satellite Radio — If Equipped

Refer to your "Navigation User's Manual" for detailed operating instructions.

REC Setting the Clock

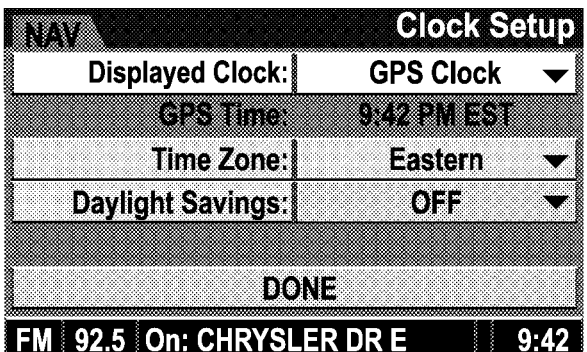
GPS Clock

The GPS receiver used in this system is synchronized to the time data being transmitted by the GPS satellites. The satellites' clock is Greenwich Mean Time (GMT). This is

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

the worldwide standard for time. This makes the system's clock very accurate once the appropriate time zone and daylight savings information is set.

1. At the **Main Menu** screen, highlight "Clock Setup" and press ENTER **OR** press and hold for three seconds the TIME button on the unit's faceplate. The **Clock Setup** screen appears.



81999ef2

2. To show the GPS clock, select "Displayed Clock: GPS Clock" and press ENTER.

3. To adjust the time zone, Select "Time Zone" and press ENTER. Select the appropriate time zone and press ENTER.

4. To turn daylight savings on or off, select "Daylight Savings" and press ENTER. Select "On" or "Off" and press ENTER.

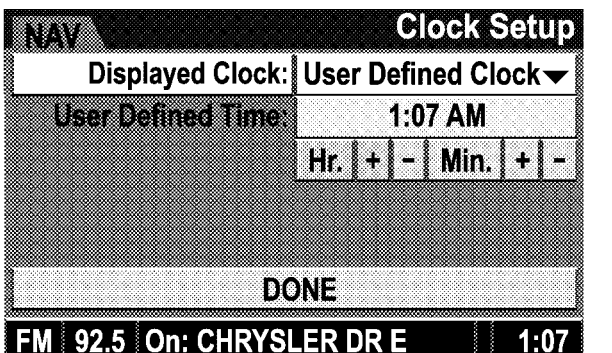
5. Select DONE to exit from the clock setting mode. Press ENTER to save your changes. If you press CANCEL or NAV then your changes will not be saved.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

User Defined Clock

If you wish to set the clock to a time different than the system clock, you can manually adjust the time by choosing the "User Defined Clock" option.

1. At the **Clock Setup** screen highlight "Displayed Clock: User Defined Clock".



2. To increase the clock by hours, make sure "HR +" is highlighted and press ENTER. Press ENTER again to increase the clock by another hour. You will see on the "User Defined Time" display the number of hours you have increased the clock by.

3. To decrease the clock by one hour, use the Select Encoder to highlight the "-" sign. Press ENTER. Press ENTER again to decrease the clock by another hour.

4. To increase the clock by minutes, make sure "MIN +" is highlighted and press ENTER. Press ENTER again to increase the clock by another minute.

5. To decrease the clock by minutes, use the Select Encoder to highlight the "-" sign. Press ENTER. Press ENTER again to decrease the clock by another minute.

6. Select "DONE" to exit from the clock setting mode. Press ENTER to save your changes. If you press CANCEL or NAV then your changes will not be saved.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

VIDEO ENTERTAINMENT SYSTEM (SALES CODE XRV) — IF EQUIPPED

The optional Video Entertainment System™ (VES™) consists of a DVD player and LCD (liquid crystal display) screen, a battery-powered remote control, and two headsets. The system is located in the headliner behind the front row seat. Refer to your VES™ User's Manual for detailed operating instructions.

SATELLITE RADIO — IF EQUIPPED

Satellite radio uses direct satellite to receiver broadcasting technology to provide clear digital sound, coast to coast. The subscription service provider is Sirius™ Satellite Radio. This service offers over 130 channels of music, sports, news, entertainment, and programming for children, directly from its satellites and broadcasting studios.

NOTE: Sirius service is not available in Hawaii and has limited coverage in Alaska.

System Activation

Sirius Satellite Radio service is pre-activated, and you may begin listening immediately to the one year of audio service that is included with the factory-installed satellite radio system in your vehicle. Sirius will supply a welcome kit that contains general information, including how to setup your on-line listening account at no additional charge. For further information, call the toll-free number 888-539-7474, or visit the Sirius web site at www.sirius-.com, or at www.siriuscanada.ca for Canadian residents.

Electronic Serial Number/Sirius Identification Number (ESN/SID)

Please have the following information available when calling:

1. The Electronic Serial Number/Sirius Identification Number (ESN/SID).

2. Your Vehicle Identification Number.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

To access the ESN / SID, refer to the following procedure.

ESN/SID Access with REF Radios
With the ignition switch in the ACC position and the radio OFF, press the CD Eject and TIME buttons simultaneously for three seconds. The first four digits of the 12-digit ESN / SID number will display. Press the SEEK UP button to display the next four digits. Continue to press the SEEK UP button until all 12 ESN / SID digits display. The SEEK DOWN will page down until the first four digits display. The radio will exit the ESN / SID mode when any other button is pushed, the ignition is turned OFF, or five minutes have passed since any button was pushed.

ESN/SID Access with RAQ and RAK Radios
With the ignition switch in the ACC position and the radio OFF, press the CD Eject and TIME buttons simultaneously for three seconds. All twelve ESN / SID numbers will display. The radio will exit the ESN / SID mode when any other button is pushed, the ignition is turned OFF, or five minutes have passed since any button was pushed.

ESN/SID Access with REC Navigation Radios
Please refer to your Navigation User's Manual.

With the ignition in the ACC position and the radio off, press the CD Eject and SET buttons simultaneously until the 12 digits of the ESN / SID appear on the screen.

Selecting Satellite Mode in REF, RAQ, And RAK Radios

Selecting Satellite Mode — REF Radio
Press the MODE button repeatedly until the word ″SAT″ appears in the display.

A CD may remain in the radio while in the Satellite radio mode.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting Satellite Mode — RAQ and RAK Radio
Press the MODE button repeatedly until the word ″SAT″ appears in the display.

These radios will also display the current station name and program type. For more information, such as song title and artist, press the MSG or INFO button.

A CD or tape may remain in the radio while in the Satellite radio mode.

Selecting A Channel

Press and release the SEEK or TUNE knob to search for the next channel. Press the top of the button to search up and the bottom of the button to search down. Holding the TUNE button causes the radio to bypass channels until the button is released.

Press and release the SCAN button (if equipped) to automatically change channels every seven seconds. The radio will pause on each channel for seven seconds before moving on to the next channel. The word ″SCAN″ will appear in the display between each channel change. Press the SCAN button a second time to stop the search.

NOTE: Channels that may contain objectionable content can be blocked. Contact Sirius Customer Care at 888-539-7474 to discuss options for channel blocking or unblocking. Please have your ESN/SID information available.

Storing And Selecting Preset Channels

In addition to the 12 AM and 12 FM preset stations, you may also commit 12 satellite stations to pushbutton memory. These satellite channel preset stations will not erase any AM or FM preset memory stations. Follow the memory preset procedures that apply to your radio.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using The PTY (Program Type) Button — If Equipped

Follow the PTY button instructions that apply to your radio.

PTY Button SCAN

When the desired program type is obtained, press the SCAN button within five seconds. The radio will play seven seconds of the selected channel before moving to the next channel of the selected program type. Press the SCAN button a second time to stop the search.

NOTE: Pressing the SEEK or SCAN button, while performing a music type scan, will change the channel by one and stop the search. Pressing a preset memory button during a music type scan will call up the memory channel and stop the search.

PTY Button SEEK

When the desired program is obtained, press the SEEK button within five seconds. The channel will change to the next channel that matches the program type selected.

Satellite Antenna

To ensure optimum reception on vehicles available with a luggage rack, do not place items on the roof around the rooftop antenna location. Metal objects placed within the line of sight of the antenna will cause decreased performance. Larger luggage items should be placed as far forward as possible. Do not place items directly on or above the antenna.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

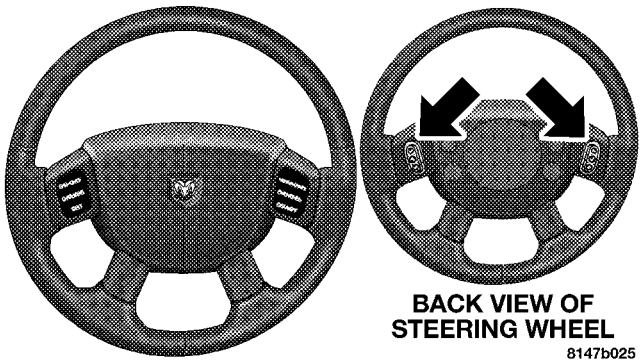
Reception Quality

Satellite reception may be interrupted due to one of the following reasons:

- The vehicle is parked in an underground parking structure or under a physical obstacle.
- Dense tree coverage may interrupt reception.
- Driving under wide bridges or along tall buildings can cause intermittent reception.
- Placing objects over or too close to the antenna can cause signal blockage.

REMOTE SOUND SYSTEM CONTROLS — IF EQUIPPED

The remote sound system controls are located on the rear surface of the steering wheel. Reach behind the wheel to access the switches.



Remote Sound System Controls

The right-hand control is a rocker type switch with a button in the center. Pressing the top of the switch will increase the volume and pressing the bottom of the switch will decrease the volume. The center button of the right-hand control will allow you to change the mode.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The left-hand control is a rocker type switch with a push button in the center. The function of the left-hand control is different, depending on which mode you are in.

The following describes the left-hand control operation in each mode.

Radio Operation

Pressing the top of the left side switch will seek up for the next listenable station and pressing the bottom of the switch will seek down for the next listenable station.

The button located in the center of the left-hand control will tune to the next pre-set station that you have programmed in the radio pre-set push-buttons.

Tape Player

Pressing the top of the switch once will go to the next selection on the cassette. Pressing the bottom of the switch once will go to the beginning of the current selection or to the beginning of the previous selection if it is within the first five seconds of the current selection.

If you press the switch up or down twice it plays the second selection; three times, it will play the third, etc.

The button in the center of the left-hand switch has no function in this mode.

CD Player

Pressing the top of the switch once will go to the next track on the CD. Pressing the bottom of the switch once will go to the beginning of the current track or to the beginning of the previous track if it is within one second after the current track; begins to play.

If you press the switch up or down twice it plays the second track, three times, it will play the third, etc.

The button in the center of the left-hand switch has no function in this mode.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CASSETTE TAPE AND PLAYER MAINTENANCE

To keep the cassette tapes and player in good condition, take the following precautions:

1. Do not use cassette tapes longer than C-90; otherwise, sound quality and tape durability will be greatly diminished.

2. Keep the cassette tape in its case to protect from slackness and dust when it is not in use.

3. Keep the cassette tape away from direct sunlight, heat and magnetic fields such as the radio speakers.

4. Before inserting a tape, make sure that the label is adhering flatly to the cassette.

5. A loose tape should be corrected before use. To rewind a loose tape, insert the eraser end of a pencil into the tape drive gear and twist the pencil in the required direction.

Maintain your cassette tape player. The head and capstan shaft in the cassette player can pick up dirt or tape deposits each time a cassette is played. The result of deposits on the capstan shaft may cause the tape to wrap around and become lodged in the tape transport. The other adverse condition is low or "muddy" sound from one or both channels, as if the treble tone control were turned all the way down. To prevent this, you should periodically clean the head with a commercially available wet cleaning cassette.

As preventive maintenance, clean the head about every 30 hours of use. If you wait until the head becomes very dirty (noticeably poor sound), it may not be possible to remove all deposits with a simple wet cleaning cassette.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

COMPACT DISC MAINTENANCE

To keep the compact discs in good condition, take the following precautions:

1. Handle the disc by its edge; avoid touching the surface.

2. If the disc is stained, clean the surface with a soft cloth, wiping from center to edge.

3. Do not apply paper or tape to the disc; avoid scratching the disc.

4. Do not use solvents such as benzene, thinner, cleaners, or antistatic sprays.

5. Store the disc in its case after playing.

6. Do not expose the disc to direct sunlight.

7. Do not store the disc where temperatures may become too high.

NOTE: If you experience difficulty in playing a particular disc, it may be damaged, oversized, or have theft protection encoding. Try a known good disc before considering disc player service.

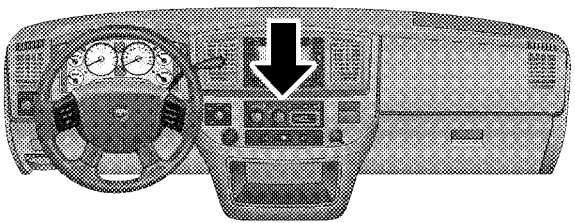
RADIO OPERATION AND CELLULAR PHONES

Under certain conditions, the operation of a cellular phone in your vehicle can cause erratic or noisy performance from your radio. This condition may be lessened or eliminated by relocating the cellular phone antenna. This condition is not harmful to the radio. If your radio performance does not satisfactorily "clear" by the repositioning of the antenna, it is recommended that the radio volume be turned down or off during cellular phone operation.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CLIMATE CONTROLS

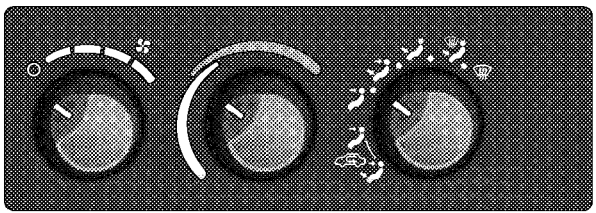
The controls for the heating and ventilation system in this vehicle consist of a series of rotary knobs. These comfort controls can be set to obtain desired interior conditions.



8164639b

Climate Control Location

Heater Only — If Equipped



81646397

Manual Heating Controls

816463c5

The mode control (at the right of the control panel) can be set in any of the following positions:

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: To improve your selection choices, the system allows you to operate at intermediate positions between the major modes. These intermediate positions are identified by the small dots.

Panel

Outside air flows through the outlets located in the instrument panel.

Recirculation Modes (Panel or Bi-Level)

811b86ba

Select the recirculation modes when the outside air contains smoke or odors. This feature allows for recirculation of interior air only. Air flows through the panel outlets in this mode. Air flows through the panel only, or through both the panel and floor vents depending on the selected mode (panel vs bi-level).

Bi-Level

Outside air flows through the outlets located in the instrument panel and at the floor.

Mix

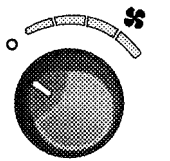
Outside air flows in equal proportions through the floor and defroster outlets.

Defrost

Outside air is primarily directed to the windshield through the defroster outlets located at the base of the windshield, and the demister outlets located at the edge of each side of the instrument panel.

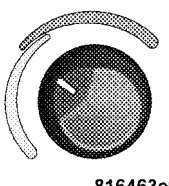
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Blower Control


816463cd

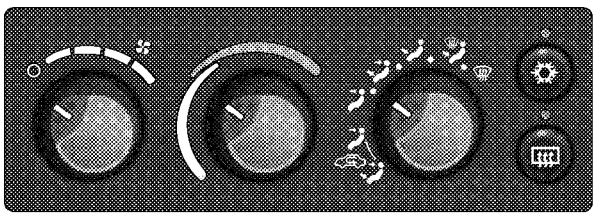
The rotary knob on the left of the control panel is the blower control. Turn the knob clockwise to one of the four positions to obtain the blower speed you desire. To turn the blower off, turn the knob to the far left position.

Temperature Control


816463c9

The rotary knob at the center of the control panel controls the temperature of the interior air. You can choose your degree of comfort by rotating the knob. The coldest temperature setting is to the extreme left (blue region) and the warmest setting is to the extreme right (red region) of the rotation.

Air Conditioning and Heating — If Equipped


81646393

Air Conditioning And Heating

Air Conditioning Operation

To turn on the Air Conditioning, set the fan control at any speed and press the snowflake button located at the right of the control panel. Conditioned air will be directed through the outlets selected by the mode control. A light in the snowflake button shows that the air conditioning is on. Press the button a second time to turn the air conditioning off.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

4

Slight changes in engine speed or power may be noticed when the air conditioning compressor is on. This is a normal occurrence as the compressor will cycle on and off to maintain comfort and increase fuel economy.

816463c5

The mode control (at the right of the control panel) can be set in any of the following positions:

NOTE: To improve your selection choices, the system allows you to operate at intermediate positions between the major modes. These intermediate positions are identified by the small dots.

Recirculation Modes (Panel or Bi-Level)

811b86ba

Select the recirculation modes when the outside air contains smoke, odors, high humidity, or if rapid cooling is desired. This feature allows for recirculation of interior air only. Air flows through the panel only, or through both the panel and floor vents depending on the selected mode (panel vs bi-level).

NOTE: Selecting a Recirculation Mode does not necessarily consume more fuel than normal A/C mode.

Panel

Outside air flows through the outlets located in the instrument panel.

Bi-Level

Outside air flows through the outlets located in the instrument panel and at the floor.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Floor

Outside air flows primarily through the floor outlets located under the instrument panel.

Mix

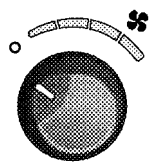
Outside air flows in equal proportions through the floor and defroster outlets, and the air conditioning may be on.

Defrost

Outside air is primarily directed to the windshield through the defroster outlets located at the base of the windshield, and the demister outlets located at the edge of each side of the instrument panel, and the air conditioning may be on.

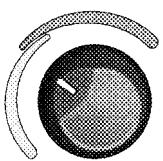
NOTE: The air conditioning compressor operates in both Mix and Defrost or a blend of these modes, even if the A/C button has not been pressed. This dehumidifies the air to help dry the windshield.

Blower Control


816463cd

The rotary knob on the left of the control panel is the blower control. Turn the knob clockwise to one of the four positions to obtain the blower speed you desire. To turn the blower off, turn the knob to the far left position.

Temperature Control


816463c9

The rotary knob at the center of the control panel controls the temperature of the interior air. You can choose your degree of comfort by rotating the knob. The coldest temperature setting is to the extreme left (blue region) and the warmest setting is to the extreme right (red region) of the rotation.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Circulation

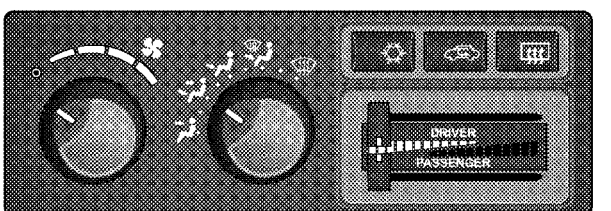
The cab is designed with features to promote outside air circulation. There are grilles in the cab back panel. These are air exhausters that provide the means for regular exchange of cab air.

Side window demisters direct airflow specifically to the window glass to help prevent interior fogging of the glass. They are located in the extreme outside upper edges of the instrument panel. The demisters also provide extra air ducts for circulation. They are in operation whenever the Floor, Mix or Defrost modes are in use. To remove frost from the side windows, it is best to use the full defrost mode.

NOTE: When you turn off the engine you may hear a hissing sound from under the hood for a short period of time. This is a normal condition that occurs if the air conditioning system has been on. It is not an indication of a problem with the air conditioning system.

Air Conditioning with Dual Zone Temperature Control — If Equipped

With the Dual Zone Temperature Control System, each front seat occupant can independently control the temperature of air coming from the outlets on their side of the vehicle.



8164638f

Dual Zone Control Head

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Air Conditioning and Heating Operation

To turn on the Air Conditioning, set the fan control at any speed and press the snowflake button located on the control panel. Conditioned air will be directed through the outlets selected by the mode control. A light in the snowflake button shows that the air conditioning is on. Press the button a second time to turn the air conditioning off.

A/C Pushbutton

80d0bd96

With the fan control in the ON position, pushing the A/C button turns on the air conditioning compressor. An indicator light on the button shows that the Air Conditioning compressor is on. Conditioned air is now directed through the mode outlets selected. Pushing the button a second time turns the compressor OFF.

Recirculation Pushbutton

811b86fe

Pushing the Recirculation button allows interior air to recirculate continuously in any position except defrost and defrost/floor mode for rapid cool down of the interior. See “Fast Cooldown” later in this section.

Mode Control

816463c5

The mode control allows you to choose from several patterns of air distribution.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: To improve your selection choices, the system allows you to operate at intermediate positions between the major modes. These intermediate positions are identified by the small dots and give an even blend of both modes.

Panel

Outside air flows through the outlets located in the instrument panel. These outlets can be adjusted to direct the airflow.

Bi-Level

Air flows through the outlets located in the instrument panel and those located on the floor.

NOTE: There is a difference in temperature between the upper and lower outlets for added comfort. The warmer air goes to the floor outlets. This feature gives improved comfort during sunny but cool conditions.

Heat

Outside air flows primarily through the floor outlets located under the instrument panel.

Mix

Outside air flows in equal proportions through the floor and defroster outlets.

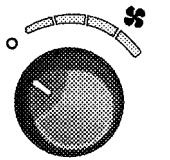
Defrost

Outside air is primarily directed to the windshield through the defroster outlets located at the base of the windshield and side window demist outlets.

NOTE: The air conditioning compressor operates in both Mix and Defrost or a blend of these modes, even if the A/C button has not been pressed. This dehumidifies the air to help dry the windshield.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

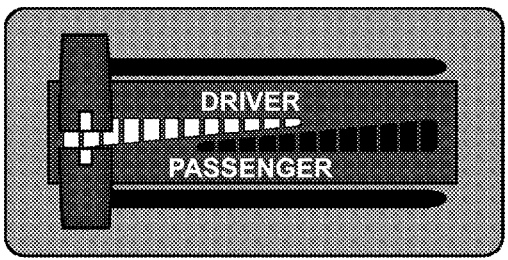
Blower Control



816463cd

The rotary knob on the left of the control panel is the blower control. Turn the knob clockwise to one of the four positions to obtain the blower speed you desire. To turn the blower off, turn the knob to the far left position.

Dual Zone Temperature Control



816463c0

Dual Zone Temperature Control

Use this control to regulate the temperature of the air inside the passenger compartment. This is accomplished by having separate temperature control slides for both the driver and front passenger. The blue area of the scale indicates cooler temperatures while the red area indicates warmer temperatures.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Circulation

The cab is designed with features to promote outside air circulation. There are grilles in the cab back panel. These are air exhausters that provide the means for regular exchange of cab air.

Side window demisters direct airflow specifically to the window glass to help prevent interior fogging of the glass. They are located in the extreme outside upper edges of the instrument panel. The demisters also provide extra air ducts for circulation. They are in operation whenever the Floor, Mix or Defrost modes are in use.

NOTE: When you turn off the engine you may hear a hissing sound from under the hood for a short period of time. This is a normal condition that occurs if the air conditioning system has been on. It is not an indication of a problem with the air conditioning system.

Operating Tips

Fast Cooldown

For a fast cooldown, turn the blower fan rotary knob to the extreme right position, turn the mode control to the panel fresh position, press the snowflake button to turn on the air conditioning, and drive with the windows open for the first few minutes. Once the hot air has been expelled, close the windows and press the recirculation pushbutton, on dual-zone control, or switch the mode from panel/fresh to panel/recirculate on single-zone control. When a comfortable condition has been reached, choose a mode position and adjust the temperature control slide and blower speed as necessary to maintain comfort. For high humidity conditions it may be necessary to remain in the Recirculation mode to maintain comfort.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Window Fogging

Windows will fog on the inside when the humidity inside the vehicle is high. This often occurs in mild or cool temperatures when it's rainy or humid. In most cases turning on the air conditioning (pressing the snowflake button) will clear the fog. Adjust the temperature control, air direction and blower speed to maintain comfort.

As the temperature gets colder it may be necessary to direct air onto the windshield by using MIX Mode position on the control. Adjust the temperature control and blower speed to maintain comfort. Higher blower speeds will reduce fogging. Interior fogging on the windshield can be quickly removed by selecting the defrost mode.

Regular cleaning of the inside of the windows with a non-filming cleaning solution (vinegar and water works very well) will help prevent contaminates (cigarette smoke, perfumes, etc.) from sticking to the windows. Contaminates increase the rate of window fogging.

Summer Operation

Air conditioned vehicles must be protected with a high quality antifreeze coolant during summer to provide proper corrosion protection and to raise the boiling point of the coolant for protection against overheating. A 50 % concentration is recommended. For proper coolant type, refer to "Recommended Fluids and Genuine Parts" in Section 7.

When using the air conditioner in extremely heavy traffic in hot weather, especially when towing a trailer, additional engine cooling may be required. If this situation is encountered, operate the transmission in a lower gear to increase engine RPM, coolant flow and fan speed. When stopped in heavy traffic, it may be necessary to shift into NEUTRAL and depress the accelerator slightly for fast idle operation to increase coolant flow and fan speed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: On models equipped with Diesel engines, the idle speed will automatically increase to 1000 rpm at elevated coolant temperatures to improve engine cooling.

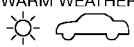
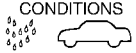
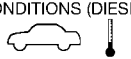
Your air conditioning system is also equipped with an automatic recirculation system. When the system senses a heavy load or high heat conditions, it may use partial Recirculation A/C mode to provide additional comfort.

Winter Operation

When operating the system during the Winter months, make sure the air intake, located directly in front of the windshield, is free of ice, slush, snow, or other obstructions.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Operating Tips Chart

WEATHER	CONTROL SETTINGS
HOT WEATHER AND VEHICLE INTERIOR IS VERY HOT	Start the vehicle, open the windows and turn the blower control knob to the high position (full clockwise). Set Mode control knob at or between and . Set temperature control to full cold and press the button on. After the hot air has been expelled, close the windows and turn the mode control knob to the setting (counterclockwise) at either or , or press the button (if so equipped). Once comfortable, choose a mode position and adjust temperature control and blower speed as necessary for comfort.
WARM WEATHER 	If sunny, set the Mode control at or near and press the button on. If cloudy or dark, set the Mode control at or near . No is necessary.
COOL OR COLD HUMID CONDITIONS 	If sunny, set the Mode control at or between and , then press the button on. If cloudy or dark set the Mode control at or near . No is necessary.
COLD DRY CONDITIONS	In cloudy or dark weather set the Mode control at or near . If sunny, set the Mode control at or between and , and for snowy or very cold weather requiring extra heat to the windshield, use .
EXTREME COLD CONDITIONS (DIESEL) 	Using re-circulated air can aid initial warm-up in extreme cold conditions. **NOTICE: Running in /MAX for long periods of time will result in window fogging. When this occurs, use until windows clear. This will deactivate /MAX. SINGLE ZONE VEHICLES:** Set the mode control at + /MAX, close the panel vents and set the temperature control to full hot. Turn blower control knob to low and gradually increase as air and engine temperature increase. **DUAL ZONE VEHICLES:** Set the mode control at , set both temperature controls to full hot and press the /MAX button. Turn blower control knob to low and gradually increase as air and engine temperature increase.
WINDOW FOGGING	In most cases turning on the Air-Conditioning (press the button) will clear the fog, then adjust temperature control, air direction and blower speed to maintain comfort. As it gets colder it may be necessary to direct air onto the windshield. If so, set the Mode control at or and adjust temperature control and blower speed to maintain comfort. Higher blower speeds will reduce fogging.

8159dfbc

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STARTING AND OPERATING

CONTENTS

- Starting Procedures – Gas Engines 278
  - Normal Starting 278
  - Automatic Transmission – If Equipped 279
  - Manual Transmission – If Equipped 279
  - If Engine Fails To Start 280
  - After Starting 281
- Engine Block Heater — If Equipped 282
- Automatic Transmission 282
  - Automatic Transmission With Overdrive 283
- Manual Transmission 288
  - Shifting — 2500/3500 Models 289
  - Shifting — 1500 Vehicles 291
  - Downshifting – All Manual Transmissions 292
  - Reverse Shifting 293
- Four-Wheel Drive Operation — If Equipped 294
  - Manually Shifted Transfer Case Operating Information/Precautions 294
  - Shifting Procedure - Manually Shifted Transfer Case 297

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- □ Transfer Case Reminder Light 298
- □ Electronically Shifted Transfer Case Operating Information / Precautions (5 Position Switch) — If Equipped 298
- □ Shifting Procedure — Electronically Shifted Transfer Case 304
- □ Electronically Shifted Transfer Case Operating Information / Precautions (4 Position Switch) — If Equipped 306
- □ Shifting Procedure — Electronically Shifted Transfer Case 311

■ Limited-Slip Differential – If Equipped 313

■ Driving On Slippery Surfaces 314

■ Driving Through Water 315

- □ Flowing / Rising Water 315

■ Driving Off-Road 317

■ Parking Brake 318

■ Brake System 319

- □ 3500 Dual Rear Wheel Models Only 320
- □ Brake Noise 320
- □ Rear Wheel Anti-Lock (RWAL) Brake System — If Equipped 320
- □ Four-Wheel Anti-Lock Brake System — If Equipped 321

■ Power Steering 323

■ Electronic Brake Control System (ABS / TCS / BAS / HSA / ERM / ESP / TSC) — If Equipped 324

- □ ABS (Anti-Lock Brake System) 325

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- □ Traction Control System (TCS) 326
- □ BAS (Brake Assist System) 326
- □ HSA (Hill Start Assist) 328
- □ Electronic Roll Mitigation (ERM) 332
- □ ESP (Electronic Stability Program) 333
- □ TSC (Trailer Sway Control) 337

■ Multi-Displacement System (MDS) — 5.7L Engine Only 338

■ Tire Safety Information 339

- □ Tire Markings 339
- □ Tire Loading And Tire Pressure 343

■ Tires — General Information 347

- □ Tire Pressure 347

■ Supplemental Tire Pressure Information — If Equipped 357

■ Tire Chains 357

■ Snow Tires 359

■ Tire Rotation Recommendations 359

- □ Dual Rear Wheels 361

■ Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) — If Equipped 362

- □ Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) “Light Load” Reset Switch Description – If Equipped 365
- □ Tire Pressure Monitor System Components . . .368
- □ General Information 371

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Fuel Requirements 371
□ Reformulated Gasoline 372
□ Gasoline / Oxygenate Blends 373
□ MMT In Gasoline 373
□ Materials Added To Fuel 374
□ Fuel System Cautions 374
□ Carbon Monoxide Warnings 375
■ Adding Fuel 375
□ Adding Fuel (Gas Engines) 375
■ Flexible Fuel — If Equipped 377
□ E-85 General Information 377
□ Ethanol Fuel (E-85) 379
□ Fuel Requirements 379
□ Selection Of Engine Oil For Flexible Fuel Vehicles (E-85) And Gasoline Vehicles 380
□ Starting 380
□ Cruising Range 380
□ Replacement Parts 381
■ Vehicle Loading 381
□ Certification Label 381
■ Trailer Towing 385
□ Common Towing Definitions 385
□ Trailer Hitch Classification 389
□ Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings) 390
□ Trailer And Tongue Weight 390
□ Towing Requirements 392

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- □ Towing Tips 398
- □ Trailer Towing Mirrors — If Equipped 400

■ Snowplow 401

- □ 1500 Models (Light Duty) 401
- □ Before Plowing 403
- □ Snowplow Model Prep Package Availability . .403
- □ Over The Road Operation With Snowplow Attached 404
- □ Methods For Removing Snow 404
- □ Operating Tips 404
- □ General Maintenance 405

■ Recreational Towing (Behind Motorhome, Etc.) . .406

- □ Recreational Towing – 2-Wheel Drive Models 406
- □ Recreational Towing – 4-Wheel Drive Models 406

■ Equipment Identification Plate 413

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

STARTING PROCEDURES – GAS ENGINES

Before starting your vehicle, adjust your seat, adjust both inside and outside mirrors, and fasten your seat belts.

The starter should not be operated for more than 15-second intervals. Waiting a few seconds between such intervals will protect the starter from overheating.

WARNING!

Be sure to turn off the engine and remove the key from the ignition switch if you want to rest or sleep in your vehicle. Accidents can be caused by inadvertently moving the gear selection lever or by pressing the accelerator pedal. This may cause excessive heat in the exhaust system, resulting in overheating and vehicle fire which may cause serious or fatal injuries.

WARNING!

Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat buildup may cause serious injury or death.

Normal Starting

Normal starting of either a warm or cold engine is obtained without pumping or depressing the accelerator pedal. Turn the key to the START position and release when the engine starts. If the engine fails to start within 10 seconds, turn the key to the OFF position, wait five seconds, then repeat the starting procedure.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

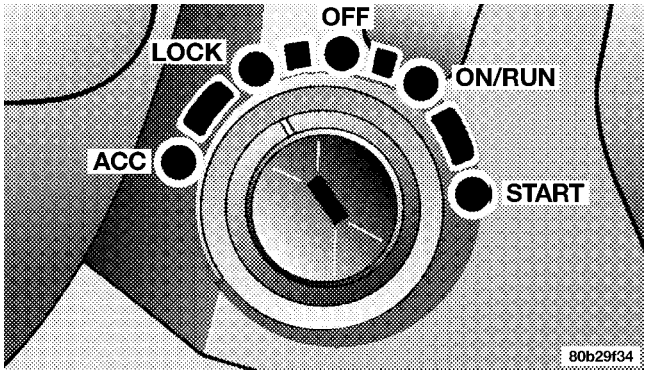
Automatic Transmission – If Equipped

Start the engine with the shift lever in the NEUTRAL or PARK position. Apply the brake before shifting to any driving range.

NOTE: This vehicle is equipped with a transmission shift interlocking system. The brake pedal must be depressed to shift out of PARK.

Tip Start Feature – Automatic Transmission Only

Do not press the accelerator. Turn the ignition key briefly to START position, and release it. The starter motor will continue to run, but will automatically disengage when the engine is running.



Ignition Key Positions

Manual Transmission – If Equipped

Apply the parking brake, place the shift lever in NEUTRAL and depress the clutch pedal to the floor before starting the vehicle. This vehicle is equipped with a clutch interlocking ignition system. It will not start unless the clutch is fully depressed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If Engine Fails To Start

If the engine fails to start after you have followed the normal starting procedure, it may be flooded. Push the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and hold it there while cranking the engine. This should clear any excess fuel in case the engine is flooded.

CAUTION!

To prevent damage to the starter, do not crank the engine for more than 15 seconds at a time. Wait 10 to 15 seconds before trying again.

WARNING!

Never pour fuel or other flammable liquids into the throttle body air inlet opening in an attempt to start the vehicle. This could result in a flash fire causing serious personal injury.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Do not attempt to push or tow your vehicle to get it started. Vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission cannot be started this way. Unburned fuel could enter the catalytic converter and once the engine has started, ignite and damage the converter and vehicle.

If the vehicle has a discharged battery, booster cables may be used to obtain a start from a booster battery or the battery in another vehicle. This type of start can be dangerous if done improperly. Refer to "Jump Starting" in Section 6.

If the engine has been flooded, it may start to run, but not have enough power to continue running when the key is released. If this occurs, continue cranking with the accelerator pedal pushed all the way to the floor. Release the accelerator pedal and the key once the engine is running smoothly.

If the engine shows no sign of starting after two 15-second periods of cranking with the accelerator pedal held to the floor, the normal starting procedure should be repeated.

After Starting

The idle speed is automatically controlled and will decrease as the engine warms up.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER — IF EQUIPPED

The engine block heater warms engine coolant and permits quicker starts in cold weather. Connect the cord to a standard 110-115 volt AC electrical outlet with a grounded, three-wire extension cord.

The engine block heater cord is routed under the hood on the driver side of the vehicle. It has a removable cap that is located on the driver's side of the Integrated Power Module.

WARNING!

Remember to disconnect the cord before driving. Damage to the 110-115 volt electrical cord could cause electrocution.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

CAUTION!

Damage to the transmission may occur if the following precautions are not observed:

- **Shift into PARK only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.**
- **Shift into or out of REVERSE only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop and the engine is at idle speed.**
- **Do not shift from REVERSE, PARK, or NEUTRAL into any forward gear when the engine is above idle speed.**
- **Before shifting into any gear, make sure your foot is firmly on the brake pedal.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

It is dangerous to shift the shift lever out of PARK or NEUTRAL if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and when your right foot is firmly on the brake pedal.

Automatic Transmission with Overdrive

The gear shift lever display located in the instrument panel cluster indicates the transmission gear range (the selector is illuminated for night driving). The shift lever is mounted on the right side of the steering column. You must depress the brake pedal to pull the shift lever out of PARK position (Brake Interlock System). To drive, move the shift lever from PARK or NEUTRAL to the desired DRIVE position. Pull the shift lever toward you when shifting into REVERSE, SECOND, FIRST or PARK, or when shifting out of PARK.

Gear Ranges

DO NOT race the engine when shifting from PARK or NEUTRAL position into another gear range.

PARK

This gear position supplements the parking brake by locking the transmission. The engine can be started in this range. Never use PARK while the vehicle is in motion. Apply the parking brake when leaving the vehicle in this range. Always apply parking brake first, then place the selector in PARK position. On 4-wheel drive vehicles be sure that the transfer case is in a drive position!

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Never use PARK position on an automatic transmission as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply parking brake fully when parked to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.

WARNING!

Your vehicle could move and injure you and others if it is not completely in PARK. Check by trying to move the gearshift lever back and forth without first pulling it toward you after you have set it in PARK. Make sure it is in PARK before leaving the vehicle.

WARNING!

It is dangerous to shift the shift lever out of PARK or NEUTRAL if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and when your right foot is firmly on the brake pedal.

REVERSE

Use this range only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NEUTRAL
Shift to Neutral when the vehicle is standing for prolonged periods with the engine running. The engine may be started in this range. Set the parking brake if you must leave the vehicle.

DRIVE
This position provides all forward gears, including 3rd gear direct and 4th or 5th gear overdrive (see Overdrive Operation). Use this range for most city and highway driving.

SECOND
Use this position for driving slowly in heavy city traffic or on mountain roads where more precise speed control is desirable. Use it also when climbing long grades, and for engine braking when descending moderately steep grades. To prevent excessive engine speed do not exceed 45 mph (72 km/h) in this range.

FIRST
Use this position for driving up very steep hills and for engine braking at low speeds 20 mph (32 km/h) or less when going downhill. To prevent excessive engine speed, do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h) in this range.

NOTE: Use caution when operating a heavily loaded vehicle in SECOND or FIRST gear selections in high ambients as torque converter slip can impose significant additional heat load on the cooling system.

Overdrive Operation
The overdrive automatic transmission contains an electronically controlled fourth and fifth (if equipped) speed (Overdrive). The transmission will automatically shift from DRIVE to Overdrive if the following conditions are present:

- the transmission selector is in DRIVE;

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- the engine coolant has reached normal operating temperature;
- vehicle speed is above approximately 30 mph (48 km/h);
- the "TOW HAUL O/D OFF" switch has not been activated;
- transmission has reached normal operating temperature.

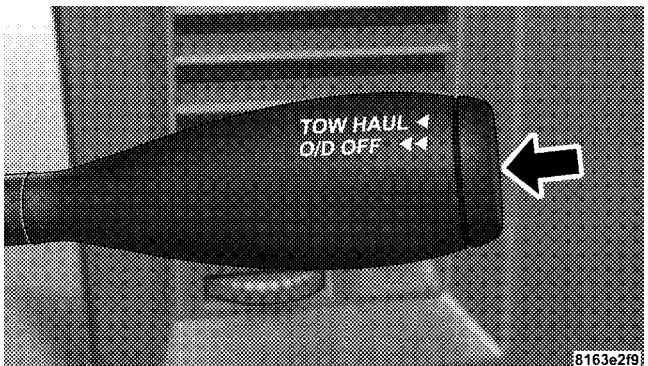
NOTE: If the vehicle is started in extremely cold temperatures, the transmission may not shift into Overdrive and will automatically select the most desirable gear for operation at this temperature. Normal operation will resume when the transmission fluid temperature has risen to a suitable level. Refer also to the Note under torque converter clutch, later in this section.

If the transmission temperature gets extremely hot, the transmission will automatically select the most desirable gear for operation at this temperature. If the transmission temperature becomes hot enough the TRANS TEMP light may illuminate and the transmission may downshift out of Overdrive until the transmission cools down. After cooldown, the transmission will resume normal operation.

The transmission will downshift from Overdrive to Drive if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed at vehicle speeds above approximately 35 mph (56 km/h).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When To Use "TOW HAUL" and "O/D OFF" Modes



Tow Haul O/D Off Switch

When driving in hilly areas, towing a trailer, carrying a heavy load, etc., and frequent transmission shifting occurs, press the "TOW HAUL O/D OFF" button once to select TOW HAUL. This will improve performance and reduce the potential for transmission overheating or failure due to excessive shifting. When operating in "TOW HAUL" mode, 5th gear (if equipped) is disabled and 2-3 and 3-4 shift patterns are modified. Shifts into Overdrive (4th gear) are allowed during steady cruise (for improved fuel economy) and automatic closed-throttle downshifts to 3rd gear are performed (for improved braking) when driving conditions warrant. Pressing the "TOW HAUL O/D OFF" button a second time to select O/D OFF will disable 4th and 5th gear completely, which should eliminate any excessive transmission shifting.

The "TOW HAUL" or "O/D OFF" light will illuminate in the instrument cluster to indicate when the switch has been activated. Pressing the switch a third time restores normal operation. If the "TOW HAUL" or "O/D OFF" modes are desired, the button must be pressed each time the engine is started.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Torque Converter Clutch

A feature, designed to improve fuel economy, has been included in the automatic transmission on your vehicle. A clutch within the torque converter engages automatically at calibrated speeds. This may result in a slightly different feeling or response during normal operation in the upper gears. When the vehicle speed drops or during acceleration when the transmission downshifts to second gear, the clutch automatically disengages.

NOTE: The torque converter clutch will not engage until the transmission fluid and engine coolant are warm [usually after 1-3 miles (1.6 - 4.8 km) of driving]. Because the engine speed is higher when the torque converter clutch is not engaged, it may seem as if the transmission is not shifting into Overdrive when cold. This is normal. Pressing the "TOW HAUL O/D OFF" button, when the transmission is sufficiently warm, will demonstrate that the transmission is able to shift into and out of overdrive.

NOTE: If the vehicle has not been driven in several days, the first few seconds of operation after shifting the transmission into gear may seem sluggish. This is due to the fluid partially draining from the torque converter into the transmission. This condition is normal and will not cause damage to the transmission. The torque converter will refill within five seconds of shifting from PARK into any other gear position.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION

WARNING!

You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended without having the parking brake fully applied. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle, especially on an incline.

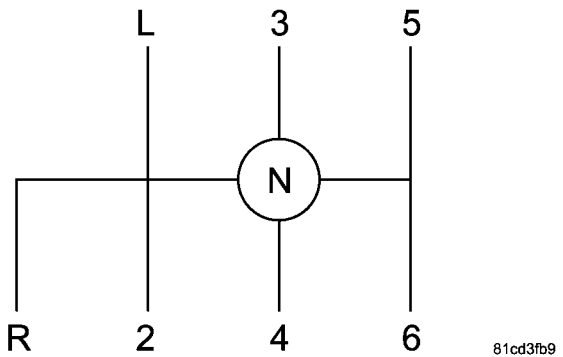
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Never drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal, or attempt to hold the vehicle on a hill with the clutch pedal partially engaged, as this will cause abnormal wear on the clutch.

NOTE: During cold weather, you may experience increased effort in shifting until the transmission fluid warms up. This is normal.

Shifting — 2500/3500 Models



Shift Pattern

Truck models with manual transmission are equipped with a clutch interlocking ignition system. The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Fully depress the clutch pedal before shifting gears. As you release the clutch pedal, lightly depress the accelerator pedal.

2500 and 3500 models are equipped with the G56 manual transmission. This transmission has a “creeper” 1st gear which should be used to start from a standing position when carrying a payload or towing a trailer. Damage to the clutch can result from starting in 2nd or 3rd gear with a loaded vehicle. An unloaded vehicle may be launched in 2nd gear. Use each gear in numerical order – do not skip a gear.

Recommended Vehicle Shift Speeds

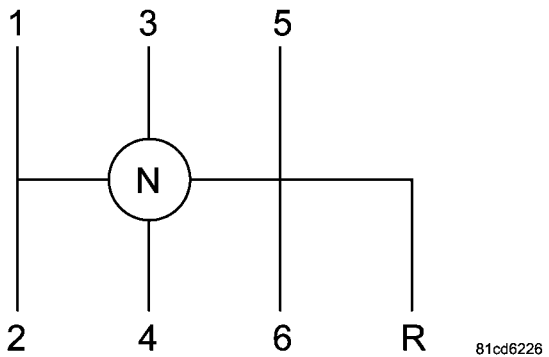
To utilize your manual transmission efficiently for both fuel economy and performance, it should be upshifted as listed in recommended shift speed chart. Shift at the vehicle speeds listed for acceleration. When heavily loaded or pulling a trailer these recommended up-shift speeds may not apply.

Maximum Recommended Up-shift Speeds

Engine	Model	L to 2	2 to 3	3 to 4	4 to 5	5 to 6
5.7L	2500/3500	15 mph (24 km/h)	25 mph (40 km/h)	40 mph (64 km/h)	45 mph (72 km/h)	50 mph (81 km/h)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Shifting — 1500 Vehicles



Shift Pattern (1500 Models)

1500 models are equipped with a G238 manual transmission. This transmission has a clutch interlocking ignition system. The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the vehicle.

Fully depress the clutch pedal before shifting gears. As you release the clutch pedal, lightly depress the accelerator pedal.

You should always use 1st gear when starting from a standing position.

Recommended Shift Speeds

To utilize your manual transmission efficiently for both fuel economy and performance, it should be upshifted as listed in recommended shift speed chart. Shift at the vehicle speeds listed for acceleration. When heavily loaded or pulling a trailer these recommended up-shift speeds may not apply.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Higher upshift speeds may be used to obtain a desired acceleration rate.

6 Speed Manual Transmission Shift Speed in mph (km/h)								
Engine	Model	Axle	Acceleration Rate	1 to 2	2 to 3	3 to 4	4 to 5	5 to 6
3.7L	ALL	ALL	ACCEL & CRUISE	15 (24) 10 (16)	24 (39) 19 (31)	34 (55) 27 (44)	47 (76) 37 (60)	56 (90) 41 (66)
4.7L	All	ALL	ACCEL & CRUISE	15 (24)	25 (40)	40 (65)	45 (72)	50 (81)

Downshifting – All Manual Transmissions

Moving from a high gear down to a lower gear is recommended to preserve brakes when driving down steep hills. In addition, downshifting at the right time provides better acceleration when you desire to resume speed. Downshift progressively. Do not skip gears to avoid overspeeding the engine and clutch.

WARNING!

Do not downshift for additional engine braking on a slippery surface. The drive wheels could lose their grip and the vehicle could skid.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

When descending a hill, be very careful to downshift one gear at a time to prevent overspeeding the engine which can cause valve damage, and/or clutch disc damage even if the clutch pedal is depressed.

Maximum Recommended Downshift Speeds

CAUTION!

Failure to follow the recommended downshifting speeds may cause the engine to overspeed and/or damage the clutch disc even if the clutch pedal is depressed.

Maximum Recommended Downshifting Speeds

Gear Selection	6 to 5	5 to 4	4 to 3	3 to 2	2 to 1
Maximum Speed	85 mph (135 km/h)	75 mph (120 km/h)	55 mph (88 km/h)	35 mph (56 km/h)	20 mph (32 km/h)

Reverse Shifting

To shift into REVERSE (R), bring the vehicle to a complete stop. Depress the clutch and pause briefly to allow the gear train to stop rotating. Beginning from the NEUTRAL (N) position, move the shift lever in one quick smooth motion straight across and into the REVERSE (R) area (the driver will feel a firm “click” as the shifter passes the “knock-over”). Complete the shift by pulling the shift lever into REVERSE (R).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The “knock-over” prevents the driver from accidentally entering the REVERSE (R) shift area and warns the driver that they are about to shift the transmission into REVERSE (R). Due to this feature, a slow shift to REVERSE (R) can be perceived as a high shift effort.

On 2500 / 3500 models, when shifting out of reverse bring the vehicle to a complete stop and depress the clutch. Shifting out of reverse prior to a complete stop may cause high shift effort.

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE OPERATION — IF EQUIPPED

Four-wheel drive trucks are equipped with either a manually shifted transfer case or an electronically shifted transfer case. Refer to the operating instructions for your transfer case, located in this section.

Manually Shifted Transfer Case Operating Information/Precautions

The transfer case provides 4 mode positions - 2 (rear)-wheel drive high range, 4-wheel drive high range, neutral, and 4-wheel drive low range.

This transfer case is intended to be driven in the 2-wheel drive position (2H) for normal street and highway conditions such as dry, hard surfaced roads.

When additional traction is required, the transfer case 4H and 4L positions can be used to lock the front and rear driveshafts together and force the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by simply moving the shift lever to the desired positions. The 4H and 4L positions are intended for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Driving in the 4H and 4L positions on dry, hard surfaced roads may cause increased tire wear and damage to the driveline components.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The 4-wheel drive light (4WD), located in the instrument cluster, alerts the driver that the vehicle is in 4-wheel drive and that the front and rear driveshafts are locked together. This light illuminates when the transfer case is shifted to either the 4H or 4L positions. There is no light for the 2H or NEUTRAL positions.

When operating your vehicle in 4L, the engine speed is approximately three times that of the 2H or 4H positions at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine and do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Proper operation of 4-wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type and circumference on each wheel. Any difference will adversely affect shifting and can cause damage to the transfer case.

NOTE: Do not attempt to make a shift while only the front or rear wheels are spinning. The transfer case is not equipped with a synchronizer and therefore the front and rear driveshaft speeds must be equal for the shift to take place. Shifting while only the front or rear wheels are spinning can cause damage to the transfer case.

Because 4-wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.

NOTE: Delayed shifts out of four-wheel drive may be experienced due to uneven tire wear, low or uneven tire pressures, excessive vehicle loading, or cold temperatures.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL position disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to move regardless of the transmission position. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position see the information below:

2H

Rear Wheel Drive High Range - Normal street and highway driving. Dry hard surfaced roads.

4H

4-Wheel Drive High Range - Locks the front and rear driveshafts together. Forces the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

N

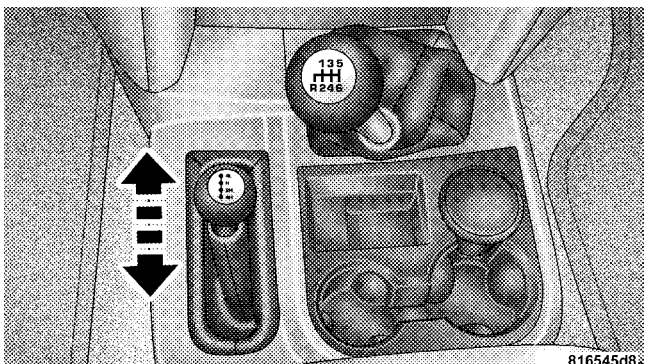
NEUTRAL - Disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. See Recreational Towing for more information.

4L

4-Wheel Drive Low Range - Low speed 4-wheel drive. Locks the front and rear driveshafts together. Forces the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Shifting Procedure - Manually Shifted Transfer Case



Manual Transfer Case Shifter

2H ⇔ 4H

Shifting between 2H and 4H can be made with the vehicle stopped or in motion. If the vehicle is in motion, shifts can be made up to 55 mph (88 km/h). With the vehicle in motion, the transfer case will engage/disengage faster if you momentarily release the accelerator pedal after completing the shift. Apply a constant force when shifting the transfer case lever.

2H or 4H ⇔ 4L

With the vehicle rolling at 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h), shift an automatic transmission to NEUTRAL or depress the clutch on a manual transmission. While the vehicle is coasting at 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h), shift the transfer case lever firmly to the desired position. Do not pause in transfer case NEUTRAL.

NOTE: Pausing in transfer case NEUTRAL in vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission may require shutting the engine OFF to avoid gear clash while completing the shift. If difficulty occurs, shift automatic transmission to NEUTRAL, hold foot on brake, and turn engine OFF. Make shift to the desired mode.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

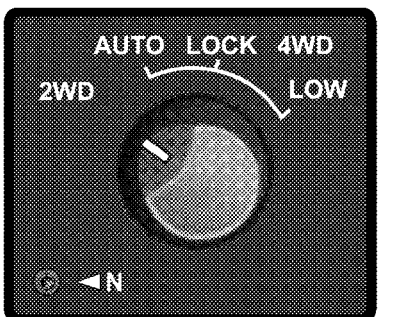
NOTE: Shifting into or out of 4L is possible with the vehicle completely stopped, however difficulty may occur due to the mating clutch teeth not being properly aligned. Several attempts may be required for clutch teeth alignment and shift completion to occur. The preferred method is with the vehicle rolling 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h). Avoid attempting to engage or disengage 4L with the vehicle moving faster than 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h).

NOTE: Do not attempt to shift to or from 4L while the transmission is in gear or clutch is engaged.

Transfer Case Reminder Light

The 4-wheel drive operating light (4WD), located in the instrument cluster, is used to alert the driver that the front axle is fully engaged and all four wheels are driving.

Electronically Shifted Transfer Case Operating Information/Precautions (5 Position Switch) — If Equipped



81a42c06

5 Position Switch

This is an electric shift transfer case and is operated by the 4WD Control Switch (Transfer Case Switch), which is located on the instrument panel.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

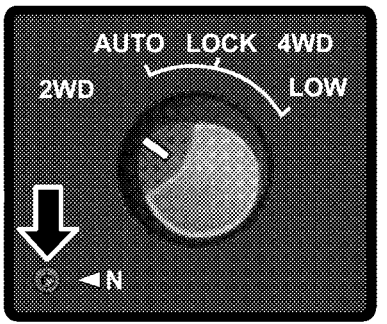
This Electronically Shifted transfer case provides 5 mode positions: 2-wheel drive (2WD), 4WD AUTO, 4WD LOCK, NEUTRAL and 4WD LOW.

The Electronically Shifted transfer case is designed to be driven in the 2 wheel drive position (2WD) or 4-wheel drive position (4WD AUTO) for normal street and highway conditions (dry hard surfaced roads). Driving the vehicle in 2WD will have greater fuel economy benefits, as the front axle is not engaged in 2WD.

For variable driving conditions the 4WD AUTO mode can be used. In this mode the front axle is engaged, but the vehicle's power is sent to the rear wheels. 4-wheel drive will be automatically engaged when the vehicle senses a loss of traction. Because the front axle is engaged, this mode will result in lower fuel economy than the 2WD mode.

When additional traction is required, the transfer case 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions can be used to lock the front and rear driveshafts together and force the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by rotating the 4WD Control Switch to the desired position - see Shifting Procedure section for specific shifting instructions. The 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions are designed for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Driving in the 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions on dry hard surfaced roads may cause increased tire wear and damage to the driveline components.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



NEUTRAL Button

NOTE: The transfer case NEUTRAL position is selected by depressing the recessed button located on the lower left hand corner of the 4WD Control Switch. The transfer case NEUTRAL position is to be used for recreational towing only. See the Recreational Towing section for specific procedures on shifting into and out of NEUTRAL.

Transfer Case Position Indicator Lights — Electronically Shifted Transfer Case Only

Transfer case position indicator lights are located on the instrument cluster and indicate the current and desired transfer case selection. When you select a different transfer case position, the indicator lights will do the following:

If All Shift Conditions are Met

1. The current position indicator light will turn OFF.
2. The selected position indicator light will flash until the transfer case completes the shift.
3. When the shift is complete, the indicator light for the selected position will stop flashing and remain ON.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If One or More Shift Conditions are not Met

1. The indicator light for the current position will remain ON.

2. The newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash.

3. The transfer case **will not** shift.

NOTE: Before retrying a selection, make certain that all the necessary requirements for selecting a new transfer case position have been met. To retry the selection, turn the control knob back to the current position, wait five seconds, and retry selection. To find the shift requirements, refer to the ″Shifting Procedure″ for your transfer case, located in this section of the owner's manual.

The "SERVICE 4WD" warning light monitors the electric shift 4WD system. If this light remains on after engine start up or illuminates during driving, it means that the 4WD system is not functioning properly and that service is required.

WARNING!

Always engage the parking brake when powering down the vehicle if the ″Service 4WD″ light is illuminated. Not engaging the parking brake may allow the vehicle to roll which may cause personal injury.

NOTE: Do not attempt to make a shift while only the front or rear wheels are spinning. This could cause damage to driveline components.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

When operating your vehicle in 4WD LO, the engine speed is approximately three times that of the 2WD, 4WD AUTO or 4WD HI positions at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine and do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Proper operation of 4-wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type and circumference on each wheel. Any difference in tire size can cause damage to the transfer case.

Because 4-wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.

WARNING!

You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL position disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to move regardless of the transmission position. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position see the information below:

2WD

Rear-Wheel Drive High Range - Normal street and highway driving. Dry hard surfaced roads.

4WD AUTO

Automatic 4–wheel drive sends power to the rear wheels. 4–wheel drive will be automatically engaged when the vehicle senses a loss of traction. Additional traction for varying road conditions.

4WD LOCK

4-Wheel Drive Lock Range - Locks the front and rear driveshafts together. Forces the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

4WD LOW

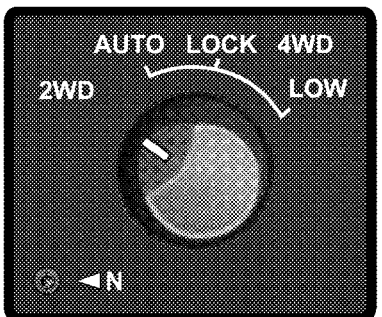
4-Wheel Drive Low Range - Low speed 4-wheel drive. Locks the front and rear driveshafts together. Forces the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

N

NEUTRAL - Disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. See Recreational Towing for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Shifting Procedure — Electronically Shifted Transfer Case



5 Position Switch

NOTE: If any of the requirements to select a new transfer case position have not been met, the transfer case will not shift. The indicator light for the previous position will remain ON and the newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash until all the requirements for the selected position have been met. To retry a shift: return the control knob back to the original position, make certain all shift requirements have been met, wait five (5) seconds and try the shift again.

NOTE: If all the requirements to select a new transfer case position have been met, the current position indicator light will turn OFF, the selected position indicator light will flash until the transfer case completes the shift. When the shift is complete, the indicator light for the selected position will stop flashing and remain ON.

2WD ⇔ 4WD AUTO or 4WD LOCK

Rotate the 4WD Control Switch to the desired position. Shifts between 2WD and 4WD AUTO and 4WD LOCK can be done with the vehicle stopped or in motion. With the vehicle in motion, the transfer case will engage/disengage faster if you momentarily release the accelerator pedal after turning the control switch. If the vehicle is

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

stopped, the ignition key must be in the ON position with the engine either RUNNING or OFF. This shift cannot be completed if the key is in the accessory position.

2WD or 4 AUTO or 4 LOCK ⇔ 4WD LOW

NOTE: When shifting into or out of 4WD LOW some gear noise may be heard. This noise is normal and is not detrimental to the vehicle or occupants.

Shifting can be performed with the vehicle rolling 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h) or completely stopped. USE EITHER OF THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURES:

Preferred Procedure

1. With engine RUNNING, slow vehicle to 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h).

2. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL (depress clutch on manual transmissions).

3. While still rolling, rotate the transfer case control switch to the desired position.

4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift transmission back into gear (release clutch on manual transmissions).

Alternate Procedure

1. Bring the vehicle to complete stop.

2. With the key ON and the engine either OFF or RUNNING, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL (depress clutch on manual transmissions).

3. Rotate the transfer case control switch to the desired position.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

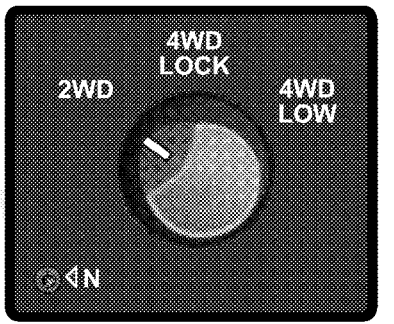
4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift transmission back into gear (release clutch on manual transmissions).

NOTE: If steps 1 or 2 of either the Preferred or Alternate Procedure are not satisfied prior to attempting the shift or if they no longer are being met while the shift attempt is in process then the desired position indicator light will flash continuously while the original position indicator light is ON, until all requirements have been met.

NOTE: The ignition key must be ON for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the key is not ON then the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.

NOTE: If your are leaving your vehicle stored for longer than 21 days, refer to the section on “Vehicle Storage.”

Electronically Shifted Transfer Case Operating Information/Precautions (4 Position Switch) — If Equipped



81a4283e

Transfer Case Switch

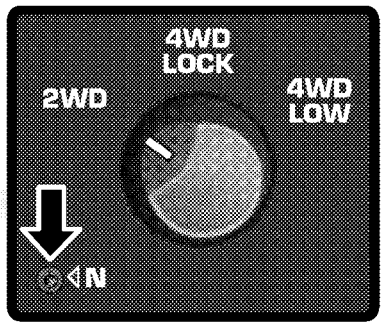
This is an electric shift transfer case and is operated by the 4WD Control Switch (Transfer Case Switch), which is located on the instrument panel.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

This Electronically Shifted transfer case provides four mode positions: 2 (rear)-wheel drive high range, 4-wheel drive lock range, 4-wheel drive low range, and NEUTRAL.

The Electronically Shifted transfer case is designed to be driven in the 2-wheel drive position (2WD) for normal street and highway conditions (dry, hard surfaced roads).

When additional traction is required, the transfer case 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions can be used to lock the front and rear driveshafts together and force the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by rotating the 4WD Control Switch to the desired position - see Shifting Procedure section for specific shifting instructions. The 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions are designed for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Driving in the 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions on dry hard surfaced roads may cause increased tire wear and damage to the driveline components.



81977fda

NOTE: The transfer case NEUTRAL position is selected by depressing the recessed button located on the lower left hand corner of the 4WD Control Switch. The transfer case NEUTRAL position is to be used for recreational towing only. Refer to “Recreational Towing” in this section.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Transfer Case Position Indicator Lights — Electronically Shifted Transfer Case Only

Transfer case position indicator lights are located in the instrument cluster and indicate the current and desired transfer case selection. When you select a different transfer case position, the indicator lights will do the following:

If All Shift Conditions Are Met:

1. The current position indicator light will turn OFF.

2. The selected position indicator light will flash until the transfer case completes the shift.

3. When the shift is complete, the indicator light for the selected position will stop flashing and remain ON.

If One or More Shift Conditions Are Not Met:

1. The indicator light for the current position will remain ON.

2. The newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash.

3. The transfer case **will not** shift.

NOTE: Before retrying a selection, make certain that all the necessary requirements for selecting a new transfer case position have been met. To retry the selection, turn the control knob back to the current position, wait five seconds, and retry selection. To find the shift requirements, refer to the ″Shifting Procedure″ for your transfer case, located in this section of the owner's manual.

The "SERVICE 4WD" warning light monitors the electric shift 4WD system. If this light remains on after engine start up or illuminates during driving, it means that the 4WD system is not functioning properly and that service is required.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Always engage the parking brake when powering down the vehicle if the ″SERVICE 4WD″ light is illuminated. Not engaging the parking brake may allow the vehicle to roll, which may cause personal injury.

NOTE: Do not attempt to make a shift while only the front or rear wheels are spinning, as this can cause damage to driveline components.

When operating your vehicle in 4WD LOW, the engine speed is approximately three times that of the 2WD or 4WD LOCK positions at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine and do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Proper operation of 4-wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type and circumference on each wheel. Any difference in tire size can cause damage to the transfer case.

Because 4-wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL position disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to move regardless of the transmission position. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position see the information below:

2WD
Rear Wheel Drive High Range - Normal street and highway driving. Dry, hard surfaced roads.

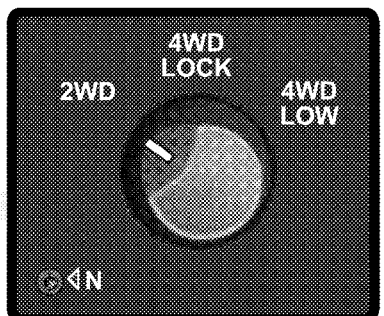
4WD LOCK
4-Wheel Drive Lock Range - Locks the front and rear driveshafts together. Forces the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

4WD LOW
4-Wheel Drive Low Range - Low speed 4-wheel drive. Locks the front and rear driveshafts together. Forces the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

N
Neutral - Disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. See Recreational Towing for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Shifting Procedure — Electronically Shifted Transfer Case



Transfer Case Switch

NOTE: If any of the requirements to select a new transfer case position have not been met, the transfer case will not shift. The indicator light for the previous position will remain ON and the newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash until all the requirements for the selected position have been met. To retry a shift: return the control knob back to the original position, make certain all shift requirements have been met, wait five seconds and try the shift again.

NOTE: If all the requirements to select a new transfer case position have been met, the current position indicator light will turn OFF, the selected position indicator light will flash until the transfer case completes the shift. When the shift is complete, the indicator light for the selected position will stop flashing and remain ON.

5

2WD⇔ 4WD LOCK

Rotate the 4WD control switch to the desired position. Shifts between 2WD and 4WD LOCK can be done with the vehicle stopped or in motion. With the vehicle in motion, the transfer case will engage/disengage faster if you momentarily release the accelerator pedal after turning the control switch. If the vehicle is stopped, the

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

ignition key must be in the ON position with the engine either running or off. This shift cannot be completed if the key is in the ACC position.

NOTE: The 4x4 system will not allow shifts between 2WD/4WD LOCK if the front and/or rear wheels are spinning (no traction). In this situation the selected position indicator light will flash and the original position indicator light will remain ON. At this time, reduce speed and stop spinning the wheels to complete the shift.

2WD or 4WD LOCK⇔ 4WD LOW

NOTE: When shifting into or out of 4WD LOW some gear noise may be heard. This noise is normal and is not detrimental to the vehicle or occupants.

Shifting can be performed with the vehicle rolling 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h) or completely stopped. USE EITHER OF THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURES:

Preferred Procedure

1. With engine running, slow vehicle to 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h).

2. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL (depress clutch on manual transmissions).

3. While still rolling, rotate the transfer case control switch to the desired position.

4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift transmission back into gear (release clutch on manual transmissions).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Alternate Procedure

1. Bring the vehicle to complete stop.

2. With the key ON and the engine either OFF or running, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL (depress clutch on manual transmissions).

3. Rotate the transfer case control switch to the desired position.

4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift transmission back into gear (release clutch on manual transmissions).

NOTE: If steps 1 or 2 of either the Preferred or Alternate Procedure are not satisfied prior to attempting the shift then the desired position indicator light will flash continuously while the original position indicator light is ON, until all requirements have been met.

NOTE: The ignition key must be ON for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the key is not ON then the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.

NOTE: If your are leaving your vehicle stored for longer than 21 days, refer to the section on “Vehicle Storage.”

LIMITED-SLIP DIFFERENTIAL – IF EQUIPPED

The limited-slip differential provides additional traction on snow, ice, mud, sand and gravel, particularly when there is a difference between the traction characteristics of the surface under the right and left rear wheels. During normal driving and cornering, the limited-slip unit performs similarly to a conventional differential. On slippery surfaces, however, the differential delivers more of the driving effort to the rear wheel having the better traction.

The limited-slip differential is especially helpful during slippery driving conditions. With both rear wheels on a

Information Provided by DEALER E-PROCESS

slippery surface, a slight application of the accelerator will supply maximum traction. When starting with only one rear wheel on an excessively slippery surface, slight momentary application of the parking brake may be necessary to gain maximum traction.

WARNING!

On vehicles equipped with a limited-slip differential, never run the engine with one rear wheel off the ground, since the vehicle may drive through the rear wheel remaining on the ground. You could lose control of the vehicle.

Care should be taken to avoid sudden accelerations when both rear wheels are on a slippery surface. This could cause both rear wheels to spin, and allow the vehicle to slide sideways on the crowned surface of a road or in a turn.

DRIVING ON SLIPPERY SURFACES

When driving on wet or slushy roads, it is possible for a wedge of water to build up between the tire and road surface. This is known as hydroplaning and may cause partial or complete loss of vehicle control and stopping ability. To reduce this possibility, the following precautions should be observed:

1. Slow down during rainstorms or when roads are slushy.
2. Slow down if road has standing water or puddles.
3. Replace tires when tread wear indicators first become visible.
4. Keep tires properly inflated.
5. Maintain sufficient distance between your vehicle and the car in front to avoid a collision in a sudden stop.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

Driving through water more than a few inches/centimeters deep will require extra caution to ensure safety and prevent damage to your vehicle.

Flowing/Rising Water

WARNING!

Do not drive on, or cross, a road or a path where water is flowing and/or rising (as in storm run-off). Flowing water can wear away the road or path's surface and cause your vehicle to sink into deeper water. Furthermore, flowing and/or rising water can carry your vehicle away swiftly. Failure to follow this warning may result in injuries that are serious or fatal to you, your passengers, and others around you.

Shallow Standing Water

Although your vehicle is capable of driving through shallow standing water, consider the following Caution and Warning before doing so.

CAUTION!

- **Always check the depth of the standing water before driving through it. Never drive through standing water that is deeper than the bottom of the tire rims mounted on the vehicle.**
- **Determine the condition of the road or the path that is under water, and if there are any obstacles in the way, before driving through the standing water.**
- **Do not exceed 5 mph (8 km/h) when driving through standing water. This will minimize wave effects.**

5

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

- **Driving through standing water may cause damage to your vehicle's drivetrain components. Always inspect your vehicle's fluids (i.e., engine oil, transmission, axle, etc.) for signs of contamination (i.e., fluid that is milky or foamy in appearance) after driving through standing water. Do not continue to operate the vehicle if any fluid appears contaminated, as this may result in further damage. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.**
- **Getting water inside your vehicle's engine can cause it to lock up and stall out, and cause serious internal damage to the engine. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.**

WARNING!

- **Driving through standing water limits your vehicle's traction capabilities. Do not exceed 5 mph (8 km/h) when driving through standing water.**
- **Driving through standing water limits your vehicle's braking capabilities, which increases stopping distances. Therefore, after driving through standing water, drive slowly and lightly press on the brake pedal several times to dry the brakes.**
- **Getting water inside your vehicle's engine can cause it to lock up and stall out, and leave you stranded.**
- **Failure to follow these warnings may result in injuries that are serious or fatal to you, your passengers, and others around you.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

DRIVING OFF-ROAD

Care should be taken when attempting to climb steep hills or driving diagonally across a hill or slope. If natural obstacles force you to travel diagonally up or down a hill, choose a mild angle and keep as little side tilt as possible. Keep the vehicle moving and make turns slowly and cautiously.

If you must back down a hill, back straight down using REVERSE gear. Never back down in NEUTRAL, or diagonally across the hill.

When driving over sand, mud, and other soft terrain, shift to low gear and drive steadily. Apply the accelerator slowly to avoid spinning the wheels.

DO NOT REDUCE the tire pressures for this type of driving.

NOTE: After off-road usage, particularly in sand or mud, inspect the underside of the vehicle for accumulated dirt at the propeller shaft, axles, U-joints, brake rotors and calipers.

Use a hose to clean off any accumulation of dirt or mud.

Check the exhaust system and all exposed components for any sign of damage.

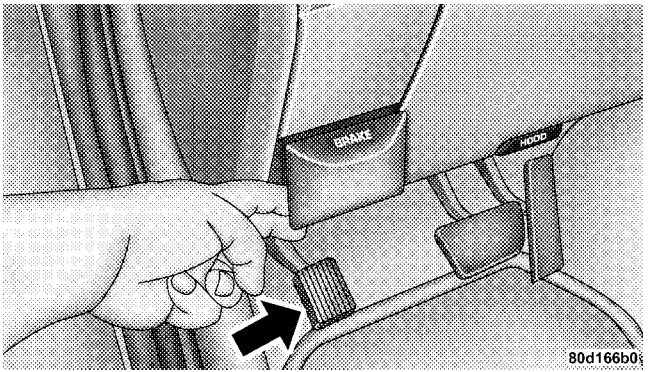
If you experience unusual vibration after driving in mud, slush or similar conditions, check the wheels for impacted material. Impacted foreign material can cause a wheel imbalance. Removing the foreign material from the wheels will correct the situation.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

PARKING BRAKE

The foot-operated parking brake is positioned below the lower left corner of the instrument panel. To release the parking brake, pull the parking brake release handle.

NOTE: The instrument cluster red brake warning light will come on and flash to indicate that the parking brake is applied. You must be sure that the parking brake is fully applied before leaving the vehicle.



Parking Brake Release

Be sure the parking brake is firmly set when parked and the shift lever is in the PARK position. When parking on a hill you should apply the parking brake before placing the shift lever in PARK, otherwise the load on the transmission locking mechanism may make it difficult to move the shift lever out of PARK.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

- **Always fully apply the parking brake when leaving your vehicle, or it may roll and cause damage or injury. Also be certain to leave an automatic transmission in PARK, a manual transmission in REVERSE or FIRST gear. Failure to do so may allow the vehicle to roll and cause damage or injury.**
- **Never leave children alone in a vehicle. Leaving unattended children in a vehicle is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Don't leave the key in the ignition. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.**
- **Be sure the parking brake is fully disengaged before driving, failure to do so can lead to brake problems due to excessive heating of the rear brakes.**

When parking on a hill, turn the front wheels toward the curb on a downhill grade and away from the curb on an uphill grade.

The parking brake should always be applied whenever the driver is not in the vehicle.

BRAKE SYSTEM

If power assist is lost for any reason (for example, repeated brake applications with the engine off), the brakes will still function. However, you will experience a substantial increase in braking effort to stop the vehicle.

If either the front or rear hydraulic system loses normal braking capability, the remaining system will still function with some loss of overall braking effectiveness. This will be evident by increased pedal travel during application, greater pedal force required to slow or stop, and activation of the BRAKE warning lamp and the ABS lamp (if equipped) during brake use.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3500 Dual Rear Wheel Models Only

The brake system power assist is provided by a hydro-boost unit which shares fluid with the power steering system. You may experience some clicking or hissing noises from the hydro-boost system during hard braking conditions.

NOTE: Under cold temperatures, pedal effort will be higher than normal until the power steering fluid reaches operating temperature.

Brake Noise

During normal operation of the brake system certain noises may be present from time to time. Occasional ″groan″ or ″squeal″ noises may occur during normal operation of the brake system which may not be indicative of a problem. These noises may be heard at any time the brakes are applied but may be more noticeable during the first few brake applications in the morning. Moisture, hot or cold temperature, dust, and or other debris may also contribute to the noise condition. Repeated or continuous noises during braking may be an indication that the brake linings are worn and in need of replacement.

Rear Wheel Anti-Lock (RWAL) Brake System — If Equipped

The Rear-Wheel Anti-Lock Brake System provides increased vehicle stability and brake performance under most braking conditions. The system automatically controls the operation of the rear brakes to prevent rear wheel lockup.

The system remains operational in the four-wheel drive mode. The level of performance is reduced when the front brakes are locked up. This may cause the rear brakes to lock up through the drivetrain, which may reduce the effectiveness of the Anti-Lock Brake System.

During severe braking conditions, particularly with changing road surfaces, such as ice to concrete, a slight drop or minor pulsation may be felt in the brake pedal.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Both Rear-Wheel and Four-Wheel Anti-Lock Brake Systems contain sophisticated electronic equipment. It may be susceptible to interference caused by improperly installed or high output radio transmitting equipment. This interference can cause possible loss of anti-lock braking capability. Installation of such equipment should be performed by qualified professionals.

Four-Wheel Anti-Lock Brake System — If Equipped

This Four-Wheel Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) is designed to aid the driver in maintaining vehicle control under adverse braking conditions. The system operates with a separate computer to modulate hydraulic pressure to prevent wheel lockup and help avoid skidding on slippery surfaces.

The system's pump motor runs during an ABS stop to provide regulated hydraulic pressure. The pump motor makes a low humming noise during operation. This is normal.

The ABS conducts a low-speed selftest at about 10 mph (16 km/h). If you have your foot lightly on the brake while this test is occurring, you may feel slight pedal movement. The movement can be more apparent on ice and snow. This is normal.

The ABS pump motor runs during the self-test at 10 mph (16 km/h) and during an ABS stop. The pump motor makes a low humming noise during operation. This is normal.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

When you are in a severe braking condition involving use of the ABS, you will experience some pedal drop as the vehicle comes to a complete stop. This is the result of the system reverting to the base brake system and is normal.

Engagement of the ABS may be accompanied by a pulsing sensation. You may also hear a clicking noise. These occurrences are normal, and indicate that the system is functioning.

ABS Warning Light

The ABS includes an amber warning light. When the light is illuminated, the ABS is not functioning. The system reverts to standard, non-anti-lock brakes.

WARNING!

Pumping of the anti-lock brakes will diminish their effectiveness and may lead to an accident. Pumping makes the stopping distance longer. Just press firmly on your brake pedal when you need to slow down or stop.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

- **The Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase braking or steering efficiency beyond that afforded by the condition of the vehicle brakes and tires or the traction afforded.**
- **The ABS cannot prevent accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, following another vehicle too closely, or hydroplaning. Only a safe, attentive, and skillful driver can prevent accidents.**
- **The capabilities of an ABS-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.**

POWER STEERING

The standard power steering system will give you good vehicle response and increased ease of maneuverability in tight spaces. The system will provide mechanical steering capability if power assist is lost.

If for some reason the power assist is interrupted, it will still be possible to steer your vehicle. Under these conditions you will observe a substantial increase in steering effort, especially at very low vehicle speeds and during parking maneuvers.

NOTE: Increased noise levels at the end of the steering wheel travel are considered normal and does not indicate that there is a problem with the power steering system.

Upon initial start-up in cold weather, the power steering pump may make noise for a short period of time. This is due to the cold, thick fluid in the steering system. This noise should be considered normal, and does not in any way damage the steering system.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Continued operation with reduced power steering assist could pose a safety risk to yourself and others. Service should be obtained as soon as possible.

CAUTION!

Prolonged operation of the steering system at the end of the steering wheel travel will increase the steering fluid temperature and should be avoided when possible. Damage to the power steering pump may occur.

ELECTRONIC BRAKE CONTROL SYSTEM (ABS/TCS/BAS/HSA/ERM/ESP/TSC) — IF EQUIPPED

Your vehicle is equipped with an advanced electronic brake control system that includes Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), Traction Control System (TCS), Brake Assist System (BAS), HSA (Hill Start Assist), Electronic Roll Mitigation (ERM), Electronic Stability Program (ESP) and Trailer Sway Control (TSC). All six systems work together to enhance vehicle stability and control in various driving conditions, and are commonly referred to as ESP.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

ABS (Anti-Lock Brake System)

This ABS system aids the driver in maintaining vehicle control under adverse braking conditions. The system controls hydraulic brake pressure to prevent wheel lockup and help avoid skidding on slippery surfaces during braking. For more information about ABS, refer to "Anti-Lock Brake System" under "Brake System" in Section 5 of this manual.

NOTE: ABS improves steering control of the vehicle during hard braking maneuvers.

WARNING!

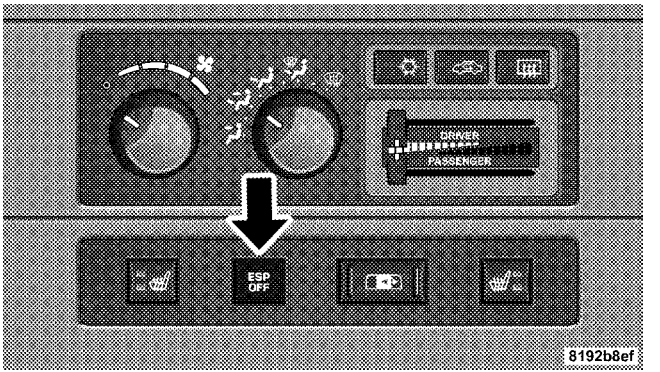
- **ABS cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase braking or steering efficiency beyond that afforded by the condition of the vehicle brakes and tires or the traction afforded.**
- **The ABS cannot prevent accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, following another vehicle too closely, or hydroplaning. Only a safe, attentive, and skillful driver can prevent accidents.**
- **The capabilities of an ABS-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Traction Control System (TCS)

The TCS system monitors the amount of wheel spin of each of the driven wheels. If wheel spin is detected, brake pressure is applied to the slipping wheel(s), and engine power is reduced to provide enhanced acceleration and stability. A feature of the TCS system functions similar to a limited-slip differential and controls the wheel spin across a driven axle. If one wheel on a driven axle is spinning faster than the other, the system will apply the brake of the spinning wheel. This will allow more engine torque to be applied to the wheel that is not spinning. This feature remains active even if TCS and ESP are in the "Partial Off" mode. Refer to "ESP (Electronic Stability Program)" in this Section of this manual. This brake pressure modulation transfers drive torque from slipping to non-slipping wheels to provide optimal forward traction.

BAS (Brake Assist System)



ESP OFF Button Location

The BAS is designed to optimize the vehicle's braking capability during emergency braking maneuvers. The BAS system detects an emergency braking situation by sensing the rate and amount of brake application and then applies optimum pressure to the brakes. The system

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

applies optimum pressure to the brakes in emergency braking conditions. This can help reduce braking distances. The BAS complements the ABS. Applying the brakes very quickly results in the best BAS assistance. To receive the benefit of BAS, you must apply continuous braking pressure during the stopping sequence. Do not reduce brake pedal pressure unless braking is no longer desired.

Once the brake pedal is released, the BAS is deactivated.

WARNING!

- **BAS cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase braking efficiency beyond that afforded by the condition of the vehicle brakes and tires or the traction afforded.**
- **The BAS cannot prevent accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, following another vehicle too closely, or hydroplaning. Only a safe, attentive, and skillful driver can prevent accidents.**
- **The capabilities of a BAS-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

HSA (Hill Start Assist)

The HSA system is designed to assist the driver in launching a vehicle on an incline. HSA will maintain the level of brake pressure the driver inputs for a short duration once the driver takes his foot off of the brake pedal. If the driver does not apply the throttle during this short duration, the system will release brake pressure and the vehicle will roll down the incline. The system will release brake pressure in proportion to the amount of throttle applied.

During operation, Hill Start Assist will activate the brake control system and a clicking noise will occur. If your foot is on the brake pedal during operation you may feel a slight pedal movement. The clicking and pedal movement is normal and both will stop when HSA becomes inactive.

WARNING!

If the clutch pedal (manual vehicles only) remains depressed during the application of the throttle, the HSA will disengage allowing the vehicle to roll down the incline. This could cause a collision with another vehicle or object. To avoid this, do not apply throttle while depressing the clutch pedal until you are ready to release the clutch. Always remember the driver is responsible for braking the vehicle.

HSA Activation Criteria

The following criteria must be met in order for HSA to activate:

- Vehicle must be stopped
- Vehicle must be on a 7% or greater incline

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Gear selection matches vehicle uphill direction (i.e., vehicle facing uphill is in forward gear; vehicle backing uphill is in REVERSE gear).

WARNING!

There may be situations on minor hills (i.e., less than 7%), with a loaded vehicle, or while pulling a trailer where the system will not activate and slight rolling may occur, which could cause a collision with another vehicle or object. Always remember the driver is responsible for braking the vehicle.

The system will only work if the intended direction of the vehicle and vehicle gear match. For example, if the intended direction is forward up a hill and the vehicle is in drive (automatic equipped vehicle), and the activation criteria are met, HSA will activate.

HSA on Automatic Vehicles

The system will work in REVERSE and all forward gears on vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission. The system will not activate if the vehicle is placed in neutral.

HSA on Manual Vehicles

The system will work in REVERSE, forward gears, and NEUTRAL on manual transmission equipped vehicles. The system does not recognize NEUTRAL on manual vehicles, thus it will hold the vehicle on an incline for a short period while in NEUTRAL, regardless of clutch position. To prevent this, do not attempt to roll down a hill simply by putting the transmission in NEUTRAL and letting gravity act on the vehicle, as the HSA will prevent the vehicle from rolling. Instead, use the appropriate gear for moving in the desired direction.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Towing and Hauling with HSA (Vehicles Equipped with Automatic Transmissions Only)

The HSA system does not know if your vehicle is loaded or towing a trailer, unless the TOW/HAUL button, located on the transmission gear shift lever, is selected. When activated, the TOW/HAUL light will illuminate in the instrument cluster. For more information on TOW/HAUL mode, refer to "When To USE TOW/HAUL and O/D OFF Modes" under "Automatic Transmission" in Section 5. In order to accommodate the extra weight entailed under towing and hauling conditions and to increase driver comfort while launching on a hill, the system recognizes when the TOW/HAUL button is activated and compensates by releasing brake pressure at a slower rate while throttle is applied in order to prevent the vehicle from rolling down the hill.

WARNING!

If you use a trailer brake controller with your trailer, your trailer brakes may be activated and deactivated with the brake switch. If so, when the brake pedal is released, there may not be enough brake pressure to hold the vehicle and trailer on a hill and this could cause a collision with another vehicle or object behind you. In order to avoid rolling down the incline while resuming acceleration, manually activate the trailer brake or apply more vehicle brake pressure prior to releasing the brake pedal. Always remember the driver is responsible for braking the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

HSA is not a parking brake. If you stop the vehicle on a hill without putting the transmission in PARK or using the parking brake, it will roll down the incline and could cause a collision with another vehicle or object. Always remember to use the parking brake while parking on a hill, and that the driver is responsible for braking the vehicle.

HSA Off

If you wish to turn off the HSA system, follow this procedure:

1. Start with the engine off and vehicle in PARK (automatic transmission) or NEUTRAL with clutch out (manual transmission) with wheels straight. Apply parking brake on manual transmission vehicle.

2. Start the engine.

3. With the engine running, the brake applied, and the clutch out, rotate the steering wheel 180° counterclockwise from center.

4. Press ESP button four times within twenty seconds. The "ESP/TCS Indicator Light" should appear and disappear four times.

5. Rotate the steering wheel 360° clockwise (180° clockwise from center).

6. Cycle ignition switch OFF then ON.

7. If the sequence was completed properly, the "ESP/TCS Indicator Light" will blink several times to confirm HSA is off.

Steps 1-7 must be completed within 90 seconds to turn off HSA. Repeat steps 1-7 to re-enable HSA functionality.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Electronic Roll Mitigation (ERM)

The ERM system anticipates the potential for wheel lift by monitoring the driver's steering wheel input and the speed of the vehicle. When ERM determines that the rate of change of the steering wheel angle and vehicle speed are sufficient to potentially cause wheel lift, it applies the appropriate brake and may reduce engine power to lessen the chance that wheel lift will occur. ERM will only intervene during very severe or evasive driving maneuvers.

ERM can only reduce the chance of wheel lift occurring during severe or evasive driving maneuvers. It cannot prevent wheel lift due to other factors such as road conditions, leaving the roadway or striking objects or other vehicles.

WARNING!

Many factors, such as vehicle loading, road conditions and driving conditions, influence the chance that wheel lift or rollover may occur.

- **ERM cannot prevent all wheel lift or rollovers, especially those that involve leaving the roadway or striking objects or other vehicles. Only a safe, attentive, and skillful driver can prevent accidents.**
- **The capabilities of an ERM-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

ESP (Electronic Stability Program)

The ESP system enhances directional control and stability of the vehicle under various driving conditions. ESP corrects for oversteering or understeering of the vehicle by applying the brake of the appropriate wheel to assist in counteracting the oversteer or understeer condition. Engine power may also be reduced to help the vehicle maintain the desired path.

ESP uses sensors in the vehicle to determine the vehicle path intended by the driver and compares it to the actual path of the vehicle. When the actual path does not match the intended path, ESP applies the brake of the appropriate wheel to assist in counteracting the oversteer or understeer condition.

- Oversteer - when the vehicle is turning more than appropriate for the steering wheel position.
- Understeer - when the vehicle is turning less than appropriate for the steering wheel position.

ESP/TCS Indicator Light

The "ESP/TCS Indicator Light" located in the instrument cluster, starts to flash as soon as the tires lose traction and the ESP system becomes active. The "ESP/TCS Indicator Light" also flashes when TCS is active. If the "ESP/TCS Indicator Light" begins to flash during acceleration, ease up on the accelerator and apply as little throttle as possible. Be sure to adapt your speed and driving to the prevailing road conditions.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

- **ESP (Electronic Stability Program) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase the traction afforded by prevailing road conditions.**
- **ESP cannot prevent accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, driving on slippery surfaces, or hydroplaning. Only a safe, attentive, and skillful driver can prevent accidents.**
- **The capabilities of an ESP-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.**

The ESP system has multiple operating modes depending on vehicle type: Two-Wheel Drive (2WD) or Four-Wheel Drive (4WD). 4WD vehicles may be equipped with either a four-mode position (2WD/Neutral/4HI/4LO) transfer case or a five-mode position (2WD/AUTO/Neutral/4H/4LO) transfer case. If you have a 4WD vehicle, and want to determine which transfer case is on your vehicle and how to operate it, refer to the "Four Wheel Drive Operating" in Section 5.

All 2WD vehicles and 4WD vehicles in 2WD, AUTO or 4HI Modes can choose the following ESP operating modes:

ESP On

This is the normal operating mode for ESP in 2WD/AUTO/4HI Modes and in 2WD vehicles. Whenever the vehicle is started, or the transfer case (if equipped) is shifted from 4LO or Neutral, back to 4HI or AUTO, the ESP system will be in this mode. This mode should be used for almost all driving situations. ESP should only be turned to "Partial Off" or "ESP Off" for specific reasons as noted below.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

ESP Partial Off

This mode is entered by momentarily depressing the ″ESP OFF” switch. When in ″Partial Off″ mode, the TCS portion of ESP, except for the “limited slip” feature described in the TCS section, has been disabled and the ″ESP/TCS Indicator Light″ will be illuminated. All other stability features of ESP function normally. This mode is intended to be used if the vehicle is in deep snow, sand, or gravel conditions and more wheel spin than ESP would normally allow is required to gain traction. To turn ESP on again, momentarily depress the ″ESP OFF” switch. This will restore the normal “ESP On” mode of operation.

NOTE: To improve the vehicle’s traction when driving with snow chains, or starting off in deep snow, sand or gravel, it may be desirable to switch to the “Partial Off” mode by pressing the ESP switch. Once the situation requiring ESP to be switched to the “Partial Off” mode is overcome, turn ESP back on by momentarily depressing the “ESP Control Switch”. This may be done while the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING!

In the Partial Off mode, the engine torque reduction and stability features are desensitized. Therefore, the enhanced vehicle stability offered by ESP is unavailable.

All 4WD vehicles in Auto and 4HI Modes can also choose the following ESP operating mode. This is the only ESP operating mode in 4LO:

Full Off

This mode is intended for off-road use when ESP stability features could inhibit vehicle maneuverability due to trail conditions. This mode is entered by depressing and

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

holding the “ESP Control Switch” for five seconds when the vehicle is stopped and the engine is running. After five seconds, the “ESP/TCS Indicator Light” will illuminate and the “ESP Off” message will appear in the odometer. Press and release the trip odometer button located on the instrument cluster to clear this message.

NOTE: The “ESP OFF” message will display and the audible chime will sound when the gear selector is placed into the PARK position from any other position, and then moved out of the PARK position. This will occur even if the message was previously cleared.

In this mode, ESP and TCS, except for the “Limited Slip” feature described in the TCS section, are turned off until the vehicle reaches a speed of 40 mph (64 km/h). At 40 mph (64 km/h) the system returns to “Partial Off” mode, described above. When the vehicle speed drops below 35 mph (56 km/h) the ESP system shuts off. ESP is off at low vehicle speeds so that it will not interfere with off-road driving but ESP function returns to provide the stability feature at speeds above 40 mph (64 km/h). The “ESP/TCS Indicator Light” will always be illuminated when ESP is off. To turn ESP on again, momentarily depress the “ESP Control Switch”. This will restore the normal “ESP On’ mode of operation.

“ESP Off” is the only operating mode for ESP in 4LO. Whenever the vehicle is started in 4LO or the transfer case (if equipped) is shifted from 4HI or Neutral, to 4LO, the ESP system will be in this mode.

WARNING!

With the ESP switched off, the enhanced vehicle stability offered by ESP is unavailable. In an emergency evasive maneuver, the ESP system will not engage to assist in maintaining stability. “ESP Off” mode is intended for off-highway or off-road use, only.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

ESP/BAS Warning Lamp and ESP/TCS Indicator Light

The malfunction indicator for the ESP is combined with the BAS indicator. The yellow "ESP/BAS Warning Lamp" and the yellow "ESP/TCS Indicator Light" in the instrument cluster both come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position. They should both go out with the engine running. If the "ESP/BAS Warning Lamp" comes on continuously with the engine running, a malfunction has been detected in either the ESP or BAS system, or both. If this light remains on after several ignition cycles, and the vehicle has been driven several miles/kilometers at speeds greater than 30 mph (48 km/h), see your authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the problem diagnosed and corrected.

NOTE:

- The "ESP Indicator Light" and the "ESP/BAS Warning Lamp" come on momentarily each time the ignition switch is turned ON.
- Each time the ignition is turned ON, the ESP System will be ON even if it was turned off previously.
- The ESP Control System will make buzzing or clicking sounds when it is active. This is normal. The sounds will stop when ESP becomes inactive following the maneuver that caused the ESP activation.

TSC (Trailer Sway Control)

The TSC system uses sensors in the vehicle to recognize an excessively swaying trailer and will take the appropriate actions to attempt to stop the sway. The system may reduce engine power and apply the brake of the appropriate wheel(s) to counteract the sway of the trailer. TSC will become active automatically once an excessively swaying trailer is recognized. No driver action is required. Note that TSC cannot stop all trailers from swaying. Always use caution when towing a trailer and follow the trailer tongue weight recommendations. Refer to "Trailer Towing" in Section 5 of this manual for more

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

information on towing a trailer with your vehicle. When TSC is functioning, the "ESP/TCS Indicator Light" will flash, the engine power may be reduced and you may feel the brakes being applied to individual wheels to attempt to stop the trailer from swaying. TSC is disabled when the ESP system is in the Partial Off or Full Off modes.

TSC is only active in the default "ESP On" mode. TSC can be disabled by pressing the ESP Off button and entering "ESP Partial Off" mode. It is not active in the "ESP Partial Off" or "ESP Off" modes. Please refer to the ESP portion of this section for an explanation of the different ESP operating modes.

WARNING!

If TSC activates while driving, slow the vehicle down, stop at the nearest safe location, and adjust the trailer load to eliminate trailer sway.

MULTI-DISPLACEMENT SYSTEM (MDS) — 5.7L ENGINE ONLY

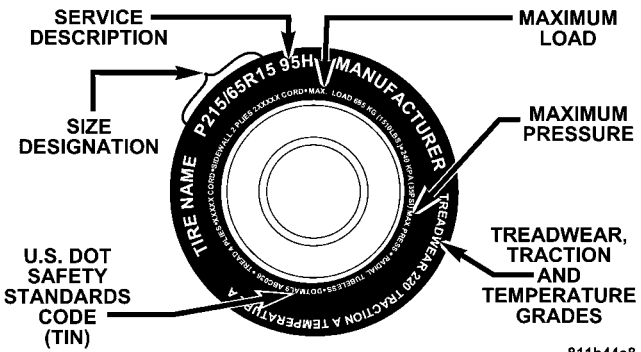
This feature offers improved fuel economy by shutting off four of the engine's eight cylinders during light load and cruise conditions. The system is automatic with no driver inputs or additional driving skills required.

NOTE: The MDS system may take some time to return to full functionality after a battery disconnect.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

TIRE SAFETY INFORMATION

TIRE MARKINGS



NOTE:

- P (Passenger) - Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. P-Metric tires have the letter “P” molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: P215/65R15 95H.
- European-Metric tire sizing is based on European design standards. Tires designed to this standard have the tire size molded into the sidewall beginning with the section width. The letter ″P″ is absent from this tire size designation. Example: 215/65R15 96H.
- LT (Light Truck) - Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. The size designation for LT-Metric tires is the same as for P-Metric tires except for the letters “LT” that are molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: LT235/85R16.
- Temporary spare tires are high-pressure compact spares designed for temporary emergency use only. Tires designed to this standard have the letter “T” molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.
- High flotation tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards, and it begins with the tire diameter molded into the sidewall. Example: 31x10.5 R15 LT.

5

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Sizing Chart

TIRE SIZING TERMS
Size Designation:
P = Passenger Car tire size based on U.S. design standards **″....blank....″** = Passenger Car tire based on European design standards **LT** = Light Truck tire based on U.S. design standards **T** = Temporary spare tire **31** = Overall diameter in inches (in)
215 = Section width in millimeters (mm)
65 = Aspect ratio in percent (%) — Ratio of section height to section width of tire **10.5** = Section width in inches (in)
R = Construction code — ″R″ means radial construction —″D″ means diagonal or bias construction
15 = Rim diameter in inches (in)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

TIRE SIZING TERMS
Service Description:
95 = Load Index — A numerical code associated with the maximum load a tire can carry
H = Speed Symbol — A symbol indicating the range of speeds at which a tire can carry a load corresponding to its load index under certain operating conditions — The maximum speed corresponding to the speed symbol should only be achieved under specified operating conditions (i.e., tire pressure, vehicle loading, road conditions, and posted speed limits)
Load Identification:
"....blank...." = Absence of any text on the sidewall of the tire indicates a Standard Load (SL) Tire
Extra Load (XL) = Extra load (or reinforced) tire
Light Load = Light load tire
C, D, E = Load range associated with the maximum load a tire can carry at a specified pressure
Maximum Load — Maximum load indicates the maximum load this tire is designed to carry
Maximum Pressure — Maximum pressure indicates the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

TIRE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (TIN)

The TIN may be found on one or both sides of the tire, however, the date code may only be on one side. Tires with white sidewalls will have the full TIN, including the date code, located on the white sidewall side of the tire. Look for the TIN on the outboard side of black sidewall tires as mounted on the vehicle. If the TIN is not found on the outboard side, then you will find it on the inboard side of the tire.

TIRE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER
EXAMPLE: DOT MA L9 ABCD 0301
DOT = Department of Transportation — This symbol certifies that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation tire safety standards, and is approved for highway use
MA = Code representing the tire manufacturing location (two digits)
L9 = Code representing the tire size (two digits)
ABCD = Code used by the tire manufacturer (one to four digits)
03 = Number representing the week in which the tire was manufactured (two digits) —03 means the 3rd week.
01 = Number representing the year in which the tire was manufactured (two digits) —01 means the year 2001

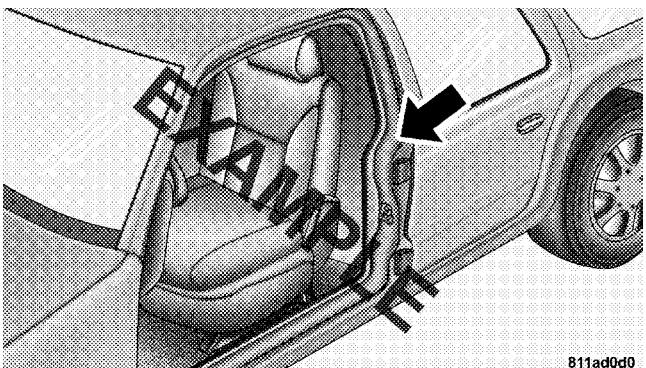
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

TIRE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER
EXAMPLE: DOT MA L9 ABCD 0301
— Prior to July 2000, tire manufacturers were only required to have one number to represent the year in which the tire was manufactured. Example: 031 could represent the 3rd week of 1981 or 1991

TIRE LOADING AND TIRE PRESSURE

Tire Placard Location

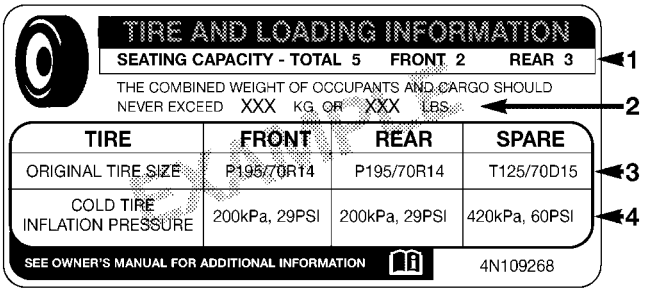
NOTE: The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed on either the face of the driver's door or the driver's side B-Pillar.



Tire Placard Location

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire and Loading Information Placard



811b5a9a

Tire And Loading Information Placard

This placard tells you important information about the:

1) number of people that can be carried in the vehicle

2) total weight your vehicle can carry

3) tire size designed for your vehicle

4) cold tire inflation pressures for the front, rear, and spare tires.

Loading

The vehicle maximum load on the tire must not exceed the load carrying capacity of the tire on your vehicle. You will not exceed the tire's load carrying capacity if you adhere to the loading conditions, tire size, and cold tire inflation pressures specified on the Tire and Loading Information placard and in the "Vehicle Loading" section of this manual.

NOTE: Under a maximum loaded vehicle condition, gross axle weight ratings (GAWRs) for the front and rear axles must not be exceeded. For further information on GAWRs, vehicle loading, and trailer towing, refer to "Vehicle Loading" in this section.

To determine the maximum loading conditions of your vehicle, locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on the Tire and Loading Information placard. The

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

combined weight of occupants, cargo/luggage and trailer tongue weight (if applicable) should never exceed the weight referenced here.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs" on your vehicle's placard.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs (635 kg) and there will be five 150 lb (68 kg) passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (295 kg) (since 5 x 150 = 750, and 1400 – 750 = 650 lbs [295 kg]).

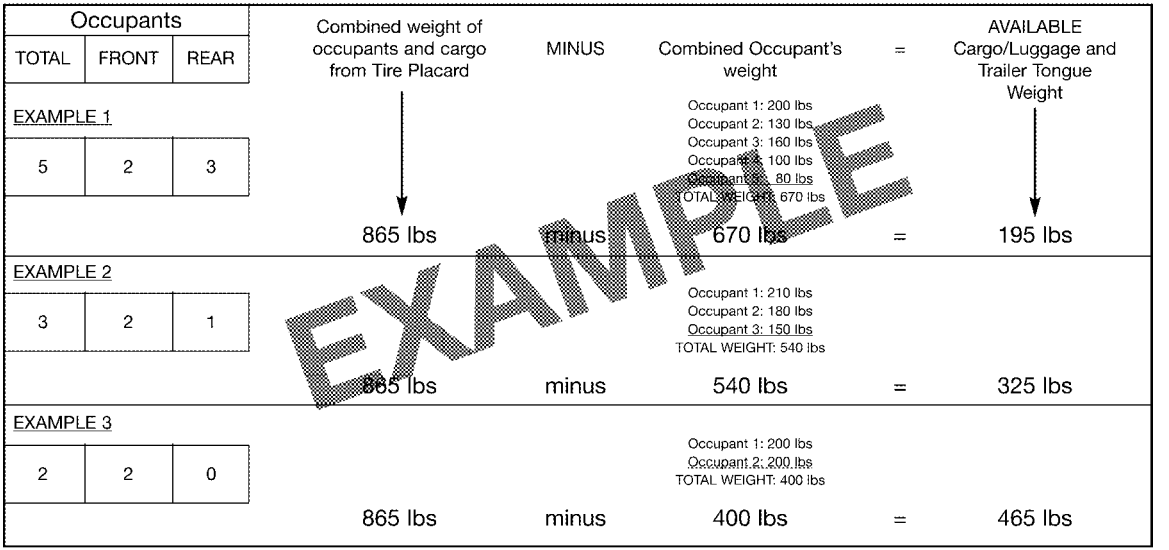
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

NOTE: The following table shows examples on how to calculate total load, cargo/luggage, and towing capacities of your vehicle with varying seating configurations and number and size of occupants. This table is for illustration purposes only and may not be accurate for the seating and load carry capacity of your vehicle.

NOTE: For the following example, the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 865 lbs (392 kg).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



811a4d11

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Overloading of your tires is dangerous. Overloading can cause tire failure, affect vehicle handling, and increase your stopping distance. Use tires of the recommended load capacity for your vehicle. Never overload them.

TIRES — GENERAL INFORMATION

Tire Pressure

Proper tire inflation pressure is essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Three primary areas are affected by improper tire pressure:

1. Safety—

WARNING!

•Improperly inflated tires are dangerous and can cause accidents.

•Under-inflation increases tire flexing and can result in tire failure.

WARNING!

•Over-inflation reduces a tire's ability to cushion shock. Objects on the road and chuckholes can cause damage that result in tire failure.

•Over-inflated or under-inflated tires can affect vehicle handling and can fail suddenly, resulting in loss of vehicle control.

5

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

- **Unequal tire pressures can cause steering problems. You could lose control of your vehicle.**
- **Unequal tire pressures from one side of the vehicle to the other can cause the vehicle to drift to the right or left.**
- **Always drive with each tire inflated to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure.**

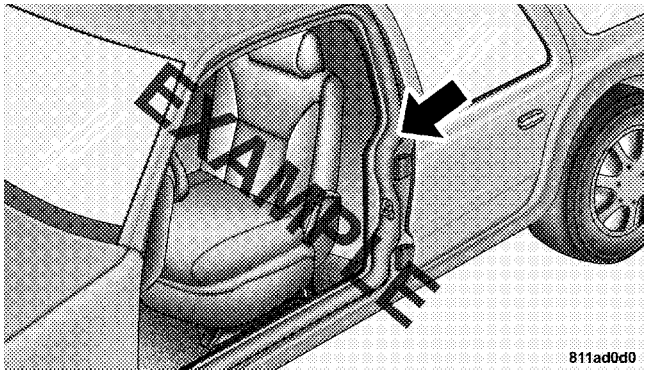
2. Economy—
Improper inflation pressures can cause uneven wear patterns to develop across the tire tread. These abnormal wear patterns will reduce tread life resulting in a need for earlier tire replacement. Under-inflation also increases tire rolling resistance and results in higher fuel consumption.

3. Ride Comfort and Vehicle Stability—
Proper tire inflation contributes to a comfortable ride. Over-inflation produces a jarring and uncomfortable ride.

Tire Inflation Pressures
The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed either on the face of the driver's door or on the driver's side "B" pillar.

Some vehicles may have Supplemental Tire Pressure Information for vehicle loads that are less than the maximum loaded vehicle condition. These pressure conditions will be found in the "Supplemental Tire Pressure Information" section of this manual.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



Tire Placard Location

The pressure should be checked and adjusted as well as inspecting for signs of tire wear or visible damage at least once a month. Use a good quality pocket-type gauge to check tire pressure. DO NOT make a visual judgement when determining proper inflation. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they are under-inflated.

CAUTION!

After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure, always reinstall the valve stem cap (if equipped). This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the valve stem.

Inflation pressures specified on the placard are always "cold tire inflation pressure." Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mi (1.6 km) after a three hour period. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum inflation pressure molded into the tire sidewall.

Check tire pressures more often if subject to a wide range of outdoor temperatures, as tire pressures vary with temperature changes.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire pressures change by approximately 1 psi (7 kPa) per 12°F (7°C) of air temperature change. Keep this in mind when checking tire pressure inside a garage, especially in the Winter.

Example: If garage temperature = 68°F (20°C) and the outside temperature = 32°F (0°C) then the cold tire inflation pressure should be increased by 3 psi (21 kPa), which equals 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12°F (7°C) for this outside temperature condition.

Tire pressure may increase from 2 to 6 psi (13 to 40 kPa) during operation. DO NOT reduce this normal pressure build up or your tire pressure will be too low.

Tire Pressures for High Speed Operation

The manufacturer advocates driving at safe speeds within posted speed limits. Where speed limits or conditions are such that the vehicle can be driven at high speeds, maintaining correct tire inflation pressure is very important. Increased tire pressure and reduced vehicle loading may be required for high-speed vehicle operation. Refer to original equipment or an authorized tire dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.

WARNING!

High speed driving with your vehicle under maximum load is dangerous. The added strain on your tires could cause them to fail. You could have a serious accident. Don't drive a vehicle loaded to the maximum capacity at continuous speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Radial Ply Tires

WARNING!

Combining radial ply tires with other types of tires on your vehicle will cause your vehicle to handle poorly. The instability could cause an accident. Always use radial ply tires in sets of four (or six, in case of trucks with dual rear wheels). Never combine them with other types of tires.

Cuts and punctures in radial tires are repairable only in the tread area because of sidewall flexing. Consult your authorized tire dealer for radial tire repairs.

Compact Spare Tire — If Equipped

The compact spare is for temporary emergency use with radial tires. It is engineered to be used on your style vehicle only. Since this tire has limited tread life, the original tire should be repaired (or replaced) and reinstalled at the first opportunity.

WARNING!

- **Temporary use spare tires are for emergency use only. With these tires, DO NOT drive more than 50 mph (80 km/h).**
- **Temporary-use spare tires have limited tread life. When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the temporary use spare tire needs to be replaced.**
- **Be sure to follow the warnings, which apply to your spare. Failure to do so could result in spare tire failure and loss of vehicle control.**

5

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

DO NOT install a wheel cover or attempt to mount a conventional tire on the compact spare wheel, since the wheel is designed specifically for the compact spare.

DO NOT install more than one compact spare tire / wheel on the vehicle at any given time.

CAUTION!

Because of the reduced ground clearance, DO NOT take your vehicle through an automatic car wash with the compact spare installed. Damage to the vehicle may result.

Limited-Use Spare — If Equipped

The limited-use spare tire is for temporary emergency use on your vehicle. This tire is identified by a limited-use spare tire warning label located on the limited-use spare tire and wheel assembly. This tire may look like the original equipped tire on the front or rear axle of your vehicle, but it is not. Installation of this limited-use spare tire affects vehicle handling. Since it is not the same tire, replace (or repair) the original tire and reinstall on the vehicle at the first opportunity.

WARNING!

The limited-use spare tires are for emergency use only. Installation of this limited-use spare tire affects vehicle handling. With this tire, DO NOT drive more than 50 mph (80 km/h). Keep inflated to the cold tire inflation pressure listed on either your tire placard or limited-use spare tire and wheel assembly. Replace (or repair) the original tire at the first opportunity and reinstall it on your vehicle. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Spinning

When stuck in mud, sand, snow, or ice conditions, DO NOT spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) or for longer than 30 seconds continuously without stopping when you are stuck.

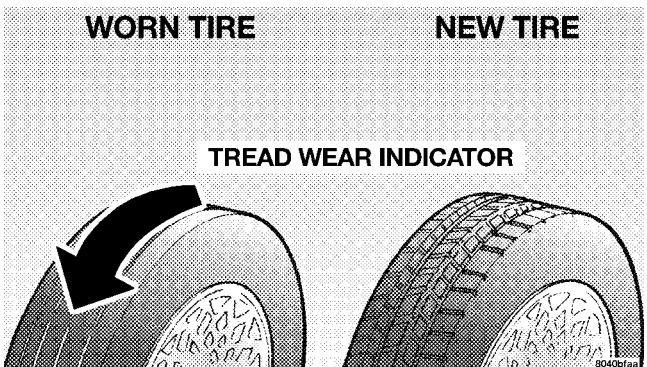
For additional information, refer to "Freeing A Stuck Vehicle" in Section 6.

WARNING!

Fast spinning tires can be dangerous. Forces generated by excessive wheel speeds may cause tire damage or failure. A tire could explode and injure someone. DO NOT spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) or for more than 30 seconds continuously when you are stuck, and don't let anyone near a spinning wheel, no matter what the speed.

Tread Wear Indicators

Tread wear indicators are in the original equipment tires to help you in determining when your tires should be replaced.



5

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

These indicators are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves. They will appear as bands when the tread depth becomes 1/16 in (2 mm). When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the tire should be replaced.

Many states have laws requiring tire replacement at this point.

Life of Tire

The service life of a tire is dependent upon varying factors including, but not limited to:

- Driving style
- Tire pressure
- Distance driven

WARNING!

Tires and the spare tire should be replaced after six years, regardless of the remaining tread. Failure to follow this warning can result in sudden tire failure. You could lose control and have an accident resulting in serious injury or death.

Keep dismounted tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Protect tires from contact with oil, grease, and gasoline.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Replacement Tires

The tires on your new vehicle provide a balance of many characteristics. They should be inspected regularly for wear and correct cold tire inflation pressure. The manufacturer strongly recommends that you use tires equivalent to the originals in size, quality and performance when replacement is needed. (Refer to the paragraph on "Tread Wear Indicators"). Refer to the "Tire and Loading Information" placard for the size designation of your tire. The service description and load identification will be found on the original equipment tire. Failure to use equivalent replacement tires may adversely affect the safety, handling, and ride of your vehicle. We recommend that you contact your original equipment or an authorized tire dealer with any questions you may have on tire specifications or capability.

WARNING!

DO NOT use a tire, wheel size or rating other than that specified for your vehicle. Some combinations of unapproved tires and wheels may change suspension dimensions and performance characteristics, resulting in changes to steering, handling, and braking of your vehicle. This can cause unpredictable handling and stress to steering and suspension components. You could lose control and have an accident resulting in serious injury or death. Use only the tire and wheel sizes with load ratings approved for your vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

- **NEVER use a tire with a smaller load index or capacity, other than what was originally equipped on your vehicle. Using a tire with a smaller load index could result in tire overloading and failure. You could lose control and have an accident.**
- **Failure to equip your vehicle with tires having adequate speed capability can result in sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.**

CAUTION!

Replacing original tires with tires of a different size may result in false speedometer and odometer readings.

Alignment And Balance

Poor suspension alignment may result in:

- Fast tire wear.
- Uneven tire wear, such as feathering and one-sided wear.
- Vehicle pull to right or left.

Tires may also cause the vehicle to pull to the left or right. Alignment will not correct this condition. See your authorized dealer for proper diagnosis.

Improper alignment will not cause vehicle vibration. Vibration may be a result of tire and wheel out-of-balance. Proper balancing will reduce vibration and avoid tire cupping and spotty wear.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

SUPPLEMENTAL TIRE PRESSURE INFORMATION — IF EQUIPPED

A light load vehicle condition is defined as two passengers [150 lbs (68 kg) each] plus 200 lbs (91 kg) of cargo. Cold tire inflation pressures for a lightly loaded vehicle will be found on the face of the driver's door.

TIRE CHAINS

Use "Class S" chains on 1500 model Trucks, or other traction aids that meet SAE Type "S" specifications.

Use "Class U" chains on 2500/3500 model Trucks, or other traction aids that meet SAE Type "U" specifications.

NOTE: Chains must be the proper size for the vehicle, as recommended by the chain manufacturer.

CAUTION!

To avoid damage to your vehicle, tires or chains, observe the following precautions:

- **Because of limited chain clearance between tires and other suspension components, it is important that only chains in good condition are used. Broken chains can cause serious vehicle damage. Stop the vehicle immediately if noise occurs that could suggest chain breakage. Remove the damaged parts of the chain before further use.**
- **Install chains as tightly as possible and then retighten after driving about 0.5 mile (0.8 km).**
- **Do not exceed 45 mph (72 km/h).**
- **Drive cautiously and avoid severe turns and large bumps, especially with a loaded vehicle.**
- **Do not install tire chains on front wheels of 4x2 vehicles.**
- **Do not drive for a prolonged period on dry pavement.**
- **Observe the tire chain manufacturer's instructions on method of installation, operating speed, and conditions for usage. Always use the lower suggested operating speed of the chain manufacturer if different than the speed recommended by the manufacturer.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

These cautions apply to all chain traction devices, including link and cable (radial) chains.

Tire chain use is permitted only on the rear tires of 4X2 model trucks.

NOTE: The use of class "S" chains is permitted on 1500 model trucks with P245/70R17 tires only.

NOTE: The use of class "U" chains is permitted on the front and rear of 4X4, 2500 model trucks with LT245/70R17E tires.

NOTE: The use of class "U" chains is permitted on the front and rear of 4X4, 3500 model trucks with Dual Rear Wheels and LT235/80R17E tires.

NOTE: On 4X2 2500/3500 model trucks, class "U" snow chains are permitted on the rear wheels only of vehicles equipped with LT245/70R17, LT265/70R17, and LT235/80R17 size tires.

NOTE: On 4x4 2500/3500 SRW (Single Rear Wheel) model trucks, class "U" snow chains are permitted on the rear wheels only of vehicles equipped with LT265/70R17E.

CAUTION!

Do not use tire chains on 4x4 model trucks equipped with P265/70R17, LT275/70R17, P275/60R20, tires. There may not be adequate clearance for the chains and you are risking structural or body damage to your vehicle. Do not use tire chains on the 4X2 front wheels of 2500/3500 SRW (Single Rear Wheels) equipped with LT245/70R17, LT265/70R17 LT235/80R17 tires, or 4X4 front wheels of Ram Trucks equipped with LT265/70R17E. There may not be adequate clearance for the chains and you are risking structural or body damage to your vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

SNOW TIRES

Snow tires should be of the same size and type construction as the front tires. Consult the manufacturer of the snow tire to determine any maximum vehicle speed requirement associated with the tire. These tires should always be operated at the vehicle maximum capacity inflation pressures under any load condition.

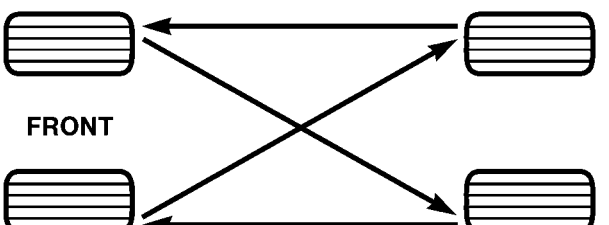
While studded tires improve performance on ice, skid and traction capability on wet or dry surfaces may be poorer than that of non-studded tires. Some states prohibit studded tires; therefore, local laws should be checked before using these tire types.

TIRE ROTATION RECOMMENDATIONS

Tires on the front and rear axles of vehicles operate at different loads and perform different steering, driving, and braking functions. For these reasons, they wear at unequal rates and develop irregular wear patterns. These effects can be reduced by timely rotation of tires. The benefits of rotation are especially worthwhile with aggressive tread designs such as those on ON/OFF Road type tires. Rotation will increase tread life, help to maintain mud, snow, and wet traction levels, and contribute to a smooth, quiet ride.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Follow the recommended tire rotation frequency for your type of driving found in the “Maintenance Schedules” Section of this manual. More frequent rotation is permissible if desired. The reasons for any rapid or unusual wear should be corrected prior to rotation being performed.

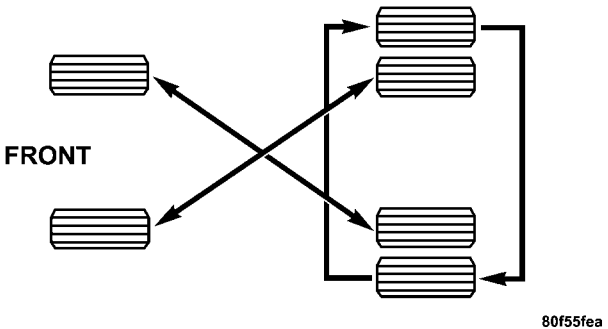


8031e864

NOTE: On Canadian vehicles only, if your vehicle is equipped with All-Season type tires on the front and ON / OFF Road type tires mounted on the rear, do not use a front-to-back rotation pattern. Instead, rotate your tires side-to-side at the recommended intervals.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Dual Rear Wheels



The tires used on dual wheel assemblies should be matched for wear to prevent overloading one tire in a set. To check if tires are even, lay a straight edge across all four tires. The straight edge should touch all the tires.

CAUTION!

3500 Dual Rear Tires have only one approved direction of rotation. This is to accommodate the asymmetrical design (tread pattern) of the ON/OFF road tire and the use of Outline White Letter (OWL) tires.

- **When replacing a flat, the spare tire may have to be remounted on the rim, or installed at a different location, to maintain the correct placement of the tire on the wheel relative to the tire/wheel position on the truck. For example, if the spare is used to replace an outer rear tire it will have to be remounted on the rim so that the wheel is dished inward. That way the tread design of asymmetrical tires and the white writing of the OWL tires will maintain proper position.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR SYSTEM (TPMS) — IF EQUIPPED

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) will warn the driver of a low tire pressure based on the vehicle recommended cold tire inflation placard pressure. The placard pressure is defined on the Tire and Loading Information label. The Tire and Loading Information label is located on the drivers side B-pillar. Vehicles equipped to be operated in either the "max load inflation pressure" condition described on the Tire and Loading Information label or the alternative "light load inflation pressure" condition described on the Supplemental Tire Pressure Information label, may also be equipped with a reset switch to choose the appropriate TPMS low pressure warning threshold levels based upon the vehicle load condition. The Supplemental Tire Pressure Information label is located on the rear face of the driver door. Operation of the "Light Load" reset switch is described later in this manual section.

The tire pressure will vary with temperature by approximately 1 psi (6.9 kPa) for every 12°F (6.5°C). This means that when the outside temperature decreases, the tire pressure will decrease. Tire pressure should always be set based on cold inflation tire pressure. This is defined as the tire pressure after a vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 hours, or driven less than 1 mile after a 3 hour period. For information on how to properly inflate the vehicle's tires, refer to "Tire Pressure" under "Tires – General Information" in this section. The tire pressure will also increase as the vehicle is driven - this is normal and there should be no adjustment for this increased pressure.

The TPM System will warn the driver of a low tire pressure if the tire pressure falls below the low pressure warning threshold for any reason, including low temperature effects, or natural pressure loss through the tire.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The TPM System will continue to warn the driver of low tire pressure as long as the condition exists, and will not turn off until the tire pressure is at or above recommended cold placard pressure. Once the low tire pressure warning has been illuminated, the tire pressure must be increased to the recommended cold placard pressure in order for the TPMS warning lamp to be turned off. The system will automatically update and the TPMS warning lamp will extinguish once the updated tire pressures have been received. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 10 minutes above 15 mph (25 km/h) to receive this information.

As an example, assume your vehicle has a recommended cold tire inflation placard pressure (parked for more than 3 hours) of 35 psi (241 kPa). If the ambient temperature is 68°F (20°C) and the measured tire pressure is 30 psi (207 kPa), a temperature drop to 20°F (-7°C) will decrease the tire pressure to approximately 26 psi (179 kPa). This tire pressure is sufficiently low enough to turn ON the Tire Pressure Monitoring lamp. Driving the vehicle may cause the tire pressure to rise to approximately 30 psi (207 kPa), but the Tire Pressure Monitoring lamp will still be ON. In this situation, the Tire Pressure Monitoring lamp will turn OFF only after the tires have been inflated to the vehicle's recommended cold tire placard pressure value.

CAUTION!

The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. TPMS pressures have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system operation or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size, type, and/or style. After-market wheels can cause sensor damage. Do not use aftermarket tire sealants or balance beads if your vehicle is equipped with a TPMS, as damage to the sensors may result.

5

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure always reinstall the valve stem cap. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor.

NOTE:

- The TPMS is not intended to replace normal tire care and maintenance, nor to provide warning of a tire failure or condition.
- The TPMS should not be used as a tire pressure gauge while adjusting your tire pressure.
- Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.
- The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light."
- Seasonal temperature changes will affect tire pressure, and the TPM system will monitor the actual tire pressure in the tire.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

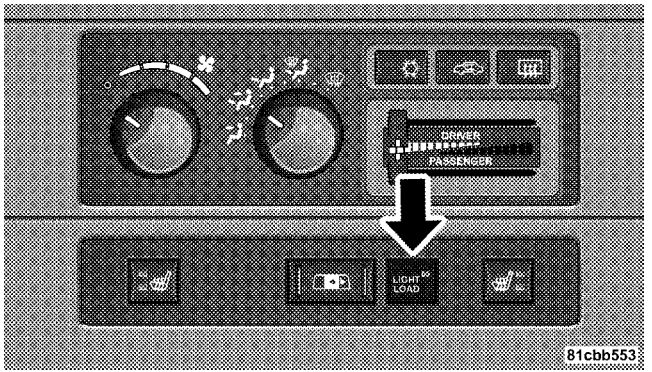
Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) "Light Load" Reset Switch Description – If Equipped

WARNING!

Never operate your vehicle with the TPMS and tire pressures set to the Light Load Inflation Pressure settings if carrying more than two occupants (150 lbs each) plus 200 pounds of cargo. The vehicle "Light Load Definition" is found in the Supplemental Tire Pressure Information Label which is located on the rear face of the driver door. Failure to do so may cause you to lose control resulting in an accident, causing serious or fatal injury.

The TPMS "Light Load" reset switch will allow the driver to switch between the max load inflation pressure (cold) low pressure warning threshold and the light load inflation pressure (cold) low pressure warning threshold depending on the vehicle's load condition. The Tire and Loading Information label defines the recommended front and rear cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle when operating in the Max Load condition. A Supplemental Tire Pressure Information label is also available defining Light Load tire inflation pressures when operating in the Light Load condition. When the "Light Load" reset switch LED is ON, the TPMS is using the light load inflation pressure (cold) low inflation warning thresholds.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

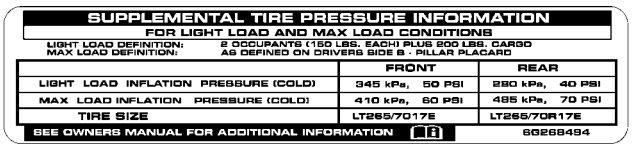


Light Load Reset Switch

"Light Load" Reset Switch Operation – If Equipped

- This vehicle may have different recommended tire pressure values between the front and rear tires as shown in both the Tire Loading Information Label and the Supplemental Tire Pressure Information Label. It is also equipped to be driven with tire pressures appropriate to either a Light Load condition or the vehicle Max Load condition.
- The "Light Load" reset switch will allow the driver to change between the max load inflation pressure (cold) low pressure warning threshold and the light load inflation pressure (cold) low pressure warning threshold depending on the vehicle's load condition. Refer to the "Supplemental Tire Pressure Information" label for the vehicle's Light Load inflation pressures and "Tire and Loading Information" label for the vehicle's Max Load inflation pressures.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



SUPPLEMENTAL TIRE PRESSURE INFORMATION

FOR LIGHT LOAD AND MAX LOAD CONDITIONS

LIGHT LOAD DEFINITION: 2 OCCUPANTS (150 LBS. EACH) PLUS 200 LBS. CARGO
MAX LOAD DEFINITION: AS DEFINED ON DRIVERS SIDE B - PILLAR PLACARD

	FRONT	REAR
LIGHT LOAD INFLATION PRESSURE (COLD)	345 kPa, 50 PSI	280 kPa, 40 PSI
MAX LOAD INFLATION PRESSURE (COLD)	410 kPa, 60 PSI	485 kPa, 70 PSI
TIRE SIZE	LT265/7017E	LT265/70R17E

SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

68268494

81c57c10

Example Supplemental Tire Pressure Label

To switch from the max load inflation pressure (cold) low pressure warning threshold to the light load inflation pressure (cold) low pressure warning threshold, begin by placing the ignition switch in the RUN position. Next, lower all four road tire pressures to the Light Load Inflation Pressure values as listed on the Supplemental Tire Pressure Information label. The Supplemental Tire Pressure Information label is located on the rear face of the driver door. Use an accurate tire gauge to check the tire pressures when lowering all four tire pressures. After all four tire pressures have been lowered to the Light Load inflation pressures, press the “Light Load” reset switch. If the “Light Load” switch’s amber colored LED turns ON, the TPMS is using the light load inflation pressure (cold) low pressure warning thresholds.

If the “Light Load” reset switch amber colored LED flashes on and off for 10 seconds, after all four tire pressures have been lowered to the Light Load inflation pressures, the pressure in any one of the four tires may not be at the light load inflation pressure (cold) values as indicated for the Light Load condition as defined on the Supplemental Tire Pressure Information label located on the rear face of the driver door. Using an accurate tire pressure gauge, re-check the tire pressures for the light load inflation pressure (cold) value.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

It is the driver's responsibility to change to the max load inflation pressure (cold) low pressure warning threshold condition when not driving in the light load condition as defined as two occupants (150 lbs each) plus 200 pounds of cargo. The vehicle "Light Load Definition" is found in the Supplemental Tire Pressure Information label located on the rear face of the driver door. Failure to do so may cause you to lose control resulting in an accident, causing serious or fatal injury.

To switch back to the max load inflation pressure (cold) low pressure warning threshold, press the "Light Load" reset switch. It is not necessary to first fill the tires to the max load inflation pressure (cold) values to switch the TPMS system to the max load inflation pressure (cold) low pressure warning threshold. If after pressing the "Light Load" reset switch and tire pressures are below the max load inflation pressure (cold) low pressure warning thresholds, the TPMS low pressure warning telltale lamp located in the Instrument Cluster will turn ON and a chime will sound. The tire pressures are now required to be inflated to the max load inflation pressure (cold) values described on the Tire and Loading Information label. The Tire and Loading Information label is located on the drivers side B-pillar. If the "Light Load" reset switch LED turns OFF the TPMS has been reset and the TPMS is using the max load inflation pressure (cold) low pressure warning thresholds.

Tire Pressure Monitor System Components

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses wireless technology with wheel rim mounted electronic sensors to monitor tire pressure levels. Sensors, mounted to each wheel as part of the valve stem, transmit tire pressure readings to the Receiver Module.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: It is particularly important, for you to check the tire pressure in all of your tires regularly and to maintain the proper pressure.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) consists of the following components:

- Receiver Module
- 4 Wheel Sensors
- 2 Trigger Modules (mounted in the front wheel-wells)
- "Light Load" Reset Switch (located in the instrument panel)
- Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Lamp

Tire Pressure Monitoring Low Pressure Warnings

The Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Lamp will illuminate in the instrument cluster, and an audible chime will be activated when one or more of the four active road tire pressures are low. Should this occur, you should stop as soon as possible, check the inflation pressure of each tire on your vehicle and inflate each tire to the vehicle's recommended cold placard pressure value. The system will automatically update and the Tire Pressure Monitoring Lamp will extinguish once the updated tire pressures have been received. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 10 minutes above 15 mph (25 km/h) to receive this information.

Check TPMS Warnings

The Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Warning Light located in the Instrument Cluster will flash on and off for 75 seconds and will remain on solid when a system fault is detected. The system fault will also sound a chime. If

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

the ignition key is cycled, this sequence will repeat, providing the system fault still exists. A system fault can occur by any of the following scenarios:

1. Signal interference due to electronic devices or driving next to facilities emitting the same Radio Frequencies as the TPM sensors.

2. Installing aftermarket window tinting that affects radio wave signals.

3. Accumulation of snow or ice around the wheels or wheel housings.

4. Using tire chains on the vehicle.

5. Using wheels/tires not equipped with TPM sensors.

6. Loss of communication with the trigger modules or tire pressure monitoring sensors.

NOTE: Your vehicle is equipped with a non-matching full size spare wheel and tire assembly.

1. This spare tire does not have a tire pressure monitoring sensor. Therefore, the TPMS will not monitor the tire pressure in the spare tire.

2. If you install the full size spare tire in place of a road tire that has a pressure below the low-pressure warning limit, upon the next ignition key cycle, a chime will sound and the TPM Telltale Light will still turn ON due to the low tire.

3. However, after driving the vehicle for up to 10 minutes above 15 mph (25 km/h), the TPM Telltale Light will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid.

4. For each subsequent ignition key cycle, a chime will sound and the TPM Telltale Light will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid.

5. Once you repair or replace the original road tire, and reinstall it on the vehicle in place of the full size spare tire, the TPMS will update automatically and the TPM Telltale

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Light will turn OFF, as long as no tire pressure is below the low-pressure warning limit in any of the four active road tires. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 10 minutes above 15 mph (25 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

General Information

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and RSS 210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The tire pressure sensors are covered under one of the following licenses:

United States KR5S120123
Canada 2671-S120123

FUEL REQUIREMENTS

800dfab6

All Engines Except 5.7L

All engines (except 5.7L engines) are designed to meet all emissions regulations and provide excellent fuel economy and performance when using high-quality unleaded "regular" gasoline having an octane rating of 87. The use of premium gasoline is not recommended. Under normal conditions, the use of premium gasoline will not provide a benefit over high-quality regular gasolines, and in some circumstances may result in poorer performance.

800dfab7

5.7L Engines

The 5.7L engine is designed to meet all emissions regulations and provide satisfactory fuel economy and performance when using high-quality unleaded gasoline having an octane range of 87 to 89. The manufacturer recommends the use of 89 octane

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

for optimum performance. The use of premium gasoline is not recommended. Under normal conditions, the use of premium gasoline will not provide a benefit over high-quality regular and mid-grade gasolines, and in some circumstances may result in poorer performance.

Light spark knock at low engine speeds is not harmful to your engine. However, continued heavy spark knock at high speeds can cause damage and immediate service is required.

Poor quality gasoline can cause problems such as hard starting, stalling and hesitations. If you experience these symptoms, try another brand of "regular" gasoline before considering service for the vehicle.

Over 40 auto manufacturers worldwide have issued and endorsed consistent gasoline specifications (the Worldwide Fuel Charter, WWFC) to define fuel properties necessary to deliver enhanced emissions, performance and durability for your vehicle. We recommend the use of gasolines that meet the WWFC specifications if they are available.

Reformulated Gasoline

Many areas of the country require the use of cleaner burning gasoline referred to as "Reformulated Gasoline" Reformulated gasolines contain oxygenates, and are specifically blended to reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

The manufacturer supports the use of reformulated gasolines. Properly-blended reformulated gasolines will provide excellent performance and durability of engine and fuel system components.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Gasoline/Oxygenate Blends

Some fuel suppliers blend unleaded gasoline with oxygenates such as 10% ethanol, MTBE, and ETBE. Oxygenates are required in some areas of the country during the Winter months to reduce carbon monoxide emissions. Fuels blended with these oxygenates may be used in your vehicle.

CAUTION!

DO NOT use gasolines containing Methanol or E85 Ethanol. Use of these blends may result in starting and drivability problems and may damage critical fuel system components.

NOTE: 4.7L Engine — If Equipped , is now rated for E85 Ethanol use. Only vehicles with the E-85 fuel filler door label can operate on E-85. For more information, refer to “Flexible Fuel” in this section.

Problems that result from using methanol/gasoline or E85 Ethanol blends are not the responsibility of the manufacturer. While MTBE is an oxygenate made from Methanol, it does not have the negative effects of Methanol.

MMT In Gasoline

MMT is a manganese containing metallic additive that is blended into some gasoline to increase octane. Gasoline blended with MMT provides no performance advantage beyond gasoline of the same octane number without MMT. Gasoline blended with MMT reduces spark plug life and reduces emission system performance in some vehicles. The manufacturer recommends that gasoline without MMT be used in your vehicle. The MMT content of gasoline may not be indicated on the gasoline pump, therefore, you should ask your gasoline retailer whether or not the gasoline contains MMT. It is even more important to look for gasolines without MMT in Canada, because MMT can be used at levels higher than those

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

allowed in the United States. MMT is prohibited in Federal and California reformulated gasoline.

Materials Added To Fuel

All gasolines sold in the United States are required to contain effective detergent additives. Use of additional detergents or other additives is not needed under normal conditions and would result in unnecessary cost. Therefore, you should not have to add anything to the fuel.

Fuel System Cautions

CAUTION!

Follow these guidelines to maintain your vehicle's performance:

- The use of leaded gas is prohibited by Federal law. Using leaded gasoline can impair engine performance, damage the emission control system.
- An out-of-tune engine, or certain fuel or ignition malfunctions, can cause the catalytic converter to overheat. If you notice a pungent burning odor or some light smoke, your engine may be out of tune or malfunctioning and may require immediate service. Contact your authorized dealer for service assistance.
- When pulling a heavy load or driving a fully-loaded vehicle when the humidity is low and the temperature is high, use a premium unleaded fuel to help prevent spark knock. If spark knock persists, lighten the load, or engine piston damage may result.
- The use of fuel additives which are now being sold as octane enhancers is not recommended. Many of these products contain high concentrations of methanol. Fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems resulting from the use of such fuels or additives is not the responsibility of the manufacturer.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: Intentional tampering with emissions control systems can result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

Carbon Monoxide Warnings

WARNING!

Carbon monoxide (CO) in exhaust gases is deadly. Follow the precautions below to prevent carbon monoxide poisoning:

- Do not inhale exhaust gases. They contain carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas which can kill. Never run the engine in a closed area, such as a garage, and never sit in a parked vehicle with the engine running for an extended period. If the vehicle is stopped in an open area with the engine running for more than a short period, adjust the ventilation system to force fresh, outside air into the vehicle.
- Guard against carbon monoxide with proper maintenance. Have the exhaust system inspected every time the vehicle is raised. Have any abnormal conditions repaired promptly. Until repaired, drive with all side windows fully open.
- Keep the liftgate closed when driving your vehicle to prevent carbon monoxide and other poisonous exhaust gases from entering the vehicle.

ADDING FUEL

Adding Fuel (Gas Engines)

The fuel tank filler tube has a restricting door about 2 in (50 mm) inside the opening. If using a portable fuel container, it should have a flexible nozzle long enough to force open the restricting door.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Damage to the fuel system or emission control system could result from using an improper fuel tank filler tube cap (gas cap). A poorly fitting cap could let impurities into the fuel system. Also, a poorly-fitted aftermarket cap can cause the MIL (Malfunction Indicator Light) to illuminate, due to fuel vapors escaping from the system.

CAUTION!

A poorly fitting gas cap may cause the Malfunction Indicator Light to turn on.

CAUTION!

To avoid fuel spillage and overfilling, do not "top off" the fuel tank after filling.

NOTE: When the fuel nozzle "clicks" or shuts off, the fuel tank is full.

WARNING!

- **Never have any smoking materials lit in or near the vehicle when the gas cap is removed or the tank filled.**
- **Never add fuel to the vehicle when the engine is running. This is in violation of most state and federal fire regulations and will cause the Malfunction Indicator Light to turn on.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: Tighten the gas cap 1/4 turn until you hear one click. This is an indication that the cap is properly tightened.

If the gas cap is not tightened properly, the Malfunction Indicator Light will come on, Be sure the gas cap is tightened every time the vehicle is refueled.

WARNING!

A fire may result if gasoline is pumped into a portable container that is inside of a vehicle. You could be burned. Always place gas containers on the ground while filling.

Loose Fuel Filler Cap (Gas Cap) Message

If the vehicles diagnostic system determines that the fuel filler cap in loose, improperly installed, or damaged, a GASCAP message will be displayed in the instrument cluster. Tighten the gas cap until a "clicking" sound is heard. This is an indication that the gas cap is properly tightened. Press the odometer reset button to turn the message off. If the problem persists, the message will appear the next time the vehicle is started. This might indicate a damaged cap. If the problem is detected twice in a row, the system will turn on the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL). Resolving the problem will turn the MIL light off.

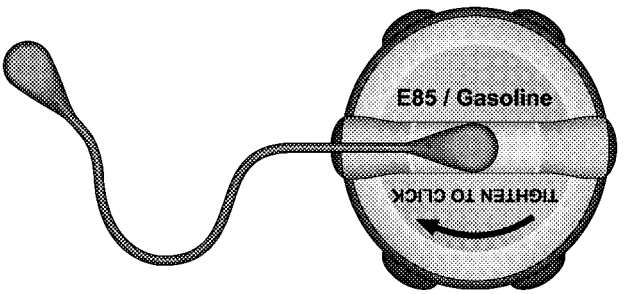
FLEXIBLE FUEL — IF EQUIPPED

E-85 General Information

The information in this section is for Flexible Fuel vehicles only. These vehicles can be identified by the unique yellow gas cap that states, Ethanol (E-85) or Unleaded Gasoline Only. This section only covers those subjects that are unique to these vehicles. Please refer to the other

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

sections of this manual for information on features that are common between Flexible Fuel and gasoline-only powered vehicles.



E-85 Fuel Cap

CAUTION!

Only vehicles with the E-85 fuel filler cap (gas cap) can operate on E-85.

E-85 Badge

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

ETHANOL FUEL (E-85)

E-85 is a mixture of approximately 85% fuel ethanol and 15% unleaded gasoline.

WARNING!

Ethanol vapors are extremely flammable and could cause serious personal injury. Never have any smoking materials lit in or near the vehicle when removing the fuel filler tube cap (gas cap) or filling the tank. Do not use E-85 as a cleaning agent and never use it near an open flame.

Fuel Requirements

Your vehicle will operate on both unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of 87, or E-85 fuel, or any mixture of these two.

For best results, a refueling pattern that alternates between E-85 and unleaded gasoline should be avoided. When you do switch fuels, it is recommended that you:

- do not switch when the fuel gauge indicates less than 1/4 full
- do not add less than 5 gal (19 L) when refueling
- operate the vehicle immediately after refueling for a period of at least five minutes

Observing these precautions will avoid possible hard starting and/or significant deterioration in drivability during warm-up.

NOTE: When the ambient temperature is above 90°F (32°C), you may experience hard starting and rough idle following startup, even if the above recommendations are followed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Selection Of Engine Oil For Flexible Fuel Vehicles (E-85) and Gasoline Vehicles

Flexible Fuel Vehicles (FFV) vehicles operated on E-85 require specially formulated engine oils. These special requirements are included in Mopar® engine oils, and in equivalent oils meeting DaimlerChrysler Specification MS-6395. The manufacturer only recommends engine oils that are API Certified and meet the requirements of Material Standard MS-6395. MS-6395 contains additional requirements, developed during extensive fleet testing, to provide additional protection to DaimlerChrysler Corporation engines. Use Mopar® or an equivalent oil meeting the specification MS-6395.

Starting

The characteristics of E-85 fuel make it unsuitable for use when ambient temperatures fall below 0° F (-18° C). In the range of 0° F (-18° C) to 32° F (0° C), you may experience an increase in the time it takes for your engine to start, and a deterioration in drivability (sags and/or hesitations) until the engine is fully warmed up.

CAUTION!

Do not use ethanol mixture greater than 85% in your vehicle. It will cause difficulty in cold starting and may affect drivability.

Cruising Range

Because E-85 fuel contains less energy per gallon/liter than gasoline, you will experience an increase in fuel consumption. You can expect your miles per gallon (mpg)/miles per liter and your driving range to decrease by about 30%, compared to gasoline operation.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Replacement Parts

Many components in your Flexible Fuel Vehicle (FFV) are designed to be compatible with ethanol. Always be sure that your vehicle is serviced with correct ethanol compatible parts.

CAUTION!

Replacing fuel system components with non-ethanol compatible components can damage your vehicle.

VEHICLE LOADING

Certification Label

As required by National Highway Traffic Safety Administration regulations, your vehicle has a certification label affixed to the driver's side door or pillar.

This label contains the month and year of manufacture, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) front and rear, and Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). A Month-Day-Hour (MDH) number is included on this label and indicates the Month, Day and Hour of manufacture. The bar code that appears on the bottom of the label is your Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The GVWR is the total permissible weight of your vehicle including driver, passengers, vehicle, options and cargo. The label also specifies maximum capacities of front and rear axle systems (GAWR). Total load must be limited so GVWR and front and rear GAWR are not exceeded.

Payload

The payload of a vehicle is defined as the allowable load weight a truck can carry, including the weight of the driver, all passengers, options and cargo.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)
The GAWR is the maximum permissible load on the front and rear axles. The load must be distributed in the cargo area so that the GAWR of each axle is not exceeded.

Each axle GAWR is determined by the components in the system with the lowest load carrying capacity (axle, springs, tires or wheels). Heavier axles or suspension components sometimes specified by purchasers for increased durability does not necessarily increase the vehicle's GVWR.

Tire Size
The tire size on the Label represents the actual tire size on your vehicle. Replacement tires must be equal to the load capacity of this tire size.

Rim Size
This is the rim size that is appropriate for the tire size listed.

Inflation Pressure
This is the cold tire inflation pressure for your vehicle for all loading conditions up to full GAWR.

Curb Weight
The curb weight of a vehicle is defined as the total weight of the vehicle with all fluids, including vehicle fuel, at full capacity conditions, and with no occupants or cargo loaded into the vehicle. The front and rear curb weight values are determined by weighing your vehicle on a commercial scale before any occupants or cargo are added.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Loading

The actual total weight and the weight of the front and rear of your vehicle at the ground can best be determined by weighing it when it is loaded and ready for operation.

The entire vehicle should first be weighed on a commercial scale to insure that the GVWR has not been exceeded. The weight on the front and rear of the vehicle should then be determined separately to be sure that the load is properly distributed over front and rear axle. Weighing the vehicle may show that the GAWR of either the front or rear axles has been exceeded but the total load is within the specified GVWR. If so, weight must be shifted from front to rear or rear to front as appropriate until the specified weight limitations are met. Store the heavier items down low and be sure that the weight is distributed equally. Stow all loose items securely before driving.

Improper weight distributions can have an adverse effect on the way your vehicle steers and handles and the way the brakes operate.

CAUTION!

Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the GVWR or the maximum front and rear GAWR. If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, or it can change the way your vehicle handles. This could cause you to lose control. Also overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.

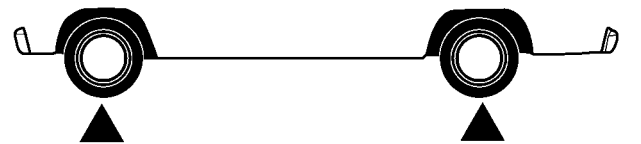
5

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

An EXAMPLE of a loaded vehicle is shown in the following chart. Note that neither GVWR nor GAWR capabilities are exceeded. Overloading can cause potential safety hazards and shorten service life.

NOTE: The weights shown in this chart are not necessarily the weights for your vehicle. Also, the amount of load added to both the front and rear axles can be computed after the vehicle has been weighed both in its "curb weight" condition, and in its "loaded and ready for operation" condition.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 6500 LBS (2948 kg).



8120c425

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

TRAILER TOWING

In this section you will find safety tips and information on limits to the type of towing you can reasonably do with your vehicle. Before towing a trailer carefully review this information to tow your load as efficiently and safely as possible.

To maintain warranty coverage, follow the requirements and recommendations in this manual concerning vehicles used for trailer towing.

Common Towing Definitions

The following trailer towing related definitions will assist you in understanding the following information:

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The GVWR is the total allowable weight of your vehicle. This includes driver, passengers, cargo and tongue weight. The total load must be limited so that you do not exceed the GVWR.

Gross Trailer Weight (GTW)

The gross trailer weight (GTW) is the weight of the trailer plus the weight of all cargo, consumables and equipment (permanent or temporary) loaded in or on the trailer in its ″loaded and ready for operation″ condition. The recommended way to measure GTW is to put your fully loaded trailer on a vehicle scale. The entire weight of the trailer must be supported by the scale.

Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR)

The gross combination weight rating (GCWR) is the total permissible weight of your vehicle and trailer when weighed in combination. (Note that GCWR ratings include a 68 kg (150 lbs) allowance for the presence of a driver).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)
The GAWR is the maximum capacity of the front and rear axles. Distribute the load over the front and rear axles evenly. Make sure that you do not exceed either front or rear GAWR.

WARNING!

It is important that you do not exceed the maximum front or rear GAWR. A dangerous driving condition can result if either rating is exceeded. You could lose control of the vehicle and have an accident.

Tongue Weight (TW)
The downward force exerted on the hitch ball by the trailer. In most cases it should not be less than 10% or more than 15% of the trailer load. You must consider this as part of the load on your vehicle.

Frontal Area
The maximum height and maximum width of the front of a trailer.

Trailer Sway Control
The trailer sway control is a telescoping link that can be installed between the hitch receiver and the trailer tongue that typically provides adjustable friction associated with the telescoping motion to dampen any unwanted trailer swaying motions while traveling.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Weight-Carrying Hitch

A weight-carrying hitch supports the trailer tongue weight, just as if it were luggage located at a hitch ball or some other connecting point of the truck. These kind of hitches are the most popular on the market today and they're commonly used to tow small- and medium-sized trailers.

Weight-Distributing Hitch

A weight-distributing system works by applying leverage through spring (load) bars. They are typically used for heavier loads, to distribute trailer tongue weight to the tow vehicle's front axle and the trailer axle(s). When used in accordance with the manufacturers' directions, it provides for a more level ride, offering more consistent steering and brake control thereby enhancing towing safety. The addition of a friction / hydraulic sway control also dampens sway caused by traffic and crosswinds and contributes positively to tow vehicle and trailer stability. Trailer sway control and a weight distributing (load equalizing) hitch are recommended for heavier Tongue Weights (TW) and may be required depending on Vehicle and Trailer configuration / loading to comply with gross axle weight rating (GAWR) requirements.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

An improperly adjusted Weight Distributing Hitch system may reduce handling, stability, braking performance, and could result in an accident.

Weight Distributing Systems may not be compatible with Surge Brake Couplers. Consult with your hitch and trailer manufacturer or a reputable Recreational Vehicle dealer for additional information.

EXAMPLE ONLY

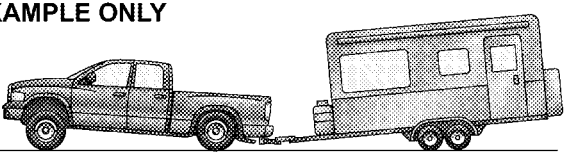


FIG. 1 WITHOUT WEIGHT DISTRIBUTION (INCORRECT)

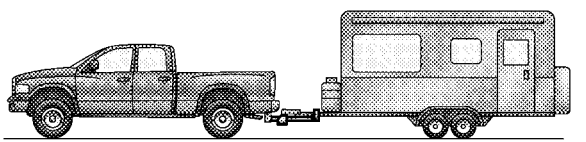


FIG 2. WITH WEIGHT DISTRIBUTION (CORRECT) 8181f965

Weight-Distributing Hitch System

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

EXAMPLE ONLY

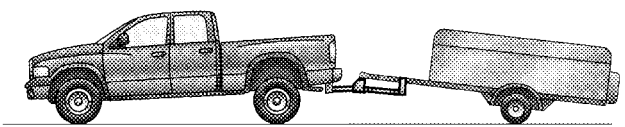


FIG. 3 IMPROPER ADJUSTMENT (INCORRECT)

8181f96f

Improper Adjustment Of Weight-Distributing System

Fifth-Wheel Hitch

A special high platform with a coupling that mounts over the rear axle of the tow vehicle in the truck bed. Connects a vehicle and fifth-wheel trailer with a coupling king pin.

Gooseneck Hitch

The gooseneck hitch employs a pivoted coupling arm which attaches to a ball mounted in the bed of a pickup truck. The coupling arm connects to the hitch mounted over the rear axle in the truck bed.

Trailer Hitch Classification

The rear bumper is intended to tow trailers up to 2,000 lbs (907 kg) without added equipment or alterations to the standard equipment. Your vehicle may be factory equipped for safe towing of trailers weighing over 2,000 lbs (907 kg) with the optional Trailer Tow Prep Package. See your dealer for package content.

The following chart provides the industry standard for the maximum trailer weight a given trailer hitch class can tow and should be used to assist you in selecting the correct trailer hitch for your intended towing condition.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Trailer Hitch Classification Definitions	
Class	**Max. Trailer Hitch Industry Standards**
Class I - Light Duty	2,000 lbs (907 kg)
Class II - Medium Duty	3,500 lbs (1587 kg)
Class III - Heavy Duty	5,000 lbs (2268 kg)
Class IV - Extra Heavy Duty	10,000 lbs (4540 kg)
Fifth Wheel/ Gooseneck	Greater than 10,000 lbs (4540 kg)
Refer to "Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)" for the website address that contains the necessary information for your specific drivetrain.	

All trailer hitches should be professionally installed on your vehicle.

Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)

NOTE: For additional trailer towing information (maximum trailer weight ratings) refer to the following website addresses:

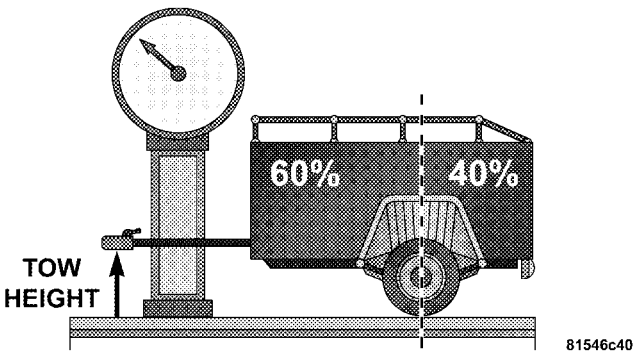
- **http:// www.dodge.com/towing**.
- **http:// www.dodge.ca** (Canada).

Trailer and Tongue Weight

Always load a trailer with 60% to 65% of the weight in the front of the trailer. This places 10% to 15% of the Gross Trailer Weight (GTW) on the tow hitch of your vehicle. Loads balanced over the wheels or heavier in the rear can cause the trailer to sway **severely** side to side which will cause loss of control of vehicle and trailer. Failure to load trailers heavier in front is the cause of many trailer accidents.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Never exceed the maximum tongue weight stamped on your bumper or trailer hitch.



Consider the following items when computing the weight on the rear axle of the vehicle:

- The tongue weight of the trailer.
- The weight of any other type of cargo or equipment put in or on your vehicle.
- The weight of the driver and all passengers.

NOTE: Remember that everything put into or on the trailer adds to the load on your vehicle. Also, additional factory-installed options, or dealer-installed options, must be considered as part of the total load on your vehicle. Refer to the Tire and Loading Information placard in the Tire Safety Information Section of this manual.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Towing Requirements

To promote proper break-in of your new vehicle drivetrain components the following guidelines are recommended:

CAUTION!

- **Avoid towing a trailer for the first 500 miles (805 km) of vehicle operation. Doing so may damage your vehicle.**
- **During the first 500 miles (805 km) of trailer towing, limit your speed to 50 mph (80 km/h).**

WARNING!

Your vehicle may require special axle lubricant. Please refer to the fluids section of this manual.

Perform the maintenance listed in Section 8 of this manual. When towing a trailer, never exceed the GAWR, or GCWR, ratings.

WARNING!

Improper towing can lead to an injury accident. Follow these guidelines to make your trailer towing as safe as possible:

Make certain that the load is secured in the trailer and will not shift during travel. When trailering cargo that is not fully secured, dynamic load shifts can occur that may be difficult for the driver to control. You could lose control of your vehicle and have an accident.

- When hauling cargo or towing a trailer, do not overload your vehicle or trailer. Overloading can cause a

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

loss of control, poor performance or damage to brakes, axle, engine, transmission, steering, suspension, chassis structure or tires.

- Safety chains must always be used between your vehicle and trailer. Always connect the chains to the frame or hook retainers of the vehicle hitch. Cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning corners.
- Vehicles with trailers should not be parked on a grade. When parking, apply the parking brake on the tow vehicle. Put the tow vehicle automatic transmission in P for Park. With a manual transmission, shift the transmission into reverse. And with four-wheel-drive vehicles, make sure the transfer case is not in neutral. Always, block or "chock" the trailer wheels.
- GCWR must not be exceeded.
- **Total weight must be distributed between the tow vehicle and the trailer such that the following four ratings are not exceeded:**

  1. GVWR
  2. GTW
  3. GAWR
  4. Tongue weight rating for the trailer hitch utilized (This requirement may limit the ability to always achieve the 10% to 15% range of tongue weight as a percentage of total trailer weight).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Towing Requirements — Tires

- Do not attempt to tow a trailer while using a compact spare tire.
- Proper tire inflation pressures are essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Refer to the Tires–General Information section of this manual on Tire Pressures for proper tire inflation procedures.
- Also, check the trailer tires for proper tire inflation pressures before trailer usage.
- Check for signs of tire wear or visible tire damage before towing a trailer. Refer to the Tires–General Information section of this manual on Tread Wear Indicators for the proper inspection procedure.
- When replacing tires refer to the Tires–General Information section of this manual on Replacement Tires for proper tire replacement procedures. Replacing tires with a higher load carrying capacity will not increase the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limits.

Towing Requirements — Trailer Brakes

- Do **not** interconnect the hydraulic brake system or vacuum system of your vehicle with that of the trailer. This could cause inadequate braking and possible personal injury.
- An electronically actuated trailer brake controller is required when towing a trailer with electronically actuated brakes. When towing a trailer equipped with a hydraulic surge actuated brake system, an electronic brake controller is not required.
- Trailer brakes are recommended for trailers over 1,000 lbs (454 kg) and required for trailers in excess of 2,000 lbs (907 kg).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

If the trailer weighs more than 1,000 lbs (454 kg) loaded, it should have its own brakes and they should be of adequate capacity. Failure to do this could lead to accelerated brake lining wear, higher brake pedal effort, and longer stopping distances.

WARNING!

Do not connect trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic brake lines. It can overload your brake system and cause it to fail. You might not have brakes when you need them and could have an accident.

Towing any trailer will increase your stopping distance. When towing you should allow for additional space between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you. Failure to do so could result in an accident.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

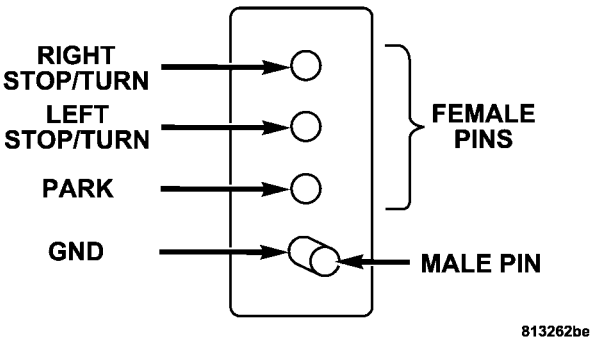
Towing Requirements — Trailer Lights & Wiring

Whenever you pull a trailer, regardless of the trailer size, stop lights and turn signals on the trailer are required for motoring safety.

The Trailer Tow Package may include a 4 and 7 pin wiring harness. Use a factory approved trailer harness and connector.

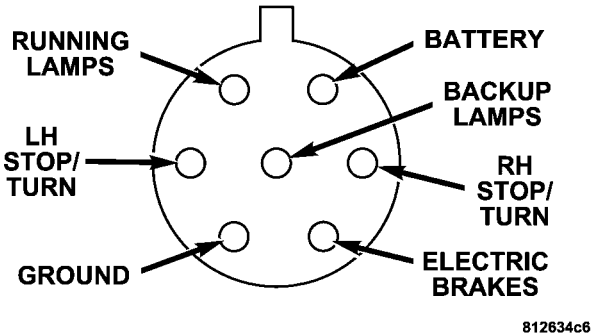
NOTE: Do not cut or splice wiring into the vehicles wiring harness.

The electrical connections are all complete to the vehicle but you must mate the harness to a trailer connector. Refer to the following illustrations.



4-Pin Connector

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



7-Pin Connector

WARNING!

Any work done to the vehicles electrical system, or wiring, should be performed by a qualified automotive technician, if done improperly it may cause damage to the electrical system wiring and could result in serious or fatal injury.

5

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The following chart identifies the maximum electrical loads that the trailer tow output circuits are capable of supporting.

Trailer Tow Additional Lamp Loads		
Output Functions	Maximum Current	Additional Bulbs Allowed Example Only. Other bulb combinations can be used as long as maximum current is not exceeded.
Stop / Turn Left	16A	2 #3157 bulbs for stop / turn
Stop / Turn Right	16A	2 #3157 bulbs for stop / turn
Trailer Park Lamps	14A	2 #1157 bulbs (two filament park / stop / turn) plus up to 24 #168 or #194 peanut bulbs.

Towing Tips

Before setting out on a trip, practice turning, stopping and backing the trailer in an area away from heavy traffic.

If using a manual transmission vehicle for trailer towing, all starts must be in FIRST gear to avoid excessive clutch slippage.

Towing Tips — Automatic Transmission

The “D” range can be selected when towing. However, if frequent shifting occurs while in this range, the “TOW HAUL” or “OD / OFF” range should be selected.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: Using the "TOW HAUL" or "OD/OFF" range while operating the vehicle under heavy operating conditions will improve performance and extend transmission life by reducing excessive shifting and heat build up. This action will also provide better engine braking.

The automatic transmission fluid and filter should be changed if you REGULARLY tow a trailer for more than 45 minutes of continuous operation. See Maintenance Schedule in section 8 of this manual for transmission fluid change intervals.

NOTE: Check the automatic transmission fluid level before towing.

Towing Tips — Tow/Haul (If Equipped)
To reduce potential for automatic transmission overheating, turn the "TOW HAUL OD/OFF" feature ON when driving in hilly areas or shift the transmission to Drive position 2 on more severe grades.

Towing Tips — Electronic Speed Control (If Equipped)

- Don't use in hilly terrain or with heavy loads.
- When using the speed control, if you experience speed drops greater than 10 mph (16 km/h), disengage until you can get back to cruising speed.
- Use speed control in flat terrain and with light loads to maximize fuel efficiency.

Towing Tips — Cooling System
To reduce potential for engine and transmission overheating, take the following actions:

- ***City Driving***

When stopped for short periods of time, put transmission in neutral and increase engine idle speed.

- ***Highway Driving***

Reduce speed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

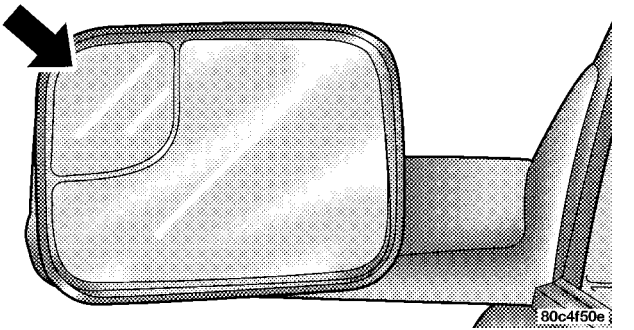
– ***Air Conditioning***
Turn off temporarily.

– refer to Cooling System Operating information in the Maintenance section of this manual for more information.

Trailer Towing Mirrors — If Equipped

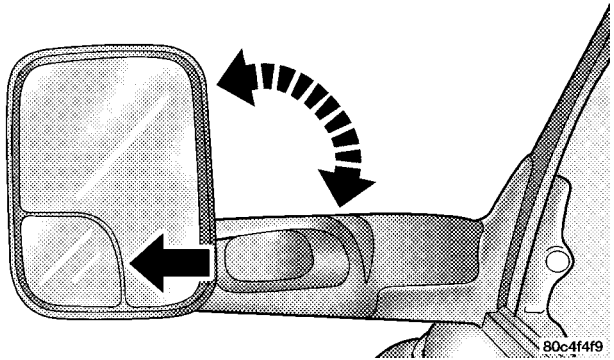
These mirrors are designed with an adjustable mirror head to provide a greater vision range when towing extra-wide loads. To change position inboard or outboard, the mirror head should be rotated (flipped Out or In). A small blindspot mirror is integrated onto the main mirror surface.

NOTE: Fold the 7 x 10 inch trailer towing mirrors rearward prior to entering an automated car wash.



Blindspot Mirror

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Trailer Towing Position

SNOWPLOW

Snowplow Prep Packages are available as a factory-installed option. These packages include components necessary to equip your vehicle with a snowplow.

1500 Models (Light Duty)

NOTE: Do not use 1500 (light duty) Models for snowplow applications.

WARNING!

On 1500 Models, snowplows, winches, and other aftermarket equipment should not be added to the front end of your vehicle. The airbag crash sensors may be affected by the change in the front end structure. The airbags could deploy unexpectedly or could fail to deploy during a collision resulting in serious injury or death.

5

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Using 1500 Model vehicles for snowplow applications can cause damage to the vehicle.

NOTE: Before installation of a snowplow, it is highly recommended that the owner / installer obtain and follow the recommendations contained within the current Dodge BODY BUILDER'S GUIDE. See your authorized dealer, installer or snowplow manufacturer for this information. There are unique electrical systems that must be connected to properly assure operator safety, and to prevent overloading vehicle systems.

WARNING!

Attaching a snowplow to this vehicle could adversely affect performance of the airbag system in an accident. Do not expect that the airbag will perform as described earlier in this manual

CAUTION!

The "Lamp Out" indicator could illuminate if exterior lamps are not properly installed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Before Plowing

- Check the hydraulic system for leaks and proper fluid level.
- Check the mounting bolts and nuts for proper tightness.
- Check the runners and cutting edge for excessive wear. The cutting edge should be 1/4 to 1/2 inch (6.4 mm to13 mm) above ground in snow plowing position.
- Check that snowplow lighting is connected and functioning properly.

Snowplow Model Prep Package Availability

For Detailed Information Visit www.dodge.com or refer to the Current Dodge Truck Body Builders Guide.

1. The 1500 models are NOT available for snowplow applications.

2. The maximum number of occupants in the truck should not exceed two.

3. The total GVWR, or the Front GAWR, or the Rear GAWR should never be exceeded.

4. The snowplow prep packages are not available with the Sport Package.

5. Cargo capacity will be reduced by the addition of options or passengers, etc.

The loaded vehicle weight, including the snowplow system, all aftermarket accessories, driver, passengers, options, and cargo, must not exceed either the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVWR) or Gross Axle Weight (GAWR) ratings. These weights are specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label on the driver's side door opening.

NOTE: Detach the snowplow when transporting passengers.

Vehicle front end wheel alignment was set to specifications at the factory without consideration for the weight of the plow. Front end tow-in should be checked and reset if

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

necessary at the beginning and end of the snowplow season. This will help prevent uneven tire wear.

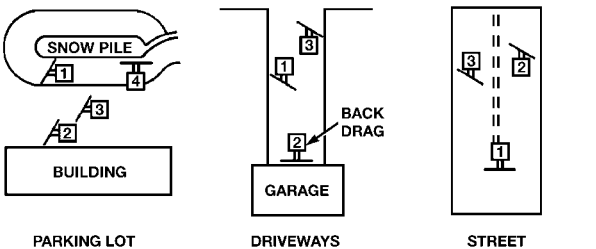
The blade should be lowered whenever the vehicle is parked.

Maintain and operate your vehicle and snowplow equipment following the recommendations provided by the specific snowplow manufacturer.

Over the Road Operation With Snowplow Attached

The blade restricts airflow to the radiator and causes the engine to operate at higher than normal temperatures. Therefore, when transporting the plow, angle the blade completely and position it as low as road or surface conditions permit. Do not exceed 40 mph (64 km / h). The operator should always maintain a safe stopping distance and allow adequate passing clearance.

Methods For Removing Snow



Operating Tips

Under ideal snow plowing conditions, 20 mph (32 km / h) should be maximum operating speed. The operator should be familiar with the area and surface to be cleaned. Reduce speed and use extreme caution when plowing unfamiliar areas or under poor visibility.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: During snowplow usage on vehicles equipped with an overhead console module, the outside temperature display will show higher temperatures than the outside ambient temperature. The higher displayed temperature is due to blocked or reduced airflow to the underhood ambient temperature sensor by the snowplow. This is common, and outside temperature display operation will return to normal when the snowplow is removed.

General Maintenance

Snowplows should be maintained in accordance with the plow manufacturer's instructions. Whenever the plow is disconnected from the vehicle, coat the exposed angling cylinder rods with chassis lubricant. The lift cylinder should be extended upward and chassis lubricant applied to the lift rod. The hydraulic hoses interconnect to keep the couplers clean.

Keep all snowplow electrical connections and battery terminals clean and free of corrosion.

When plowing snow, to avoid transmission and drivetrain damage, the following precautions should be observed.

- Operate with transfer case in 4L when plowing small or congested areas where speeds are not likely to exceed 15 mph (24 km / h). At higher speeds operate in 4H.
- Do not shift the transmission unless the engine has returned to idle and wheels have stopped. Make a practice of stepping on the brake pedal before shifting the transmission between forward and reverse.

NOTE: Change the automatic transmission fluid and filter(s), refer to "Maintenance Schedule" in Section 8.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

RECREATIONAL TOWING (BEHIND MOTORHOME, ETC.)

CAUTION!

Front or rear wheel lifts should not be used. Internal damage to the transmission or transfer case will occur if a front or rear wheel lift is used when recreational towing.

Recreational Towing – 2-Wheel Drive Models

Recreational towing of 2-Wheel Drive models is not allowed. Towing with the rear wheels on the ground can result in severe transmission damage.

Recreational Towing – 4-Wheel Drive Models

CAUTION!

Failure to follow these requirements can cause severe damage to the transmission and/or transfer case.

NOTE: Both the Manual Shift and Electronic Shift transfer cases must be shifted into NEUTRAL for recreational towing. Automatic transmissions must be shifted into PARK position for recreational towing. Manual transmissions must be left in gear (not in NEUTRAL) for recreational towing. Refer to the following for the proper transfer case NEUTRAL shifting procedure for your vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Recreational Towing Procedure — Manual Shift Transfer Case — If Equipped

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for recreational towing:

CAUTION!

It is necessary to follow these steps to be certain that the transfer case is fully in NEUTRAL before recreational towing to prevent damage to internal parts.

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Shut OFF the engine.
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Shift automatic transmission to NEUTRAL, or depress the clutch on manual transmissions.
5. Shift transfer case lever into NEUTRAL.
6. Start the engine.
7. Shift automatic transmission into REVERSE.
8. Release brake pedal for five seconds and ensure that there is no vehicle movement.
9. Repeat steps 7 and 8 with the transmission in DRIVE.
10. Shut OFF the engine and place the ignition key in the unlocked OFF position.
11. Shift automatic transmission into PARK or 1st gear on manual transmissions.
12. Apply the parking brake.
13. Attach vehicle to tow vehicle with tow bar.
14. Release the parking brake.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Damage to the automatic transmission may occur if the transmission is shifted into PARK with the transfer case in NEUTRAL and the engine running. With the transfer case in NEUTRAL ensure that the engine is OFF prior to shifting the transmission into PARK.

Returning to Normal Operation — Manual Shift Transfer Case

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for normal usage:

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shut OFF the engine.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Shift automatic transmission to NEUTRAL, or depress the clutch on manual transmissions.
6. Shift transfer case lever to desired position.
7. Shift automatic transmission into PARK.

WARNING!

You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL position disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to move, regardless of the transmission position. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

- **Do not use a bumper-mounted clamp-on tow bar on your vehicle. The bumper face bar will be damaged.**
- **Do not disconnect the rear driveshaft because fluid will leak from the transfer case and damage the internal parts.**

Recreational Towing Procedure — Electronic Shift Transfer Case — If Equipped

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for recreational towing:

CAUTION!

It is necessary to follow these steps to be certain that the transfer case is fully in NEUTRAL before recreational towing, to prevent damage to internal parts.

1. Bring vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Shut OFF the engine.
3. Turn the ignition key to the ON position, but do not start the engine.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Shift automatic transmission to NEUTRAL or depress clutch on manual transmission.
6. Using the point of a ballpoint pen or similar object, depress the recessed transfer case NEUTRAL button for four seconds.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

7. After shift is completed and the NEUTRAL light comes on, release the NEUTRAL button.

8. Start engine.

9. Shift automatic transmission into REVERSE.

10. Release brake pedal for five seconds and ensure that there is no vehicle movement.

11. Repeat steps 9 and 10 with the transmission in DRIVE.

12. Shut engine OFF and place ignition key in the unlocked OFF position.

13. Shift automatic transmission into PARK or 1st gear on manual transmissions.

14. Apply parking brake.

15. Attach vehicle to tow vehicle with tow bar.

16. Release parking brake.

NOTE: Steps 1 through 5 are requirements that must be met prior to depressing the NEUTRAL selection button, and must continue to be met until the four seconds elapses and the shift has been completed. If any of these requirements (with the exception of 3 - Key ON) are not met prior to depressing the NEUTRAL button or are no longer met during the four second timer, then the NEUTRAL indicator light will flash continuously until all requirements are met or until the NEUTRAL button is released.

NOTE: The ignition key must be ON for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the key in not ON, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.

NOTE: Flashing NEUTRAL position indicator light indicates that shift requirements have not been met.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Damage to the transmission may occur if the transmission is shifted into PARK with the transfer case in NEUTRAL and the engine running. With the transfer case in NEUTRAL ensure, that the engine is OFF prior to shifting the transmission into PARK.

Returning to Normal Operation — Electronic Shift Transfer Case

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for normal usage:

1. Bring vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Shut OFF the engine.
3. Turn the ignition key to the ON position, but do not start the engine.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Shift automatic transmission to NEUTRAL or depress clutch on manual transmission.
6. Using the point of a ballpoint pen or similar object, depress the recessed transfer case Neutral (N) button for one second.
7. After the Neutral indicator light turns off, release the Neutral (N) button.
8. After the Neutral (N) button has been released, the transfer case will shift to the position identified by the selector switch.
9. Shift automatic transmission into PARK.

NOTE: The transfer case cannot be shifted into NEUTRAL from the 4AUTO (if equipped) position.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: Steps 1 through 5 are requirements that must be met prior to depressing the transfer case Neutral (N) button, and must continue to be met until one second elapses and the shift has been completed. If any of these requirements (with the exception of step 3 - key ON) are not met prior to depressing the Neutral (N) button, or are no longer met during the one second time, then all of the mode position indicator lights will flash continuously until all requirements are met, or until the Neutral (N) button is released.

NOTE: The ignition key must be ON for a transfer case shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the key is not ON, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.

NOTE: Flashing Neutral position indicator light indicates that shift requirements have not been met.

WARNING!

You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL position disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to move despite the transmission position. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

- **Do not use a bumper-mounted clamp-on tow bar on your vehicle. The bumper face bar will be damaged.**
- **Do not disconnect the rear driveshaft because fluid will leak from the transfer case and fluid loss will damage internal parts.**

EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION PLATE

The Equipment Identification Plate is located on the hood inner surface.

The following information about your vehicle is displayed on this plate: Model, Wheelbase, Vehicle Identification Number, Truck Order Number, and code numbers with descriptions of all production and special equipment on the truck as shipped from the factory.

NOTE: Always refer to the Equipment Identification Plate When Ordering Parts.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WHAT TO DO IN EMERGENCIES

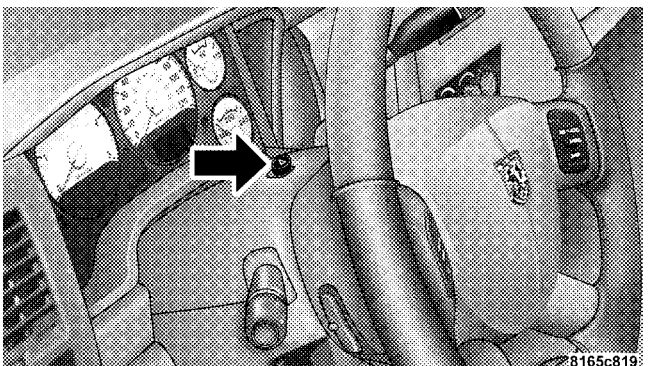
CONTENTS

- Hazard Warning Flasher 416
- Jacking And Tire Changing 417
  - Jack Location 417
  - Reinstalling The Scissors-Type Jack And Tools (1500 Models) 419
- Jacking Instructions 422
  - Removing The Spare Tire 422
  - Tire Changing Procedure 423
- Hoisting 434
- Jump-Starting Procedures 434
- Freeing A Stuck Vehicle 437
- Emergency Tow Hooks — If Equipped 438
- Towing A Disabled Vehicle 439
  - 4-Wheel Drive Vehicles 439
  - 2–Wheel Drive Vehicles 439

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

HAZARD WARNING FLASHER

The Hazard Warning switch is mounted on the top of the steering column as shown in the illustration.



Hazard Light Warning Switch

To engage the Hazard Warning lights, depress the button on the top of the steering column. When the Hazard Warning switch is activated, all directional turn signals will flash off and on to warn oncoming traffic of an emergency. Push the button a second time to turn off the flashers.

This is an emergency warning system and should not be used when the vehicle is in motion. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

When you must leave the vehicle to seek assistance, the Hazard Warning lights will continue to operate even though the ignition switch is OFF.

NOTE: With extended use, the Hazard Warning lights may discharge your battery.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

JACKING AND TIRE CHANGING

WARNING!

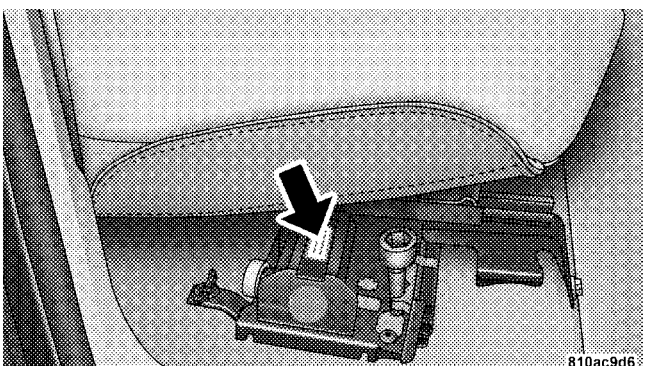
- **Being under a jacked-up vehicle is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and fall on you. You could be crushed. Never put any part of your body under a vehicle that is on a jack. Never start or run the engine while the vehicle is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to an authorized service center where it can be raised on a lift.**
- **The jack is designed to use as a tool for changing tires only. The jack should not be used to lift the vehicle for service purposes. The vehicle should be jacked on a firm level surface only. Avoid ice or slippery areas.**

Jack Location

The jack and jack tools are stored under the front passenger seat. Lift the flap on the side of the seat for access.

Removal (2500/3500/Mega Cab)

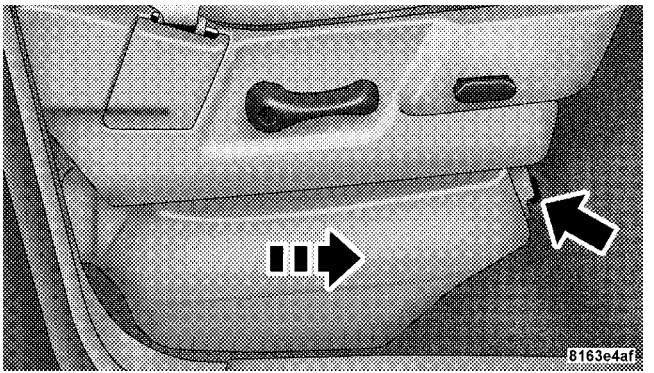
Remove the jack and tools by removing the wing bolt and sliding the assembly from under the seat.



Jack Location

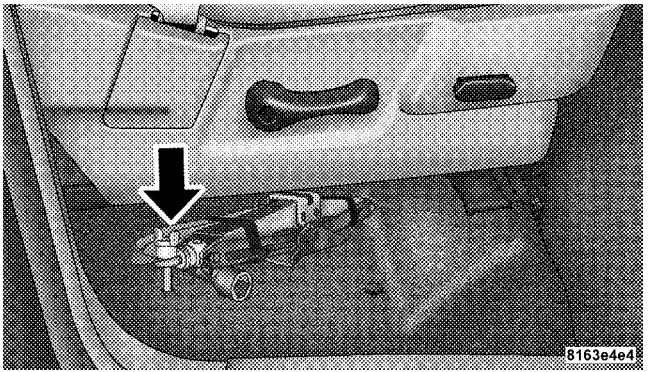
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Removal (1500 Regular Cab/Quad Cab® Vehicles)



Jack Cover

The jack and jack tools are stored under the front passenger seat. Lift the tab and slide the plastic cover forward for access.



Jack Wing Bolt

Remove the jack and tools by removing the wing bolt and sliding the assembly from under the seat.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

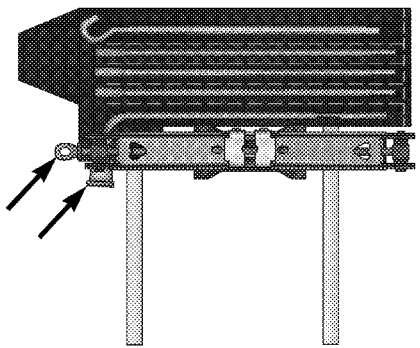
WARNING!

After using the jack and tools, always reinstall them in the original carrier and location. While driving you may experience abrupt stopping, rapid acceleration, or sharp turns. A loose jack, tools, bracket or other objects in the vehicle may move around with force, resulting in serious injury.

Reinstalling The Scissors-Type Jack And Tools (1500 Models)

1. Lower the jack all the way down by turning the jack turn-screw until the jack is snug.

2. Position the jack and tool bag (unrolled). Make sure the lug wrench is under the jack near the jack turn-screw.

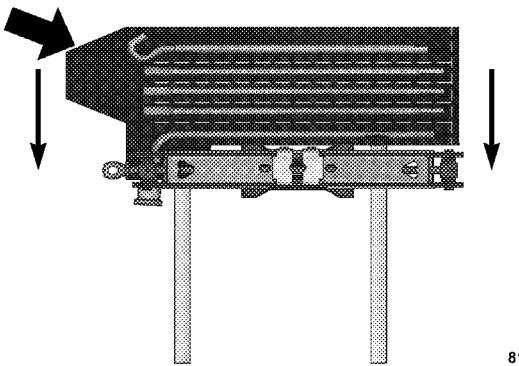


8105e6b6

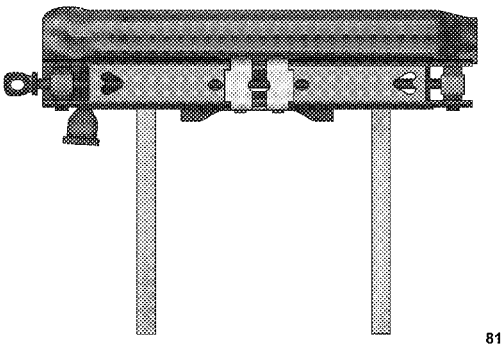
Turn Screw and Lug

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Fold the flap and roll the jack tool kit into a cylindrical package (in direction of arrows), and tie to the jack using the tie straps.

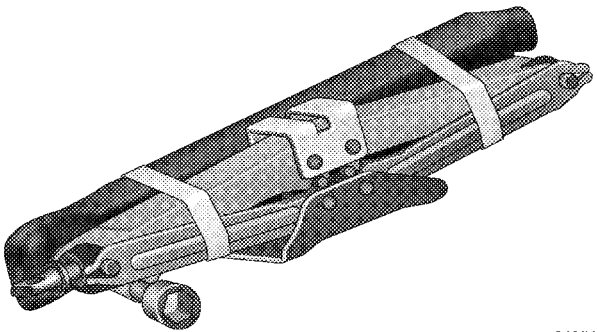


Folding Flap and Rolling Bag



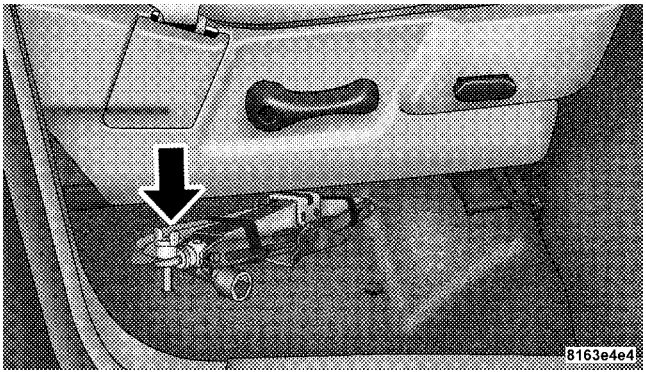
Tying Bag to Jack with Straps

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Jack and Tools Tied

4. Place the jack and tools in the storage position holding the jack by the jack turn-screw, slip the jack and tools under the seat so that the bottom slot engages into the fastener on the floor, and then secure to the floor pan using the wing bolt. Reinstall the plastic cover.



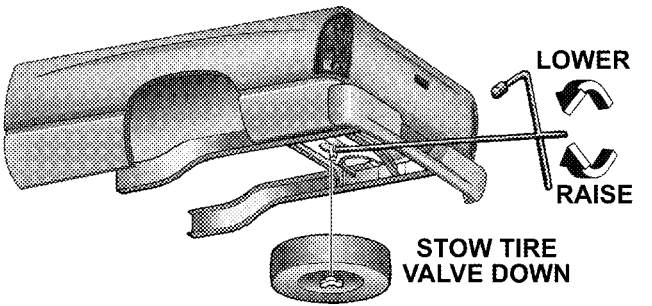
Jack Wing Bolt

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

JACKING INSTRUCTIONS

Removing The Spare Tire

Remove the spare tire before attempting to jack the truck. Attach the wheel wrench to the jack extension tube. Insert the tube through the access hole between the lower tailgate and the top of the bumper and into the winch mechanism tube. Rotate the wheel wrench handle counterclockwise until the spare tire is on the ground with enough cable slack to allow you to pull it out from under the vehicle. When the spare is clear, tilt the retainer at the end of the cable and pull it through the center of the wheel.



It is recommended that you stow the flat or spare to avoid tangling the loose cable.

NOTE: The winch mechanism is designed for use with the jack extension tube only. Use of an air wrench or other power tools is not recommended and can damage the winch.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Changing Procedure

WARNING!

Getting under a jacked-up vehicle is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and fall on you. You could be crushed. Never get any part of your body under a vehicle that is on a jack. Never start or run the engine while the vehicle is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to an authorized service center where it can be raised on a lift.

Do not raise this vehicle using a bumper jack. The jack is designed as a tool for changing tires on this vehicle only. It is not recommended that the jack be used for service purposes or to lift more than one wheel at a time.

Preparations

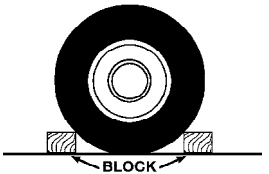
Park the vehicle on a firm level surface, avoiding ice or slippery areas. Set the parking brake and place the gear selector in PARK (automatic transmission) or REVERSE (manual transmission). On four-wheel drive vehicles, shift the transfer case to the 4L position.

WARNING!

Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

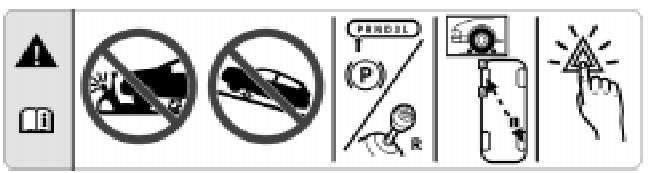
- Turn on the Hazard Warning Flasher.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



- Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite the jacking position. For example, if the right front wheel is being changed, block the left rear wheel.
- Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

Instructions



Jack Warning Label

WARNING!

Carefully follow these tire changing warnings to help prevent personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- **Always park on a firm, level surface as far from the edge of the roadway as possible before raising the vehicle.**
- **Block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be raised.**
- **Set the parking brake firmly and set an automatic transmission in park; a manual transmission in reverse.**
- **Never start or run the engine with the vehicle on a jack.**
- **Do not let anyone sit in the vehicle when it is on a jack.**
- **Do not get under the vehicle when it is on a jack.**
- **Only use the jack in the positions indicated and for lifting this vehicle during a tire change.**
- **If working on or near a roadway, be extremely careful of motor traffic.**
- **To assure that spare tires, flat or inflated are securely stowed, spares must be stowed with the valve stem facing the ground.**
- **Turn on the Hazard warning flasher.**

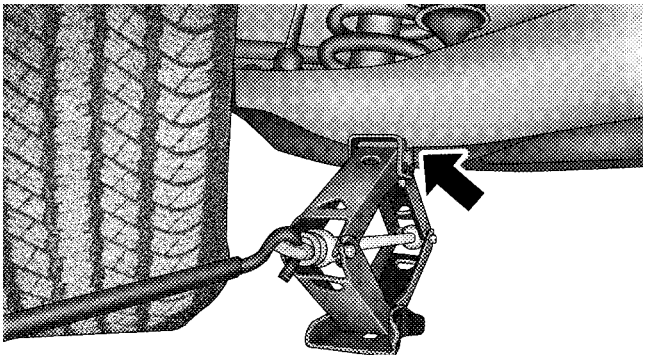
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

1. Remove the spare wheel, jack, and tools from storage.

2. Using the wheel wrench, loosen, but do not remove, the wheel nuts by turning them counterclockwise one turn while the wheel is still on the ground.

3. Placement of the Jack:

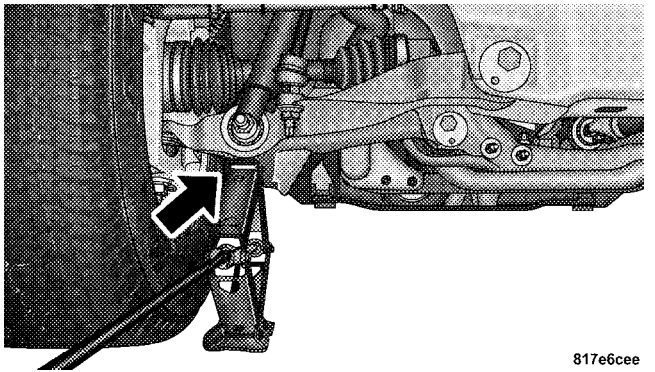
- For 1500 series trucks, when changing a front wheel, place the scissors jack under the rear portion of the lower control arm as shown below.



80ef9f80

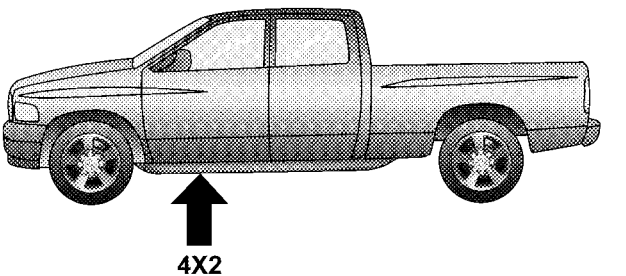
1500 4X2 Jacking Location

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



1500 4X4 Jacking Location

- For 2500/3500 4x2 series trucks, when changing a front wheel, place the bottle jack under the frame rail behind the wheel. Locate the jack as far forward as possible on the straight part of the frame.

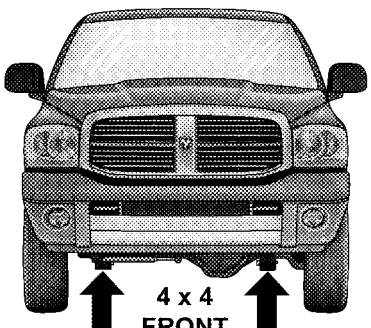


4X2 Jacking

- Operate the jack using the jack drive tube and the wheel wrench. The tube extension, may be used, but is not required.

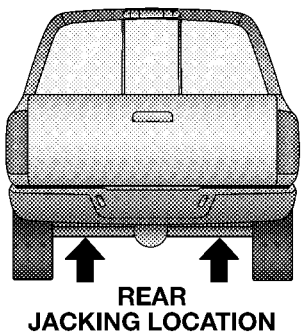
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- For 2500 / 3500 4x4 series trucks, when changing the front wheel, assemble the jack drive tube to the jack and connect the drive tube to the extension tube. Place the jack under the axle as close to the tire as possible with the drive tubes extending to the front. Connect the jack tube extension and wheel wrench.



817d213a

- For all trucks, when changing a rear wheel, assemble the jack drive tube to the jack and connect the drive tube to the extension tube. Place the jack under the axle between the spring and the shock absorber with the drive tubes extending to the rear.



80ef9fa5

Rear Jacking Location (All)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Connect the jack tube extension and wheel wrench.

  Before raising the wheel off the ground, make sure that the jack will not damage surrounding truck parts and adjust the jack position as required.

NOTE: If the 2500/3500 bottle jack will not lower by turning the dial (thumbwheel) by hand, it may be necessary to use the jack drive tube in order to lower the jack.

4. By rotating the wheel wrench clockwise, raise the vehicle until the wheel just clears the surface.

WARNING!

Raising the vehicle higher than necessary can make the vehicle unstable and cause an accident. It could slip off the jack and hurt someone near it. Raise the vehicle only enough to remove the tire.

5. Remove the wheel nuts and pull the wheel off. Install the spare wheel and wheel nuts with the cone shaped end of the nuts toward the wheel on 1500/2500/3500 single rear-wheel (SRW) models. On 3500 dual rear-wheel models (DRW) the lug nuts are a two-piece assembly with a flat face. Lightly tighten the nuts. To avoid risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not fully tighten the nuts until the vehicle has been lowered.

6. Using the wheel wrench, finish tightening the nuts using a crisscross pattern. Correct nut tightness is 135 ft lbs (183 N·m) torque for 1500/2500/3500 single-rear wheel (SRW) models, and 145 ft lbs (197 N·m) for 3500 dual rear-wheel models. If in doubt about the correct tightness, have them checked with a torque wrench by your authorized dealer or at a service station.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

A loose tire or jack thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could injure someone in the vehicle. Always stow the jack parts and the extra tire and wheel in the places provided.

7. Install wheel center cap and remove wheel blocks. Do not install chrome or aluminum wheel center caps on the spare wheel. This may result in cap damage.

8. Lower the jack to its fully closed position. If the bottle jack will not lower by turning the dial (thumbwheel) by hand, it may be necessary to use the jack drive tube in order to lower the jack. Stow the replaced tire, jack, and tools as previously described.

9. Adjust the tire pressure when possible.

NOTE: Do not oil wheel studs. For chrome wheels, do not substitute with chrome plated wheel nuts.

Hub Caps/Wheel Covers

The hub caps must be removed before raising the vehicle off the ground.

For 2500/3500 single rear-wheel (SRW) models, use the blade on the end of the lug wrench to pry the hub cap off. Insert the blade end into the pryoff notch and carefully pop off the hub cap with a back-and-forth motion.

On 3500 models with dual rear wheels (DRW), you must first remove the hub caps. The jack handle driver has a hook at one end that will fit in the pry off notch of the rear hub caps. Position the hook and pull out on the ratchet firmly. The hub cap should pop off. The wheel skins can now be removed. For the front hub cap on 3500 models use the blade on the end of the lug wrench to pry the caps off. The wheel skin can now be removed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Use a back-and-forth motion to remove the hub cap. Do not use a twisting motion when removing the hub cap, damage to the hub cap finish may occur.

CAUTION!

The rear hub caps on the dual rear wheel has two pry-off notches. Make sure that the hook of the jack handle driver is located squarely in the cap notch before attempting to pull off.

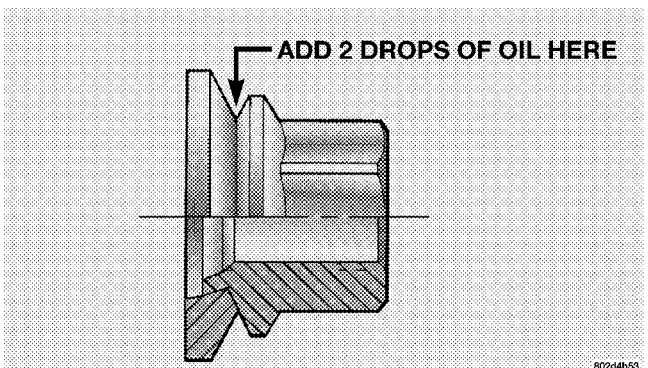
You must use the flat end of the lug wrench to pry off the wheel skins. Insert the flat tip completely and using a back-and-forth motion, loosen the wheel skin. Repeat this procedure around the tire until the skin pops off.

Replace the wheel skins first using a rubber mallet. When replacing the hub caps, tilt the cap retainer over the lugnut bolt circle and strike the high side down with a rubber mallet. Be sure that the hub caps and wheel skins are firmly seated around the wheel.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

8-Stud — Dual Rear Wheels

Dual wheels are flat-mounted and center-piloted. The lug nuts are a two-piece assembly. When the tires are being rotated or replaced, clean these lug nuts and add two drops of oil at the interface between the hex and the washer.



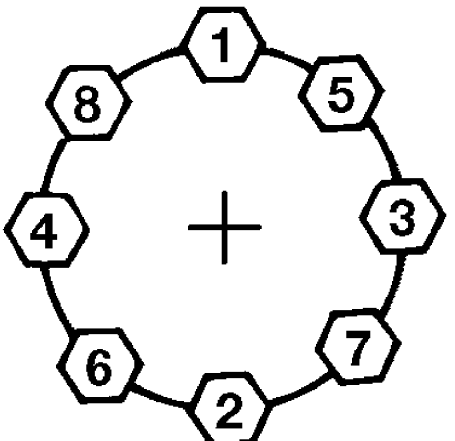
Slots in the wheels will assist in properly orienting the inner and outer wheels. Align these slots when assembling the wheels for best access to the tire valve on the inner wheel. The tires of both dual wheels must be completely off the ground when tightening, to ensure wheel centering and maximum wheel clamping.

Dual wheel models require a special heavy-duty lug nut tightening adapter (included with the vehicle) to correctly tighten the lug nuts. Also, when it is necessary to remove and install dual rear wheels, use a proper vehicle lifting device.

NOTE: When installing a spare tire as part of a dual rear wheel end combination, the tire diameter of the two individual tires must be compared. If there is a significant difference, the larger tire should be installed in a front location. Correct direction of rotation for dual tire installations must also be observed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

These dual rear wheels should be tightened as follows:



1. Tighten the wheel nuts in the numbered sequence to a snug fit.

2. Retighten the wheel nuts in the same sequence to the torques listed in the table. Go through the sequence a second time to verify that specific torque has been achieved. Retighten to specifications at 100 mi (160 km) and after 500 mi (800 km).

It is recommended that wheel stud nuts be kept torqued to specifications at all times. Torque wheel stud nuts to specifications at each lubrication interval.

Wheel Nuts

All wheel nuts should be tightened occasionally to eliminate the possibility of wheel studs being sheared or the bolt holes in the wheels becoming elongated. This is especially important during the first few hundred miles/kilometers of operation to allow the wheel nuts to become properly set. All nuts should first be firmly seated against the wheel. The nuts should then be

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

tightened to recommended torque. Tighten the nuts to final torque in increments. Progress around the bolt circle, tightening the nut opposite to the nut just previously tightened until final torque is achieved. Recommended torques are shown in the following chart.

Disc Wheels	Type Nut	Stud Size	Torque Ft. Lbs.	Torque Newton Meters
	Cone	9/16-18	120-150	160-200
	Flanged	9/16-18	130-160	190-220

To Stow The Flat Or Spare

NOTE: 1500 Regular and Quad Cab® vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels cannot be stored under the vehicle because the wheel retainer will not fit through the wheel pilot hole. Secure the (flat) tire in the bed of the truck. **Have the (flat) tire repaired or replaced immediately.**

WARNING!

A loose tire thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could injure the occupants in the vehicle. Have the deflated (flat) tire repaired or replaced immediately.

Turn the wheel so that the valve stem is down. Slide the wheel retainer through the center of the wheel and position it properly across the wheel opening.

For convenience in checking the spare tire inflation, stow with the valve stem toward the rear of the vehicle.

Attach the wheel wrench to the extension tube. Rotate the winch mechanism until the wheel is drawn into place against the underside of the vehicle. Continue to rotate until you feel the winch mechanism slip, or click three or four times. It cannot be overtightened. Push against the tire several times to be sure it is firmly in place.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

HOISTING

A conventional floor jack may be used at the jacking locations. Refer to the graphics that show jacking locations. However, a floor jack or frame hoist must never be used on any other parts or the underbody.

CAUTION!

Never use a floor jack directly under the differential housing of a loaded truck or damage to your vehicle may result.

JUMP-STARTING PROCEDURES

Do not attempt to push or tow your vehicle to get it started. Vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission cannot be started this way. Pushing or towing a vehicle equipped with a manual transmission may overheat and damage the catalytic converter. Also, there is a greater risk of an accident when a vehicle is being pushed or towed. If the vehicle has a discharged battery, booster cables may be used to obtain a start from a booster battery or the battery in another vehicle. This type of start can be dangerous if done improperly, so follow this procedure carefully.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Battery fluid is a corrosive acid solution; do not allow battery fluid to contact eyes, skin or clothing. Don't lean over battery when attaching clamps or allow the clamps to touch each other. If acid splashes in eyes or on skin, flush contaminated area immediately with large quantities of water.

A battery generates hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Keep flame or spark away from the vent holes.

Do not use a booster battery or any other booster source that has a greater than 12-volt system, i.e., do not use a 24-volt power source.

1. Remove all metal jewelry such as watch bands or bracelets which might make an unintended electrical contact.

2. Park the booster vehicle within cable reach but without letting the vehicles touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles, place the automatic transmission in PARK or the manual transmission in NEUTRAL, and turn the ignition OFF.

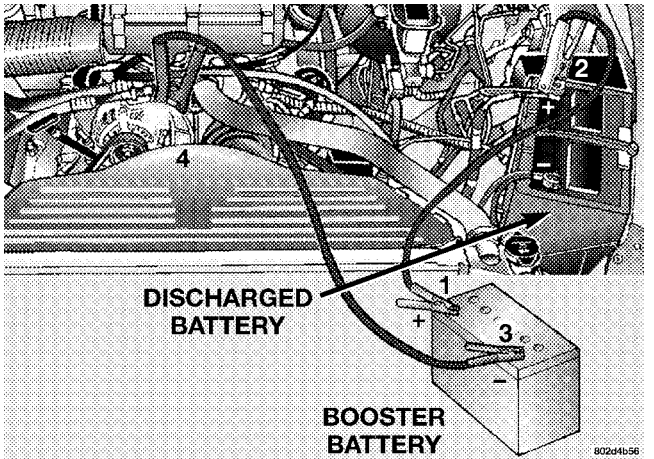
3. Turn off the heater, radio, and all unnecessary electrical loads.

4. Connect one end of a jumper cable to the positive terminal of the booster battery. Connect the other end of the same cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.

WARNING!

Do not permit vehicles to touch each other as this could establish a ground connection and personal injury could result.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



5. Connect the other cable; first to the negative terminal of the booster battery, and then to the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery. Make sure you have a good contact on the engine.

WARNING!

- **You should not try to start your vehicle by pushing or towing.**
- **Do not connect the cable to the negative post of the discharge battery. The resulting electrical spark could cause the battery to explode.**
- **During cold weather when temperatures are below freezing point, electrolyte in a discharged battery may freeze. Do not attempt jump-starting because the battery could rupture or explode. The battery temperature must be brought up above freezing point before attempting jump-start.**

6. Start the engine in the vehicle which has the booster battery, let the engine idle a few minutes, then start the engine in the vehicle with the discharged battery.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

7. When removing the jumper cables, reverse the above sequence exactly. Be careful of the moving belts and fan.

WARNING!

Any procedure other than above could result in:

1. Personal injury caused by electrolyte squirting out the battery vent;

2. Personal injury or property damage due to battery explosion;

3. Damage to charging system of booster vehicle or of immobilized vehicle.

FREEING A STUCK VEHICLE

If the vehicle becomes stuck in snow, sand, or mud, it can often be moved by a rocking motion. Move the gear selector rhythmically between DRIVE and REVERSE (automatic transmissions) or between 1st and REVERSE (manual transmissions), while applying slight pressure to the accelerator.

In general, the least amount of accelerator pedal pressure to maintain the rocking motion without spinning the wheels or racing the engine, is most effective. Racing the engine or spinning the wheels, due to the frustration of not freeing the vehicle, may lead to transmission overheating and failure. Allow the engine to idle with the transmission selector in NEUTRAL for at least one minute after every five rocking-motion cycles. This will minimize overheating and reduce the risk of transmission failure during prolonged efforts to free a stuck vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

EMERGENCY TOW HOOKS — IF EQUIPPED

Your vehicle may be equipped with emergency tow hooks.

NOTE: For off-road recovery, it is recommended to use both of the front tow hooks to minimize the risk of damage to the vehicle.

WARNING!

Chains are not recommended for freeing a stuck vehicle. Chains may break, causing serious injury or death.

WARNING!

Stand clear of vehicles when pulling with tow hooks. Tow straps and chains may break, causing serious injury.

CAUTION!

Tow hooks are for emergency use only, to rescue a vehicle stranded off-road. Do not use tow hooks for tow truck hookup or highway towing. You could damage your vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE

Proper towing or lifting equipment is required to prevent damage to your vehicle. Use only tow bars and other equipment designed for the purpose, following equipment manufacturer's instructions. Use of safety chains is mandatory. Attach a tow bar or other towing device to the main structural members of the vehicle—not to bumpers or associated brackets. State and local laws applying to vehicles under tow must be observed.

4-Wheel Drive Vehicles

CAUTION!

To avoid damage to the transfer case while towing, always use one of the following methods.

NOTE: The transfer case must be in the neutral position, and the transmission must be in PARK (automatic transmission), or in gear (manual transmission) to tow a 4WD vehicle with one end of the vehicle raised.

The manufacturer recommends towing with all wheels **OFF** the ground. Acceptable methods are to tow the vehicle on a flatbed or with one end of vehicle raised and the opposite end on a towing dolly.

2–Wheel Drive Vehicles

Provided that the transmission is operable, tow with the transmission in NEUTRAL and the ignition key in the OFF position along with the front wheels raised and the rear wheels on the ground. Speed must not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h) and distance must not exceed 15 mi (25 km).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Towing faster than 30 mph (50 km/h) or for more than 15 mi (25 km) can cause severe damage to the transmission.

If the vehicle is to be towed faster than 30 mph (50 km / h) or more than 15 mi (25 km) the vehicle must be towed with the rear wheels raised and the front wheels on the ground. It may also be towed on a flatbed or with the front wheels raised and the rear wheels on a dolly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

MAINTAINING YOUR VEHICLE

CONTENTS

- Engine Compartment— 3.7L 444
- Engine Compartment— 4.7L 445
- Engine Compartment— 5.7L 446
- Onboard Diagnostic System (OBD II) 447
  - Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message 447
- Emissions Inspection And Maintenance Programs 448
- Replacement Parts 449
- Authorized Dealer Service 450
- Maintenance Procedures 450
  - Engine Oil 451
  - Engine Oil Filter 454
  - Drive Belts — Check Condition And Tension . .454
  - Spark Plugs (Gas Engines) 454
  - Engine Air Cleaner Filter 455
  - Engine Fuel Filter 455
  - Catalytic Converter 455
  - Emission-Related Components 457

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Maintenance-Free Battery 457
- Air Conditioner Maintenance 459
- Power Steering — Fluid Check 460
- Front Suspension Ball Joints 460
- Steering Linkage — Inspection 461
- Half-Shaft Constant Velocity Joints 461
- Front Prop Shaft Lubrication — 2500/3500 (4X4) Models 462
- Body Lubrication 462
- Windshield Wiper Blades 463
- Windshield Washers 463
- Exhaust System 464
- Cooling System 465
- Hoses And Vacuum/Vapor Harnesses 470
- Fuel System Connections 471
- Brake System 471
- Clutch Hydraulic System 474
- Clutch Linkage 474
- Rear Axle And 4X4 Front Driving Axle Fluid Level 474
- Transfer Case 475
- Manual Transmission 476
- Automatic Transmission 476
- Front And Rear Wheel Bearings 479

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- □ Noise Control System Required Maintenance & Warranty For 3500 2-Wheel Drive And 4-Wheel Drive Models Over 10,000 Lbs. (4 535 Kg) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. 480
- □ Appearance Care And Protection From Corrosion 484

■ Fuses (Integrated Power Module) 489

■ Vehicle Storage 493

■ Replacement Light Bulbs 494

■ Bulb Replacement 495

- □ Headlight (Halogen)/Front Park And Turn Lights 495
- □ Fog Lights 498
- □ Tail, Stop, Turn And Backup Lights 499
- □ Center High-Mounted Stoplight (CHMSL) With Cargo Light 502
- □ Cab Top Clearance Lights — If Equipped 503
- □ Tailgate ID Lights (Dual Rear Wheels) — If Equipped 505
- □ Rear Light Bar ID Marker (Dual Rear Wheel) — If Equipped 506
- □ Side Marker Lights (Dual Rear Wheels) 507

■ Fluids And Capacities 508

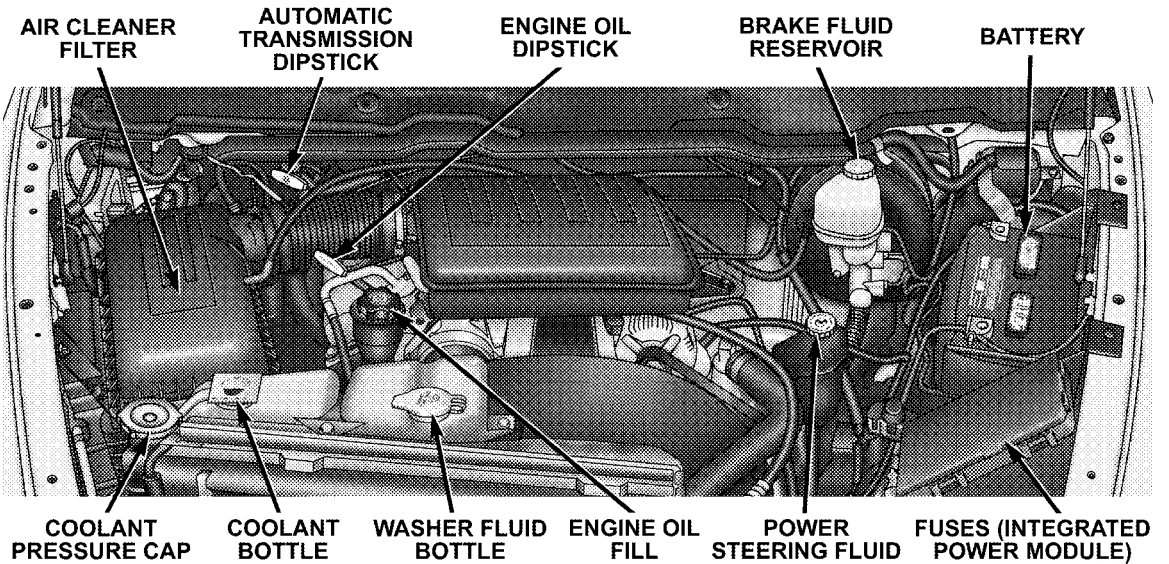
■ Fluids, Lubricants And Genuine Parts 510

- □ Engine 510
- □ Chassis 511

7

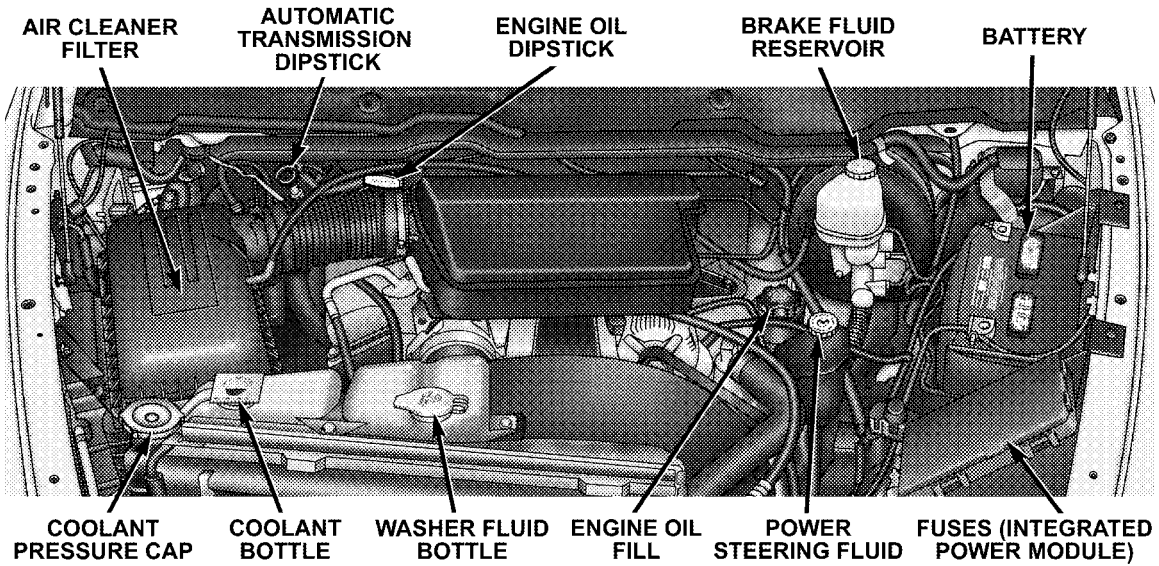
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

ENGINE COMPARTMENT— 3.7L



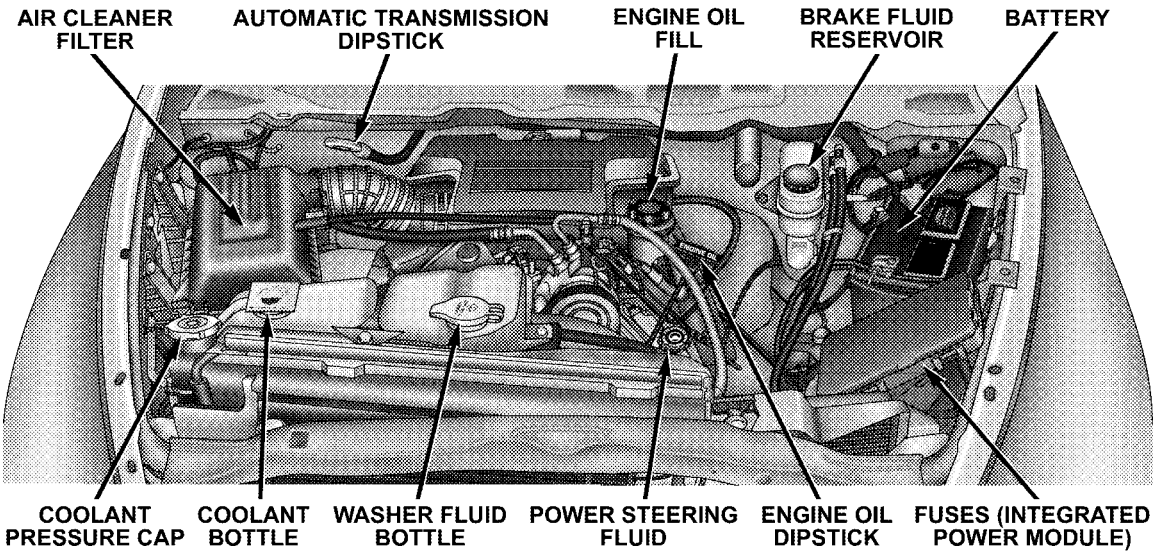
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

ENGINE COMPARTMENT— 4.7L



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

ENGINE COMPARTMENT— 5.7L



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

ONBOARD DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM (OBD II)

Your vehicle is equipped with a sophisticated onboard diagnostic system called OBDII. This system monitors the performance of the emissions, engine, and automatic transmission control systems. When these systems are operating properly, your vehicle will provide excellent performance and fuel economy, as well as engine emissions well within current government regulations.

If any of these systems require service, the OBD II system will turn on the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL). It will also store diagnostic codes and other information to assist your service technician in making repairs. Although your vehicle will usually be drivable and not need towing, see your authorized dealer for service as soon as possible.

CAUTION!

Prolonged driving with the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) on could cause further damage to the emission control system. It could also affect fuel economy and drivability. The vehicle must be serviced before any emissions tests can be performed.

If the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) is flashing, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.

Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message

If the vehicle's diagnostic system determines that the fuel filler cap in loose, improperly installed, or damaged, a GASCAP message will be displayed in the instrument cluster. Tighten the gas cap until a "clicking" sound is heard. This is an indication that the gas cap is properly

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

tightened. Press the odometer reset button to turn the message off. If the problem persists, the message will appear the next time the vehicle is started. This might indicate a damaged cap. If the problem is detected twice in a row, the system will turn on the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL). Resolving the problem will turn the MIL light off.

EMISSIONS INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE PROGRAMS

In some localities, it may be a legal requirement to pass an inspection of your vehicle's emissions control system. Failure to pass could prevent vehicle registration.

For states which have an Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) requirement, this check verifies the following: the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) is functioning and is not on when the engine is running, and that the On Board Diagnostic (OBD) system is ready for testing.

Normally, the OBD system will be ready. The OBD system may **not** be ready if your vehicle was recently serviced, if you recently had a dead battery, or a battery replacement. If the OBD system should be determined not ready for the I/M test, your vehicle may fail the test.

Your vehicle has a simple ignition key actuated test which you can use prior to going to the test station. To check if your vehicle's OBD system is ready, you must do the following:

1. Insert your ignition key into the ignition switch.

2. Turn the ignition to the ON position, but do not crank or start the engine.

3. If you crank or start the engine, you will have to start this test over.

4. As soon as you turn your key to the ON position, you will see your MIL symbol come on as part of a normal bulb check.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. Approximately 15 seconds later, one of two things will happen:

a. The MIL will blink for approximately five seconds and then remain on until the first engine crank or the key is turned off. This means that your vehicle's OBD system is **not ready** and you should **not** proceed to the I/M station.

b. The MIL will remain fully illuminated until the first engine crank or the key is turned off. This means that your vehicle's OBD system is **ready** and you can proceed to the I/M station.

If your OBD system is **not ready,** you should see your authorized dealer or repair facility. If your vehicle was recently serviced, or had a battery failure or replacement, you may need to do nothing more than drive your vehicle as you normally would in order for your OBD system to update. A recheck with the above test routine may then indicate that the system is now ready.

Regardless of whether your vehicle's OBD system is ready or not ready, if the MIL symbol is illuminated during normal vehicle operation, you should have your vehicle serviced before going to the I/M station. The I/M station can fail your vehicle because the MIL symbol is on with the engine running.

REPLACEMENT PARTS

Use of genuine Mopar® parts for normal/scheduled maintenance and repairs is highly recommended to ensure the designed performance. Damage or failures caused by the use of non-Mopar® parts for maintenance and repairs will not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

AUTHORIZED DEALER SERVICE

Your authorized dealer has the qualified service personnel, special tools and equipment to perform all service operations in an expert manner. Service manuals are available which include detailed service information for your vehicle. Refer to these manuals before attempting any procedure yourself.

NOTE: Intentional tampering with emissions control systems can result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

WARNING!

You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only that service work for which you have the knowledge and the proper equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

The pages that follow contain the **required** maintenance services determined by the engineers who designed your vehicle.

Besides the maintenance items for which there are fixed maintenance intervals, there are other items that should operate satisfactorily without periodic maintenance. However, if a malfunction of these items does occur, it could adversely affect the engine or vehicle performance. These items should be inspected if a malfunction is observed or suspected.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Oil

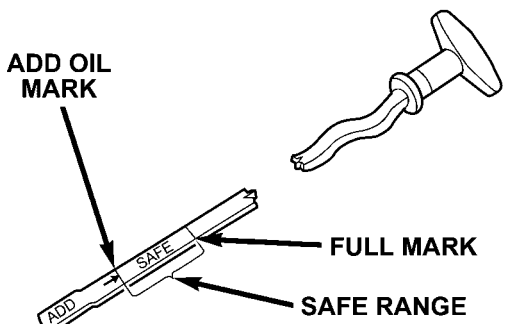
Checking Oil Level

To assure proper lubrication of your vehicle's engine, the engine oil must be maintained at the correct level. The best time to check the engine oil level is about five minutes after a fully warmed up engine is shut off or before starting the engine after it has sat overnight.

Checking the oil while the vehicle is on level ground will improve the accuracy of the oil level readings. Always maintain the oil level within the SAFE zone on the dipstick. Adding one quart of oil when the reading is at the bottom of the SAFE zone will result in a reading at the top of the safe zone on these engines.

CAUTION!

Overfilling or underfilling the crankcase will cause oil aeration or loss of oil pressure. This could damage your engine.



80bd0aae

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Change Engine Oil

Follow the Maintenance Schedule for recommended engine oil change intervals.

Engine Oil Selection

For best performance and maximum protection under all types of operating conditions, the manufacturer only recommends engine oils that are API-certified and meet the requirements of DaimlerChrysler Material Standard MS-6395.

American Petroleum Institute (API) Engine Oil Identification Symbol

This symbol means that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API). The manufacturer only recommends API-Certified engine oils.

Engine Oil Viscosity (SAE Grade)

SAE 5W-20 engine oil is recommended for all operating temperatures. This engine oil improves low temperature starting and vehicle fuel economy. The engine oil filler cap also shows the recommended engine oil viscosity for your engine. For information on engine oil filler cap location, refer to the “Engine Compartment” illustration in this section.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: Vehicles equipped with a 5.7L engine must use SAE 5W-20 oil. Failure to do so may result in improper operation of the Multi-Displacement System (MDS). Refer to "Multi-Displacement System" under "Starting and Operating" in Section 5.

NOTE: For 2500/3500 trucks with a 5.7L engine operating under a gross combined weight rating of 14,000 lbs. or greater, SAE 5W-30 engine oil is recommended for all operating temperatures.

Lubricants, which do not have both the engine oil certification mark and the correct SAE viscosity grade number, should not be used.

Synthetic Engine Oils

You may use synthetic engine oils if the recommended oil quality requirements are met, and the recommended maintenance intervals for oil and filter changes are followed.

Materials Added to Engine Oil

The manufacturer strongly recommends against the addition of any additives (other than leak detection dyes) to the engine oil. Engine oil is an engineered product and its performance may be impaired by supplemental additives.

Disposing of Used Engine Oil and Oil Filters

Care should be taken in disposing of used engine oil and oil filters from your vehicle. Used oil and oil filters, indiscriminately discarded, can present a problem to the environment. Contact your authorized dealer, service station, or governmental agency for advice on how and where used oil and oil filters can be safely discarded in your area.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Oil Filter

The engine oil filter should be replaced at every engine oil change.

Engine Oil Filter Selection

The manufacturer's engines have a full-flow type oil filter. Use a filter of this type for replacement. The quality of replacement filters varies considerably. Only high-quality filters should be used to assure most efficient service. Mopar Engine Oil Filters are a high-quality oil filter and are recommended.

Drive Belts — Check Condition and Tension

Belt tension is controlled by means of an automatic tensioner. No belt tension adjustments are required. However, belt and belt tensioner condition should be inspected at the specified intervals and replaced if required. See your authorized dealer for service.

At the mileage indicated in the maintenance schedule, all belts and tensioner should be checked for condition. Improper belt tension can cause belt slippage and failure.

Belts should be inspected for evidence of cuts, cracks, glazing or frayed cords and replaced if there is indication of damage which could result in belt failure. Low generator belt tension can cause battery failure.

Also check belt routing to make sure there is no interference between the belts and other engine components.

Spark Plugs (Gas Engines)

Spark plugs must fire properly to assure engine performance and emission control. New plugs should be installed at the specified mileage. The entire set should be replaced if there is any malfunction due to a faulty spark plug. Malfunctioning spark plugs can damage the catalytic converter. For proper type of replacement spark plugs, refer to the "Spark Plugs" under "Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts" in Section 7.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Air Cleaner Filter

Follow the Maintenance Schedule for recommended Engine Air Cleaner Filter change intervals.

WARNING!

The air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) can provide a measure of protection in the case of engine backfire. Do not remove the air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) unless such removal is necessary for repair or maintenance. Make sure that no one is near the engine compartment before starting the vehicle with the air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) removed. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injury.

Engine Fuel Filter

A plugged fuel filter can cause stalling, limit the speed at which a vehicle can be driven or cause hard starting. Should an excessive amount of dirt accumulate in the fuel tank, frequent filter replacement may be necessary.

Catalytic Converter

The catalytic converter requires the use of unleaded fuel only. Leaded gasoline will destroy the effectiveness of the catalyst as an emission control device.

Under normal operating conditions, the catalytic converter will not require maintenance. However, it is important to keep the engine properly tuned to assure proper catalyst operation and prevent possible catalyst damage.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Damage to the catalytic converter can result if your vehicle is not kept in proper operating condition. In the event of engine malfunction, particularly involving engine misfire or other apparent loss of performance, have your vehicle serviced promptly. Continued operation of your vehicle with a severe malfunction could cause the converter to overheat, resulting in possible damage to the converter and the vehicle.

NOTE: Intentional tampering with emissions control systems can result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

WARNING!

A hot exhaust system can start a fire if you park over materials that can burn. Such materials might be grass or leaves coming into contact with your exhaust system. Do not park or operate your vehicle in areas where your exhaust system can contact anything that can burn.

In unusual situations involving grossly malfunctioning engine operation, a scorching odor may indicate severe and abnormal catalyst overheating. If this occurs, the vehicle should be stopped, the engine shut off and the vehicle allowed to cool. Thereafter, service, including a tune-up to manufacturer's specifications, should be obtained immediately.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To minimize the possibility of catalyst damage:

- Do not shut off the engine or interrupt the ignition when the transmission is in gear and the vehicle is in motion.
- Do not try to start the engine by pushing or towing the vehicle.
- Do not idle the engine with any spark plug wires disconnected or removed, such as when diagnostic testing, or for prolonged periods during very rough idling or malfunctioning operating conditions.

Emission-Related Components

Positive Crankcase Valve (PCV)

Proper operation of the crankcase ventilation system requires that the PCV valve be free of sticking or plugging from deposits. Deposits can accumulate in the PCV valve and passages with increasing mileage. Have the PCV valve, hoses, and passages checked for proper operation at the intervals specified. If the valve is plugged or sticking, replace with a new valve— **do not attempt to clean the old PCV valve!** Check the ventilation hoses for indications of damage, weepage or plugging with deposits. Replace if necessary.

Maintenance-Free Battery

The top of the maintenance-free battery is permanently sealed. You will never have to add water, nor is periodic maintenance required.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

- **Battery fluid is a corrosive acid solution and can burn or even blind you. Don't allow battery fluid to contact your eyes, skin or clothing. Don't lean over a battery when attaching clamps. If acid splashes in eyes or on skin, flush the area immediately with large amounts of water.**
- **Battery gas is flammable and explosive. Keep flame or sparks away from the battery. Don't use a booster battery or any other booster source with an output greater than 12 volts. Don't allow cable clamps to touch each other.**
- **Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.**

CAUTION!

- **It is essential when replacing the cables on the battery that the positive cable is attached to the positive post and the negative cable is attached to the negative post. Battery posts are marked (+) positive and (-) negative and identified on the battery case.**
- **If a "fast charger" is used while the battery is in the vehicle, disconnect both vehicle battery cables before connecting the charger to the battery. Do not use a "fast charger" to provide starting voltage.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Air Conditioner Maintenance

For best possible performance, your air conditioner should be checked and serviced by an Authorized Dealer at the start of each warm season. This service should include cleaning of the condenser fins and a performance test. Drive belt tension should also be checked at this time.

NOTE: Refer to Section 3 of the Warranty Information book for further warranty information.

WARNING!

- **Use only refrigerants and compressor lubricants approved by the manufacturer for your air conditioning system. Some unapproved refrigerants are flammable and can explode, injuring you. Other unapproved refrigerants or lubricants can cause the system to fail, requiring costly repairs.**
- **The air conditioning system contains refrigerant under high pressure. To avoid risk of personal injury or damage to the system, adding refrigerant or any repair requiring lines to be disconnected should be done by an experienced repairman.**

NOTE: Use only manufacturer approved A/C System Sealers, Stop Leak Products, Seal Conditioners, Compressor Oil, or Refrigerants.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Refrigerant Recovery and Recycling

R-134a Air Conditioning Refrigerant is a hydrofluorocarbon (HFC) that is endorsed by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and is an ozone-saving product. However, the manufacturer recommends that air conditioning service be performed by authorized dealers or other service facilities using recovery and recycling equipment.

Power Steering — Fluid Check

Checking the power steering fluid level at a defined service interval is not required. The fluid should only be checked if a leak is suspected, abnormal noises are apparent, and/or the system is not functioning as anticipated. Coordinate inspection efforts through an authorized dealer.

WARNING!

Fluid level should be checked on a level surface and with the engine off to prevent injury from moving parts and to ensure accurate fluid level reading. Do not overfill. Use only manufacturers recommended power steering fluid.

If necessary, add fluid to restore to the proper indicated level. With a clean cloth, wipe any spilled fluid from all surfaces. Refer to “Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts” in this section for correct fluid type.

Front Suspension Ball Joints

4 x 2 Models

The ball joints and seals should be inspected whenever the vehicle is serviced for other reasons.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The ball joints originally supplied with the vehicle are permanently lubricated at the factory and do not require service. However, if the seals on the ball joints are damaged, the joints should be replaced. Serviceable replacement ball joints are available.

Front suspension ball joints should be replaced only by a qualified service technician using tools specially designed for this purpose. Damage to the joints and/or suspension components may result if improper replacement procedures are used.

If seals are damaged the ball joints should be replaced to prevent leakage or contamination of the grease.

Steering Linkage — Inspection

Whenever the vehicle is hoisted, all steering linkage joints should be inspected for evidence of damage. If seals are damaged, parts should be replaced to prevent leakage or contamination of the grease. Lubricate the steering linkage regularly according to the "Maintenance Schedule" in this manual.

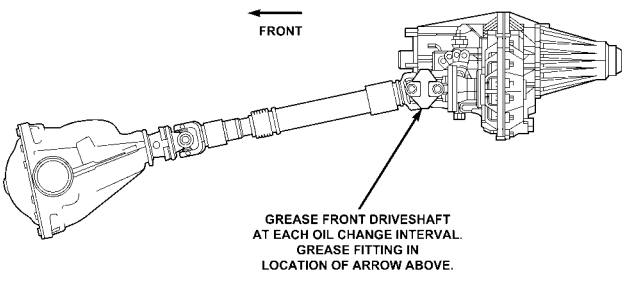
Half-shaft Constant Velocity Joints

All four-wheel drive 1500 models are equipped with four constant velocity joints. Periodic lubrication of these joints is not required. However, the joint boots should be inspected for external leakage or damage, periodically. If external leakage or damage is evident, the joint boot and grease should be replaced immediately. Continued operation could result in failure of the joint due to water and dirt contamination of the grease. This would require complete replacement of the joint assembly. Refer to the Service Manual for the detailed replacement procedure.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Front Prop Shaft Lubrication — 2500/3500 (4X4) Models

Lubricate the front driveshaft grease fitting at each oil change listed in the appropriate Maintenance Schedule for your vehicle. Use Mopar® type MS-6560 (lithium-based grease), or equivalent.



Front Driveshaft Grease Fitting

Body Lubrication

Locks and all body pivot points, including such items as seat tracks, doors, liftgate, tailgate, sliding doors and hood hinges, should be lubricated periodically to assure quiet, easy operation and to protect against rust and wear. Prior to the application of any lubricant, the parts concerned should be wiped clean to remove dust and grit. After lubricating, excess oil and grease should be removed. Particular attention should also be given to hood latching components to ensure proper function. When performing other underhood services, the hood latch, release mechanism and safety catch should be cleaned and lubricated. The external lock cylinders should be lubricated twice a year, preferably in the Fall and Spring. Apply a small amount of a high-quality lubricant such as Mopar® Lock Cylinder Lubricant directly into the lock cylinder.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Windshield Wiper Blades

The rubber edges of the wiper blades and the windshield should be cleaned periodically with a sponge or soft cloth and a mild nonabrasive cleaner. This will remove accumulations of salt or road film.

Operation of the wipers on dry glass for long periods may cause deterioration of the wiper blades. Always use washer fluid when using the wipers to remove salt or dirt from a dry windshield.

Avoid using the wiper blades to remove frost or ice from the windshield. Keep the blade rubber out of contact with petroleum products such as engine oil, gasoline, etc.

Windshield Washers

The fluid reservoir is located under the hood and should be checked for fluid level at regular intervals. Fill the reservoir with windshield washer solvent only (not radiator antifreeze). When refilling the washer fluid reservoir, take some washer fluid and apply it to a cloth or towel and wipe clean the wiper blades, this will help blade performance.

To prevent freeze-up of your windshield washer system in cold weather, select a solution or mixture that meets or exceeds the temperature range of your climate. This rating information can be found on most washer fluid containers.

The washer fluid reservoir will hold a full gallon of fluid when the Low Washer Fluid Light illuminates.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Commercially available windshield washer solvents are flammable. They could ignite and burn you. Care must be exercised when filling or working around the washer solution.

After the engine has warmed, operate the defroster for a few minutes to reduce the possibility of smearing or freezing the fluid on the cold windshield. Mopar® All Weather Windshield Washer Solution, used with water as directed on the container, aids cleaning action, reduces the freezing point to avoid line clogging, and is not harmful to paint or trim.

Exhaust System

The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system, when exhaust fumes can be detected inside the vehicle, or when the underside or rear of the vehicle is damaged, have a competent mechanic inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken, damaged, deteriorated, or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, inspect the exhaust system each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace as required.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Exhaust gases can injure or kill. They contain carbon monoxide (CO) which is colorless and odorless. Breathing it can make you unconscious and can eventually poison you. To avoid breathing CO, refer to Exhaust Gas in the Safety Tips section of this manual.

Exhaust System Rubber Isolator and Loop-Type Hanger — If Equipped

Inspect surfaces whenever the vehicle is hoisted for rubber to metal separation or deep cracks. SLIGHT CRACKING DUE TO WEATHERING DOES NOT ADVERSELY AFFECT PERFORMANCE. If, however, excessively deep localized cracks are present, or any part of the exhaust system abnormally contacts the underbody hardware, the isolator and/or hanger should be replaced.

Cooling System

WARNING!

You or others can be badly burned by hot coolant or steam from your radiator. If you see or hear steam coming from under the hood, don't open the hood until the radiator has had time to cool. Never try to open a cooling system pressure cap when the radiator is hot.

Engine Coolant Checks

Check the engine coolant (antifreeze) protection every 12 months (before the onset of freezing weather, where applicable). If coolant is dirty or rusty in appearance, the system should be drained, flushed and refilled with fresh coolant. Check the front of the A/C condenser for any

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

accumulation of bugs, leaves, etc. If dirty, clean by gently spraying water from a garden hose vertically down the face of the condenser.

Check the coolant recovery bottle tubing for brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts and tightness of the connection at the bottle and radiator. Inspect the entire system for leaks.

With the engine at normal operating temperature (but not running), check the cooling system pressure cap for proper vacuum sealing by draining a small amount of coolant from the radiator drain cock. If the cap is sealing properly, the engine coolant (antifreeze) will begin to drain from the coolant recovery bottle. DO NOT REMOVE THE COOLANT PRESSURE CAP WHEN THE COOLING SYSTEM IS HOT.

Cooling System — Drain, Flush and Refill

At the intervals shown on the Maintenance Schedules, the system should be drained, flushed and refilled.

If the solution is dirty or contains a considerable amount of sediment, clean and flush with a reliable cooling system cleaner. Follow with a thorough rinsing to remove all deposits and chemicals. Properly dispose of old antifreeze solution.

Selection Of Coolant

Use only the manufacturer's recommended coolant; for correct coolant type, refer to "Engine Coolant" under "Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts" in this section.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

- **Mixing of coolants other than specified HOAT engine coolants, may result in engine damage and may decrease corrosion protection. If a non-HOAT coolant is introduced into the cooling system in an emergency, it should be replaced with the specified coolant as soon as possible.**
- **Do not use plain water alone or alcohol-base engine coolant (antifreeze) products. Do not use additional rust inhibitors or antirust products, as they may not be compatible with the radiator engine coolant and may plug the radiator.**
- **This vehicle has not been designed for use with Propylene Glycol based coolants. Use of Propylene Glycol based coolants is not recommended.**

Adding Coolant

Your vehicle has been built with an improved engine coolant that allows extended maintenance intervals. This coolant can be used up to 5 Years or 100,000 miles (160 000 km) before replacement. To prevent reducing this extended maintenance period, it is important that you use the same coolant throughout the life of your vehicle. Please review these recommendations for using Hybrid Organic Additive Technology (HOAT) coolant. When adding coolant:

- The manufacturer recommends using Mopar® Antifreeze / Coolant 5 Year / 100,000 Mile Formula HOAT (Hybrid Organic Additive Technology).
- Mix a minimum solution of 50% HOAT engine coolant and distilled water. Use higher concentrations (not to exceed 70%) if temperatures below -34°F (-37°C) are anticipated.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Use only high purity water such as distilled or deionized water when mixing the water/engine coolant solution. The use of lower quality water will reduce the amount of corrosion protection in the engine cooling system.

Please note that it is the owner's responsibility to maintain the proper level of protection against freezing according to the temperatures occurring in the area where the vehicle is operated.

NOTE: Mixing coolant types will decrease the life of the engine coolant and will require more frequent coolant changes.

Cooling System Pressure Cap

The cap must be fully tightened to prevent loss of coolant, and to ensure that coolant will return to the radiator from the coolant recovery bottle.

The cap should be inspected and cleaned if there is any accumulation of foreign material on the sealing surfaces.

WARNING!

- **The warning words "DO NOT OPEN HOT" on the cooling system pressure cap are a safety precaution. Never add coolant when the engine is overheated. Do not loosen or remove the cap to cool an overheated engine. Heat causes pressure to build up in the cooling system. To prevent scalding or injury, do not remove the pressure cap while the system is hot or under pressure.**
- **Do not use a pressure cap other than the one specified for your vehicle. Personal injury or engine damage may result.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Disposal of Used Engine Coolant

Used ethylene glycol-based engine coolant is a regulated substance requiring proper disposal. Check with your local authorities to determine the disposal rules for your community. To prevent ingestion by animals or children do not store ethylene glycol-based engine coolant in open containers or allow it to remain in puddles on the ground. If ingested by a child, contact a physician immediately. Clean up any ground spills immediately.

Coolant Level

The coolant bottle provides a quick visual method for determining that the coolant level is adequate. With the engine cold, the level of the coolant in the coolant recovery bottle should be between the ranges indicated on the bottle.

The radiator normally remains completely full, so there is no need to remove the radiator cap unless checking for coolant freeze point or replacing coolant. Advise your service attendant of this. As long as the engine operating temperature is satisfactory, the coolant bottle need only be checked once a month.

When additional coolant is needed to maintain the proper level, it should be added to the coolant bottle. Do not overfill.

Points To Remember

NOTE: When the vehicle is stopped after a few miles (a few kilometers) of operation, you may observe vapor coming from the front of the engine compartment. This is normally a result of moisture from rain, snow, or high humidity accumulating on the radiator and being vaporized when the thermostat opens, allowing hot coolant to enter the radiator.

If an examination of your engine compartment shows no evidence of radiator or hose leaks, the vehicle may be safely driven. The vapor will soon dissipate.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Do not overfill the coolant recovery bottle.
- Check coolant freeze point in the radiator and in the coolant recovery bottle. If antifreeze needs to be added, contents of coolant recovery bottle must also be protected against freezing.
- If frequent coolant additions are required, or if the level in the coolant recovery bottle does not drop when the engine cools, the cooling system should be pressure tested for leaks.
- Maintain coolant concentration at 50% HOAT engine coolant (minimum) and distilled water for proper corrosion protection of your engine, which contains aluminum components.
- Make sure that the radiator and coolant recovery bottle overflow hoses are not kinked or obstructed.
- Keep the front of the radiator clean. If your vehicle is equipped with air conditioning, keep the front of the condenser clean, also.
- Do not change the thermostat for Summer or Winter operation. If replacement is ever necessary, install ONLY the correct type thermostat. Other designs may result in unsatisfactory coolant performance, poor gas mileage, and increased emissions.

Hoses And Vacuum/Vapor Harnesses

Inspect surfaces of hoses and nylon tubing for evidence of heat and mechanical damage. Hard or soft spots, brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration of the rubber.

Pay particular attention to those hoses nearest to high heat sources such as the exhaust manifold. Inspect hose routing to be sure hoses do not come in contact with any heat source or moving component which may cause heat damage or mechanical wear.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Ensure nylon tubing in these areas has not melted or collapsed.

Inspect all hose connections such as clamps and couplings to make sure they are secure and no leaks are present.

Components should be replaced immediately if there is any evidence of wear or damage that could cause failure.

Fuel System Connections

Electronic Fuel Injection high pressure fuel systems are designed with tubes and special connects, connections and clamps which have unique material characteristics to provide adequate sealing and resist attack by deteriorated gasoline.

You are urged to use only the manufacture's specified tubes, connections and clamps, or their equivalent in material and specification, in any fuel system servicing.

Brake System

Power Disc Brakes (Front and Rear)

Disc brakes do not require adjustment; however, several hard stops during the break-in period are recommended to seat the linings and wear off any foreign material.

Brake and Power Steering Hoses

When the vehicle is serviced for scheduled maintenance, inspect surface of hoses and nylon tubing for evidence of heat and mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasion, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration of the rubber. Particular attention should be made to examining those hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold.

Ensure nylon tubing in these areas has not melted or collapsed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Inspect all hose connections such as clamps and couplings to make sure they are secure and no leaks are present.

NOTE: Often, fluid such as oil, power steering fluid, and brake fluid are used during assembly plant operations to facilitate the assembly of hoses to couplings. Therefore, oil wetness at the hose-coupling area is not necessarily an indication of leakage. Actual dripping of hot fluid when systems are under pressure (during vehicle operation), should be noted before hose is replaced based on leakage.

NOTE: Inspection of brake hoses should be performed whenever the brake system is serviced and every engine oil change. Inspect hydraulic brake hoses for surface cracking, scuffing, or worn spots. If there is any evidence of cracking, scuffing, or worn spots, the hose should be replaced immediately! Eventual deterioration of the hose can take place resulting in a possibility of a burst failure.

WARNING!

Worn brake hoses can burst and cause brake failure. You could have an accident. If you see any signs of cracking, scuffing, or worn spots, have the brake hoses replaced immediately.

Brake Master Cylinder — Brake Fluid Level Check

The fluid level of the master cylinder should be checked when performing under the hood service, or immediately if the brake system warning lamp indicates system failure.

The brake master cylinder has a translucent plastic reservoir. On the outboard side of the reservoir, there is a “MAX” dot and an “MIN” dot. The fluid level must be kept within these two dots. Do not add fluid above the MAX mark, because leakage may occur at the cap.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

With disc brakes the fluid level can be expected to fall as the brake linings wear. However, an unexpected drop in fluid level may be caused by a leak and a system check should be conducted.

For correct fluid type, refer to ”Brake Master Cylinder” under “Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts” in this section.

WARNING!

Use of a brake fluid that may have a lower initial boiling point, or is unidentified as to specification, may result in sudden brake failure during hard prolonged braking. You could have an accident.

WARNING!

Overfilling the brake fluid reservoir can result in spilling brake fluid on hot engine parts and the brake fluid catching fire.

Use only brake fluid that has been in a tightly-closed container to avoid contamination from foreign matter or moisture.

CAUTION!

Do not allow a petroleum-base fluid to contaminate the brake fluid. Seal damage may result.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Clutch Hydraulic System

The clutch hydraulic system is a sealed maintenance-free system. In the event of leakage or other malfunction, the system must be replaced.

Clutch Linkage

If the clutch pedal linkage begins to squeak or grunt, the clutch pedal pivot bushings should be lubricated. For the correct lubricant type, refer to "Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts" in this Section.

Rear Axle And 4x4 Front Driving Axle Fluid Level

For the correct Fluid type, refer to "Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts" in this Section. For normal service, periodic fluid level checks are not required. When the vehicle is serviced for other reasons the exterior surfaces of the axle assembly should be inspected. If gear oil leakage is suspected inspect the fluid level.

This inspection should be made with the vehicle in a level position. The fluid level should be even with the bottom of the fill hole for the Manufacturer's C205F HD front axles. The fluid level should be 5/8 in (16 mm) below the fill hole on 9 1/4 in manufacturer's rear axles.

For all 2500/3500 Model axles, the fluid level should be 1/4" ± 1/4 in(6.4 mm ± 6.4 mm) below the fill hole on the 9.25 in front and 3/4 in ± 1/4 in (19 mm ± 6.4 mm) on 10.5 in rear axles. The 11.5 in rear axle level should be 1/4 in ± 1/4 in (6.4 mm ± 6.4 mm) below the fill hole.

Drain and Refill

Follow the Maintenance Schedule for recommended front and rear axle fluid change intervals.

Lubricant Selection

For the correct fluid type, refer to "Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts" in this Section.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: The presence of water in the gear lubricant will result in corrosion and possible failure of differential components. Operation of the vehicle in water, as may be encountered in some off-highway types of service, will require draining and refilling the axle to avoid damage.

Limited-Slip Differentials in 1500 Model vehicles require that 4 oz. (118 ml) Mopar® limited slip additive be added to the gear lubricant. Refer to Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for correct fluid type. The Mopar® Limited Slip Additive should be added to the gear lubricant whenever a fluid change is made.

2500/3500 Model Axles **DO NOT REQUIRE** any limited slip oil additive (friction modifiers).

Transfer Case

Drain And Refill

Follow the Maintenance Schedule for recommended transfer case fluid change intervals.

Lubricant Selection

For the correct Fluid type, refer to “Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts” in this Section.

Fluid Level Check

This fluid level can be checked by removing the filler plug. The fluid level should be to the bottom edge of the filler plug hole with the vehicle in a level position.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Manual Transmission

Lubricant Selection G238 (6-Speed Manual Transmission — If Equipped)

This transmission is filled with manual transmission fluid at the factory. This fluid does not require periodic changing. If it is necessary to add or change fluid in this transmission refer to Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for correct fluid type. This is the only lubricant recommended for use in the Getrag 238 transmission.

Lubricant Selection G56 (6-Speed Manual Transmission — If Equipped)

Follow the Maintenance Schedule for recommended transmission fluid change intervals. If it is necessary to add or change fluid in this transmission refer to "Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts" for correct fluid type. This is the only lubricant recommended for use in the G56 transmission.

Fluid Level Check – All Manual Transmissions

This fluid level can be checked by removing the fill plug. If the level of the lubricant is more than 1/4 in(6.4 mm) below the bottom of the filler hole while the vehicle is on level ground, enough lubricant should be added to bring the level to the bottom of the filler hole.

Automatic Transmission

Selection Of Lubricant

It is important that the proper lubricant is used in the transmission to assure optimum transmission performance. Use only manufacturer's recommended transmission fluid; refer to "Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts" in this section for correct fluid type. It is important that the transmission fluid be maintained at the prescribed level using the recommended fluid.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Using a transmission fluid other than the manufacturer's recommended fluid may cause deterioration in transmission shift quality and/or torque converter shudder. Using a transmission fluid other than the manufacturer's recommended fluid will result in more frequent fluid and filter changes. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts" in this section for correct fluid type.

Fluid Level Check

If equipped with a dipstick, use the following procedure. If your vehicle has a capped dipstick tube, it is sealed and should not be tampered with. Your authorized dealer has the proper tools to ensure that the fluid level is set properly. The fluid level should be checked when the engine is fully warmed up and the fluid in the transmission is at normal operating temperature. Operation of the transmission with an improper fluid level will greatly reduce the life of the transmission and of the fluid. Check the fluid level whenever the vehicle is serviced.

Fluid Level Check – 545RFE/42RLE

Check the fluid level while the transmission is at normal operating temperature 82°C (180°F). This occurs after at least 15 mi (25 km) of driving. At normal operating temperature the fluid cannot be held comfortably between the fingertips.

To check the automatic transmission fluid level properly, the following procedure must be used:

1. Operate the engine at idle speed and normal operating temperature.

2. The vehicle must be on level ground.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Fully apply the parking brake and press the brake pedal.

4. Place the gear selector momentarily in each gear position ending with the lever in PARK.

5. Remove the dipstick, wipe it clean and reinsert it until seated.

6. Remove the dipstick again and note the fluid level on both sides. The fluid level should be between the "HOT" (upper) reference holes on the dipstick at normal operating temperature. Verify that solid coating of oil is seen on both sides of the dipstick. If the fluid is low, add as required into the dipstick tube. **Do not overfill.** After adding any quantity of oil through the oil fill tube, wait a minimum of two minutes for the oil to fully drain into the transmission before rechecking the fluid level.

NOTE: If it is necessary to check the transmission **below** the operating temperature, the fluid level should be between the two "COLD" (lower) holes on the dipstick with the fluid at approximately 70°F (21°C) (room temperature). If the fluid level is correctly established at room temperature, it should be between the "HOT" (upper) reference holes when the transmission reaches 180°F (82°C). Remember it is best to check the level at the normal operating temperature.

CAUTION!

Be aware that if the fluid temperature is below 50°F (10°C) it may not register on the dipstick. Do not add fluid until the temperature is elevated enough to produce an accurate reading.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

7. Check for leaks. Release parking brake.

To prevent dirt and water from entering the transmission after checking or replenishing fluid, make certain that the dipstick cap is properly reseated. It is normal for the dipstick cap to spring back slightly from its fully seated position, as long as its seal remains engaged in the dipstick tube.

Automatic Transmission Fluid and Filter Change
Follow the Maintenance Schedule for recommended transmission fluid and filter change intervals.

NOTE: If the transmission is disassembled for any reason, the fluid and filter(s) should be changed.

It is important that proper lubricant is used in the transmission. For the correct Fluid type, refer to "Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts" in this Section.

Special Additives
Automatic Transmission Fluid (ATF) is an engineered product and its performance may be impaired by supplemental additives. Therefore, do not add any fluid additives to the transmission. The only exception to this policy is the use of special dyes to aid in detecting fluid leaks. In addition, avoid using transmission sealers as they may adversely affect seals.

Front and Rear Wheel Bearings

Front Wheel Bearings
Front wheel bearings for all vehicles are sealed-for-life. They do not require greasing or seal replacement. In some instances, these bearings will "purge" excess grease and the bearing will look slightly wet. This is normal. Periodic inspection for excess play is recommended.

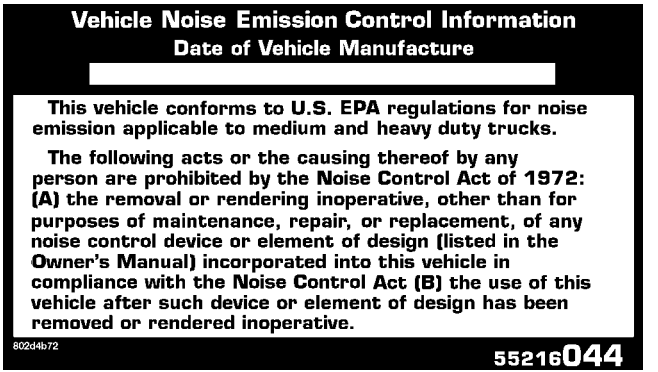
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Wheel Bearings — Manufacturer's Axles

These bearings are normally considered permanently lubricated. Cleaning and repacking is required only when axle shafts are removed or in case of extreme water or dust contamination.

Noise Control System Required Maintenance & Warranty For 3500 2-Wheel Drive and 4-Wheel Drive models over 10,000 lbs. (4 535 kg) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

All vehicles built over 10,000 lbs (4 535 kg) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and manufactured for sale and use in the United States are required to comply with the Federal Government's Exterior Noise Regulations. These vehicles can be identified by the Noise Emission Control Label located in the operator's compartment.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Required Maintenance for Noise Control Systems
The following maintenance services must be performed every six months or 6,000 mi (9 600 km), whichever comes first, to assure proper operation of the noise control systems. In addition, inspection and service should be performed anytime a malfunction is observed or suspected. Proper maintenance of the entire vehicle will help the effectiveness of the noise control systems.

Air Cleaner Assembly
Inspect air cleaner housing for proper assembly and fit. Make certain that the air cleaner is properly positioned and the cover is tight. Check all hoses leading to the cleaner for tightness. The gasket between the air cleaner housing and throttle body must be intact and in good condition. The engine air cleaner filter must also be clean and serviced according to the instructions outlined in the appropriate maintenance schedule.

Tampering with Noise Control System Prohibited
Federal law prohibits the following acts or the causing thereof: (1) the removal or rendering inoperative by any person, other than for purposes of maintenance, repair, or replacement, of any device or element of design incorporated into any new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use, or (2) the use of the vehicle after such device or element of design has been removed or rendered inoperative by any person.

Among those acts presumed to constitute tampering are the acts listed below.

AIR CLEANER

- Removal of the air cleaner.
- Inverting the air cleaner lid.
- Removal of the air ducting.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

EXHAUST SYSTEM

- Removal or rendering inoperative exhaust system components including the muffler or tailpipe.

ENGINE COOLING SYSTEM

- Removal or rendering inoperative the fan clutch.
- Removal of the fan shroud.

Noise Emission Warranty

The manufacturer warrants that this vehicle as manufactured by the manufacturer, was designed, built and equipped to conform at the time it left the manufacturer's control with all applicable U.S. EPA Noise Control Regulations.

This warranty covers this vehicle as designed, built and equipped by the manufacturer, and is not limited to any particular part, component or system of the vehicle manufactured by the manufacturer. Defects in design, assembly or in any part, component or system of the vehicle as manufactured by the manufacturer, which, at the time it left the manufacturer's control, caused noise emissions to exceed Federal standards, are covered by this warranty for the life of the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Noise Systems Maintenance Chart and Service Log Insert Month, Day, Year under column mileage closest to the mileage at which service was performed.

MILES	6,000	12,000	18,000	24,000	30,000	36,000	42,000	48,000
KILOMETERS	10 000	19 000	29 000	39 000	48 000	58 000	68 000	77 000
Exhaust system-inspect								
Air cleaner assembly-inspect								
ODOMETER READING								
PERFORMED BY								
PERFORMED AT								

MILES	54,000	60,000	66,000	72,000	78,000	84,000	90,000	96,000
KILOMETERS	87 000	97 000	106 000	116 000	126 000	135 000	145 000	154 000
Exhaust system-inspect								
Air cleaner assembly-inspect								
ODOMETER READING								
PERFORMED BY								
PERFORMED AT								

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Appearance Care and Protection from Corrosion

Protection of Body and Paint from Corrosion

Vehicle body care requirements vary according to geographic locations and usage. Chemicals that make roads passable in snow and ice, and those that are sprayed on trees and road surfaces during other seasons, are highly corrosive to the metal in your vehicle. Outside parking, which exposes your vehicle to airborne contaminants, road surfaces on which the vehicle is operated, extreme hot or cold weather and other extreme conditions will have an adverse affect on paint, metal trim, and underbody protection.

The following maintenance recommendations will enable you to obtain maximum benefit from the corrosion resistance built into your vehicle.

What Causes Corrosion?

Corrosion is the result of deterioration or removal of paint and protective coatings from your vehicle.

The most common causes are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture accumulation.
- Stone and gravel impact.
- Insects, tree sap and tar.
- Salt in the air near seacoast localities.
- Atmospheric fallout/industrial pollutants.

Washing

- Wash your vehicle regularly. Always wash your vehicle in the shade using Mopar® Car Wash or a mild car wash soap, and rinse the panels completely with clear water.
- If insects, tar or other similar deposits have accumulated on your vehicle, use Mopar® Super Kleen Bug and Tar Remover to remove.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Use Mopar® Cleaner Wax to remove road film, stains and to protect your paint finish. Take care never to scratch the paint.
- Avoid using abrasive compounds and power buffing that may diminish the gloss or thin out the paint finish.

CAUTION!

Do not use abrasive or strong cleaning materials such as steel wool or scouring powder, which will scratch metal and painted surfaces.

Special Care

- If you drive on salted or dusty roads, or if you drive near the ocean, hose off the undercarriage at least once a month.
- It is important that the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors, rocker panels and trunk be kept clear and open.
- If you detect any stone chips or scratches in the paint, touch them up immediately. The cost of such repairs is considered the responsibility of the owner.
- If your vehicle is damaged due to an accident or similar cause which destroys the paint and protective coating, have your vehicle repaired as soon as possible. The cost of such repairs is considered the responsibility of the owner.
- If you carry special cargo such as chemicals, fertilizers, de-icer salt, etc., be sure that such materials are well packaged and sealed.
- If a lot of driving is done on gravel roads, consider mud or stone shields behind each wheel.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Use Mopar® touch up paint on scratches as soon as possible. Your authorized dealer has touch up paint to match the color of your vehicle.

Wheel and Wheel Trim Care

All wheels and wheel trim, especially aluminum and chrome plated wheels should be cleaned regularly with a mild soap and water to prevent corrosion. To remove heavy soil and/or excessive brake dust, use Mopar® Wheel Cleaner (05066247AB) or equivalent, or select a nonabrasive, non-acidic cleaner. Do not use scouring pads, steel wool, a bristle brush, or metal polishes. Only Mopar® or equivalent is recommended. Do not use oven cleaner. Avoid automatic car washes that use acidic solutions or harsh brushes that may damage the wheels' protective finish.

YES Essentials® Fabric Cleaning Procedure – If equipped

YES Essentials® seats may be cleaned in the following manner:

- Remove as much of the stain as possible by blotting with a clean, dry towel.
- Blot any remaining stain with a clean, damp towel.
- For tough stains, apply Mopar® Total Clean or a mild soap solution to a clean, damp cloth and remove stain. Use a fresh, damp towel to remove soap residue.
- For grease stains, apply Mopar® Multipurpose cleaner to a clean, damp cloth and remove stain. Use a fresh, damp towel to remove soap residue.
- Do not use any solvents or protectants on Yes Essentials products.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Interior Care

Use Mopar® Total Clean to clean fabric upholstery and carpeting.

Use Mopar® Total Clean to clean vinyl upholstery.

Mopar® Total Clean is specifically recommended for leather upholstery.

Your leather upholstery can be best preserved by regular cleaning with a damp soft cloth. Small particles of dirt can act as an abrasive and damage the leather upholstery and should be removed promptly with a damp cloth. Stubborn soils can be removed easily with a soft cloth and Mopar® Total Clean. Care should be taken to avoid soaking your leather upholstery with any liquid. Please do not use polishes, oils, cleaning fluids, solvents, detergents, or ammonia-based cleaners to clean your leather upholstery. Application of a leather conditioner is not required to maintain the original condition.

WARNING!

Do not use volatile solvents for cleaning purposes. Many are potentially flammable, and if used in closed areas they may cause respiratory harm.

Cleaning Headlights

Your vehicle has plastic headlights that are lighter and less susceptible to stone breakage than glass headlights.

Plastic is not as scratch resistant as glass and therefore different lens cleaning procedures must be followed.

To minimize the possibility of scratching the lenses and reducing light output, avoid wiping with a dry cloth. To remove road dirt, wash with a mild soap solution followed by rinsing.

Do not use abrasive cleaning components, solvents, steel wool or other aggressive material to clean the lenses.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Glass Surfaces

All glass surfaces should be cleaned on a regular basis with Mopar® Glass Cleaner or any commercial household-type glass cleaner. Never use an abrasive type cleaner. Use caution when cleaning the inside rear window equipped with electric defrosters or the right rear quarter window equipped with the radio antenna. Do not use scrapers or other sharp instruments which may scratch the elements. When cleaning the rearview mirror, spray cleaner on the towel or rag that you are using. Do not spray cleaner directly on the mirror.

Cleaning Plastic Instrument Cluster Lenses

The lenses in front of the instruments in this vehicle are molded in clear plastic. When cleaning the lenses, care must be taken to avoid scratching the plastic.

1. Clean with a wet soft rag. A mild soap solution may be used, but do not use high alcohol content or abrasive cleaners. If soap is used, wipe clean with a clean damp rag.

2. Dry with a soft tissue.

Seat Belt Maintenance

Do not bleach, dye or clean the belts with chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners. This will weaken the fabric. Sun damage can also weaken the fabric.

If the belts need cleaning, use a mild soap solution or lukewarm water. Do not remove the belts from the car to wash them.

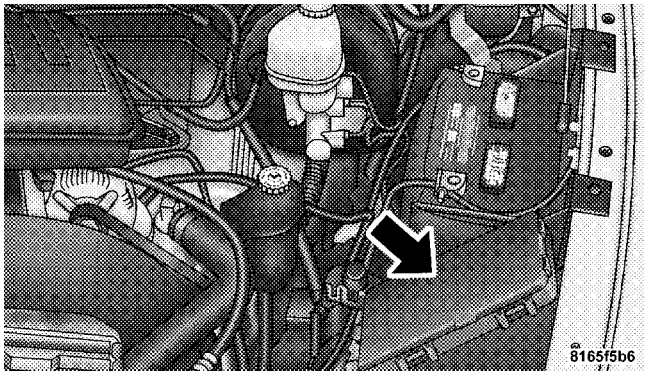
Replace the belts if they appear frayed or worn or if the buckles do not work properly.

Dry with a soft tissue.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

FUSES (INTEGRATED POWER MODULE)

An integrated power module is located in the engine compartment near the battery. This center contains cartridge fuses and mini fuses. A description of each fuse and component may be stamped on the inside cover, otherwise the cavity number of each fuse is stamped on the inside cover that corresponds to the following chart.



Integrated Power Module Location

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Mini Fuse	Description
1		20 Amp Yellow	Power Outlet Console
2		20 Amp Yellow	Cabin Compartment Node (CCN) Door Locks
3		—	—
4		15 Amp Blue	Aisin Transmission Controls (Diesel Only)
5		20 Amp Yellow	Power Sunroof
6		10 Amp Red	Vistronic Fan/ Wastegate Solenoid
7		—	—
8		10 Amp Red	Heated Mirrors

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Mini Fuse	Description
9	30 Amp Pink		Off Road Module Power
10		5 Amp Orange	Trx-Off Rd Pkg Sen (Gas Engine Only) **NOTE: Insert 5 amp fuse in this cavity to enable the TRX capability (If Equipped).**
11		20 Amp Yellow	Ignition Off Draw (IOD)-Cabin Compartment Node (CCN)/Radio/Under Hood Lamp/Wireless Control Module (WCM)/Satellite Digital Audio Receiver (SDARS)/Hands Free Module (HFM)/EOM
12	30 Amp Pink		Electric Brake
13		25 Amp Natural	Power-Battery RWAL/ABS Module Feed
14		15 Amp Blue	Park Lights Left
15		20 Amp Yellow	Trailer Park Lights
16		15 Amp Blue	Park Lights Right
17		—	—
18	40 Amp Green		ABS Pump
19	30 Amp Pink		Trailer Tow Battery Feed

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Mini Fuse	Description
20		10 Amp Red	Occupant Restraints Controller (ORC) 2
21		10 Amp Red	Occupant Restraints / Pass Disable Switch
22		2 Amp Gray	IGN Switch Feed
23		10 Amp Red	HVAC
24	20 Amp Blue		AISIN Relay Feed (Diesel Only)
25		10 Amp Red	Power Mirror / T-Case Brake
26		20 Amp Yellow	Brake Switch / Center High Mount Stop Light (CHMSL) / Aftermarket CHMSL
27	40 Amp Green		Power Seats
28		10 Amp Red	Power Run / Start-PCM / Steering Angle Sensor
29		10 Amp Red	4X4 Switch / Pass Dr Switch / EC Mirror
30		15 Amp Blue	Power Run / Start-ABS / RWAL / Smart Bar / YAW Sensor / Universal Exhaust Gas Oxygen (Uego) Sensor Controller
31		10 Amp Red	PCM (Gas) / TCM (Diesel 58RFE)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Mini Fuse	Description
32		10 Amp Red	Power Ignition Run — Adjustable Pedals LED
33		10 Amp Red	Power-IGN Run — HVAC
34		—	—
35		15 Amp Blue	Cabin Compartment Node (CCN) Illumination
36		25 Amp Natural	Audio_Amplifier
37		15 Amp Blue	Variable Gate Turbo (VGT) — Turbo Diesel
38		20 Amp Yellow	Power Outlet IP
39		10 Amp Red	Seatbelt Tension Reducer / Power IGN Run / Acc
40		20 Amp Yellow	Power IGN Run / Acc — Cigar Lighter / Rear Power Point
41		—	—
42	30 Amp Pink		Diesel PCM (Diesel Only)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

- **When installing the Integrated Power Module cover, it is important to ensure the cover is properly positioned and fully latched. Failure to do so may allow water to get into the Integrated Power Module, and possibly result in a electrical system failure.**
- **When replacing a blown fuse, it is important to use only a fuse having the correct amperage rating. The use of a fuse with a rating other than indicated may result in a dangerous electrical system overload. If a properly rated fuse continues to blow, it indicates a problem in the circuit that must be corrected.**

VEHICLE STORAGE

If you are storing your vehicle for more than 21 days, we recommend that you take the following steps to minimize the drain on your vehicle's battery:

- Disconnect the Ignition-Off Draw fuse (IOD) fuse located in the Integrated Power Module, located in the engine compartment. The IOD cavity includes a snap-in retainer that allows the fuse to be disconnected, without removing it from the fuse block.
- The electronic shift transfer case should be placed in the 4HI mode and kept in this position to minimize the battery drain.
- As an alternative to the above steps you may disconnect the negative cables from both batteries.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Any time you store your vehicle, or keep it out of service (i.e., vacation) for two weeks or more, run the air conditioning system at idle for about five minutes in the fresh air and high blower setting. This will ensure adequate system lubrication to minimize the possibility of compressor damage when the system is started again.

NOTE: When reinstalling the IOD fuse push firmly until fully seated; the gauges in the instrument cluster will do a full sweep when the ignition key is cycled to RUN. This is a normal condition.

NOTE: When the vehicle is shipped from the factory, the IOD fuse is in the up, or extracted position. If the radio, interior lamps, keyless entry, or other features do not work with the key OFF, check the position of the fuse (or check to see if the fuse is blown) to ensure that it is fully seated. When the IOD fuse is extracted, the instrument cluster in the odometer window will display ″NO FUSE.”

REPLACEMENT LIGHT BULBS

LIGHT BULBS — Interior	Bulb No.
Overhead Console Lights	TS 212-2
Dome Light	7679

NOTE: For lighted switches, see your authorized dealer for replacement instructions.

All of the inside bulbs are brass or glass-wedge base. Aluminum base bulbs are not approved.

LIGHT BULBS — Exterior	Bulb No.
Backup	3057
Center High Mounted Stop Light	912
Fog Light	9006LL
Headlight (Halogen)	H13
Side Marker, Park & Turn Signal	3157NAK
Rear License Plate Light	168
Rear Cargo Light	912

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

LIGHT BULBS — Exterior	Bulb No.
Tail & Stop	3057
Cab Clearance Lights	168
Dual Rear Wheel Sidemarker Light	168
Dual Rear Wheel Tailgate ID Lights (3)	168

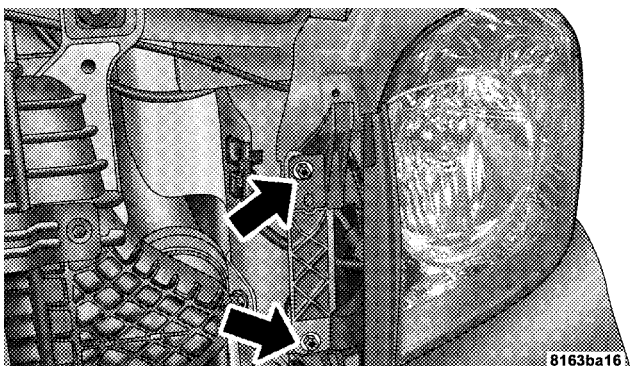
BULB REPLACEMENT

Headlight (Halogen)/Front Park and Turn Lights

CAUTION!

This is a halogen bulb. Avoid touching the glass with your fingers. Reduced bulb life will result.

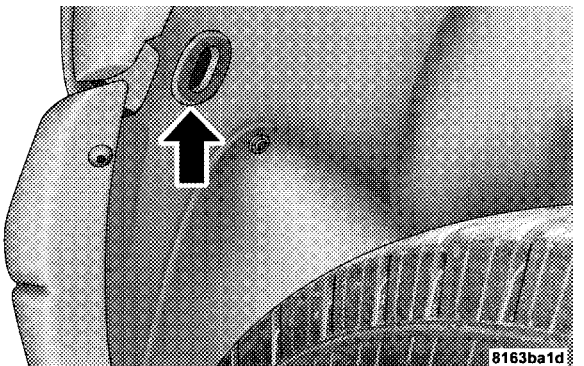
1. Open the hood
2. Remove the two bolts from the front of the headlight housing.



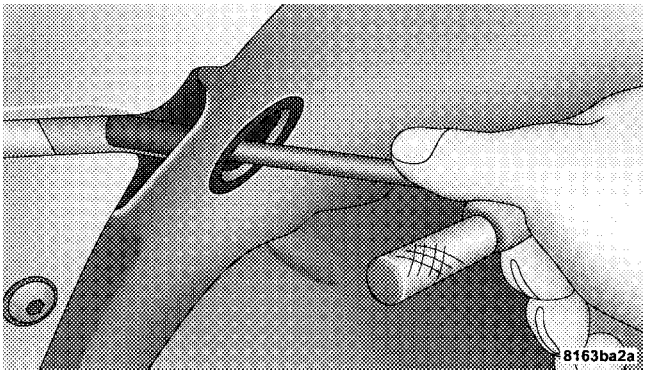
Front Headlight Housing Bolts

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Remove the plug from the inner fender well and remove the nut through the access hole.



Inner Fender Plug

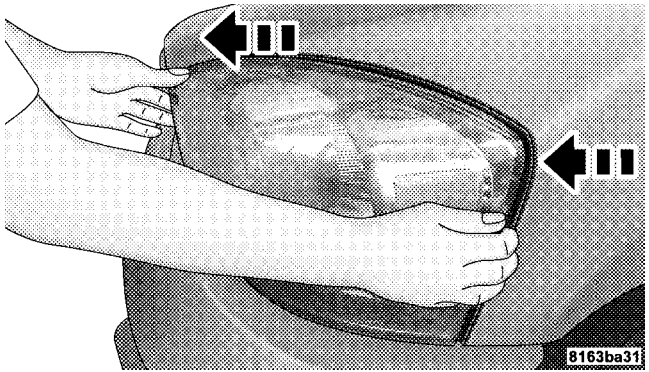


Rear Headlight Housing Nut Access

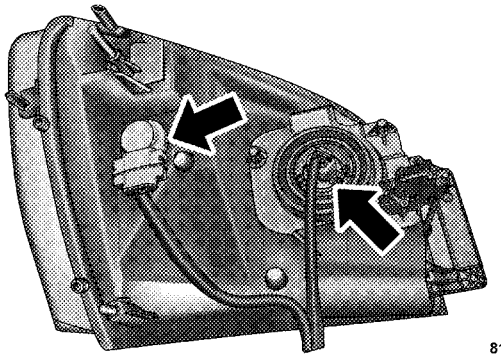
4. Pull the housing out from the fender to allow room to disconnect the electrical connectors.

NOTE: For easier removal, pull the headlight assembly straight forward, applying the greatest amount of force to the outer edge of the headlight assembly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Headlight Removal



Bulb Removal

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. Unlock and pull connector straight from the base of the headlight halogen bulb.

6. Twist connector on the side marker/turn signal/park light bulb ¼ turn and remove connector and bulb from housing.

7. Remove housing from vehicle with headlight halogen bulb in housing.

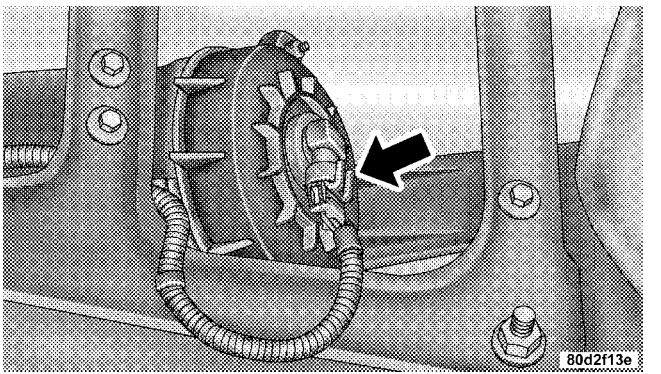
8. Twist the headlight halogen bulb ¼ turn and remove headlight bulb from the housing.

9. Replace headlight or side marker/turn signal/park light bulb. Do not touch the headlight halogen bulb.

10. Reverse procedure for installation of bulbs and housing.

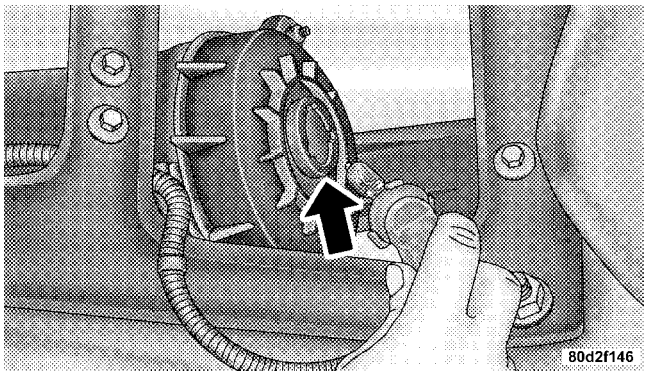
Fog Lights

1. Reach under the vehicle, unlock and twist connector counterclockwise ¼ turn and remove connector and bulb from housing.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

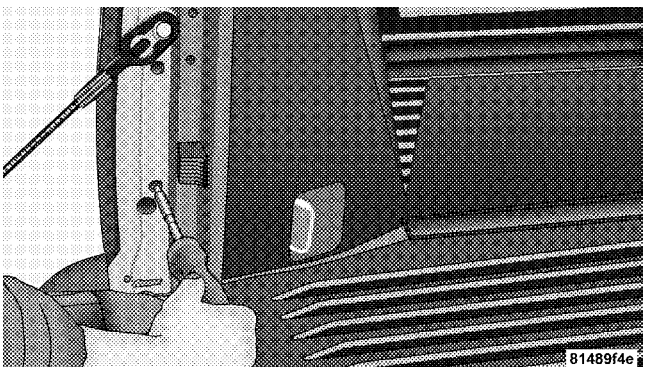
2. Pull bulb straight from the connector.



3. Reverse procedure for installation of bulbs and housing.

Tail, Stop, Turn and Backup Lights

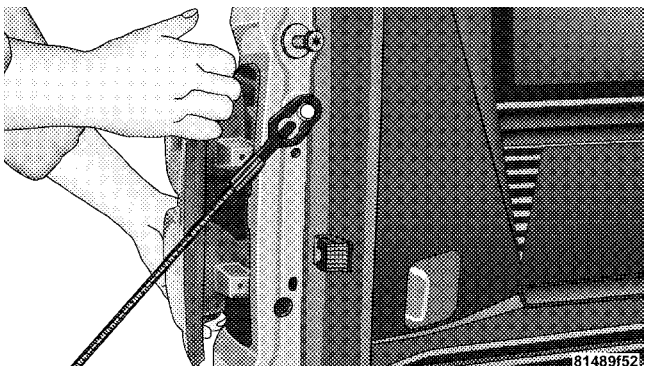
1. Remove the two screws that pass through the bed sheetmetal.



Removing The Two Screws

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Pull the housing straight out from the body, with a quick motion, to separate the housing from the body. If not pulled straight, locators may be damaged.



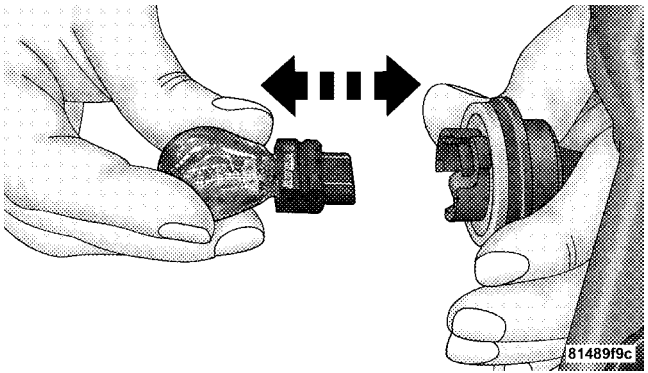
Pulling Housing From Body

3. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove from the housing.

Rotating Bulb Socket From Housing

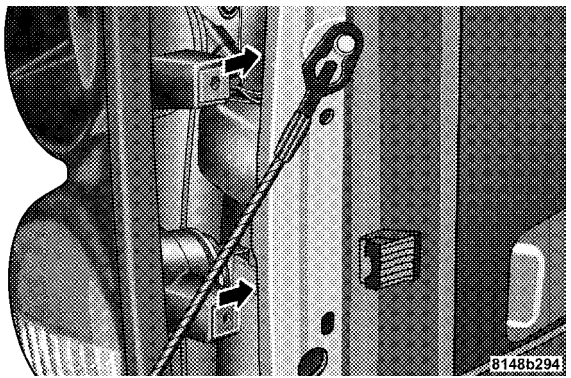
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Pull bulb straight out of socket.



Pulling Bulb From Socket

5. Reverse Procedure to install bulb and housing. Place the two raised blocks past the body.

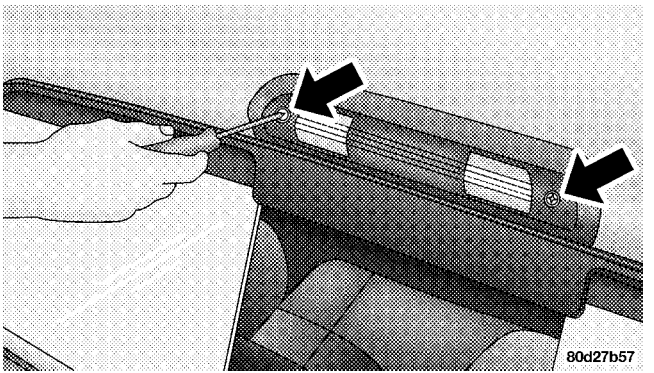


Sliding Raised Blocks Past Body

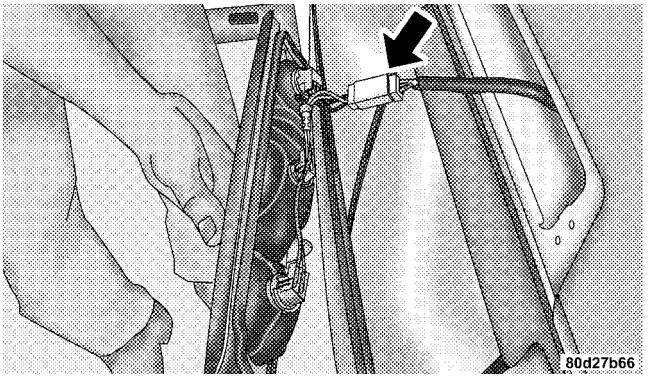
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Center High-Mounted Stoplight (CHMSL) With Cargo Light

1. Remove the two screws holding the housing/lens to the body as shown.



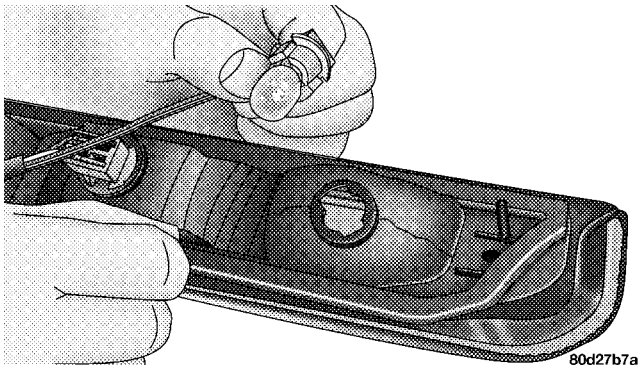
2. Separate the connector holding the housing and wiring harness to the body.



3. Turn desired bulb socket ¼ turn and remove socket and bulb from housing.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Pull desired bulb straight from the socket.

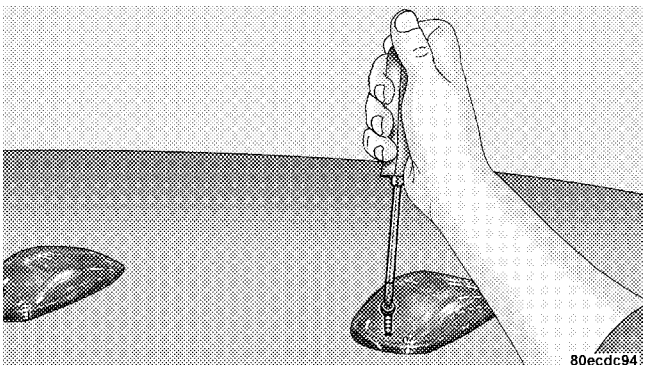


- Outside Bulbs: Cargo Lights
- Inside Bulb: Center High-Mounted Stop Light

5. Reverse procedure for installation of bulbs and housing.

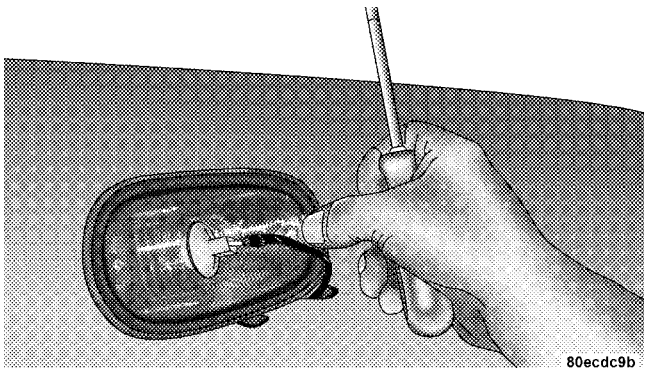
Cab Top Clearance Lights — If Equipped

1. Remove the two screws from the top of the light.

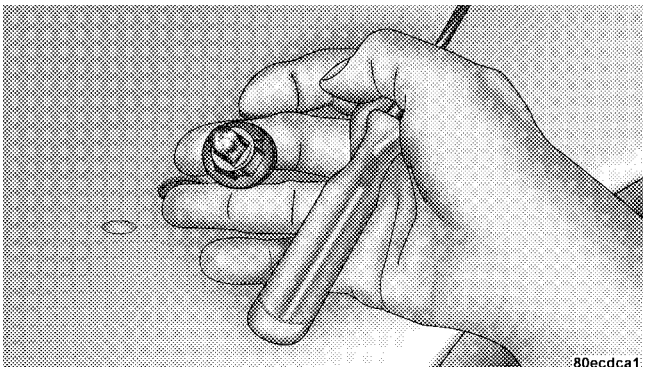


Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Rotate the socket ¼ turn and pull it from the light assembly.



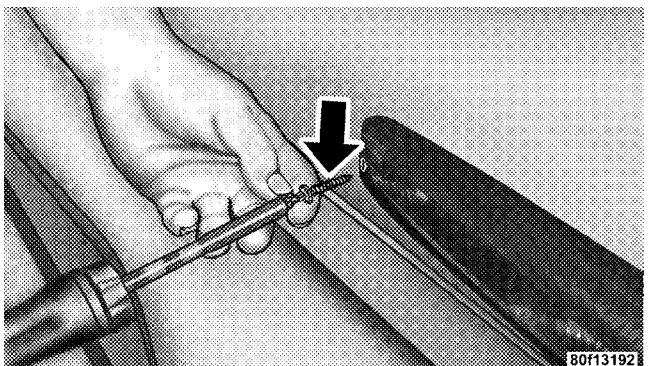
3. Pull the bulb straight from it's socket and replace.

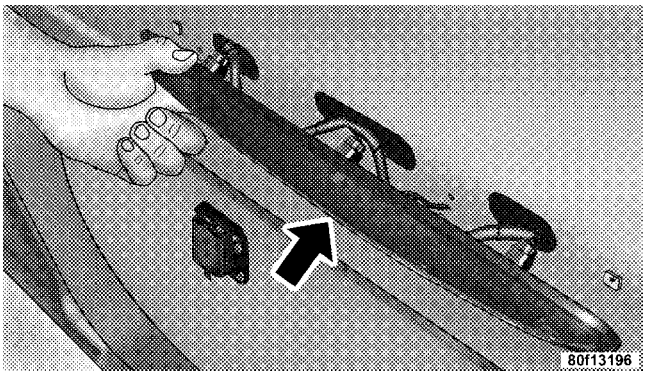


Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tailgate ID Lights (Dual Rear Wheels) — If Equipped

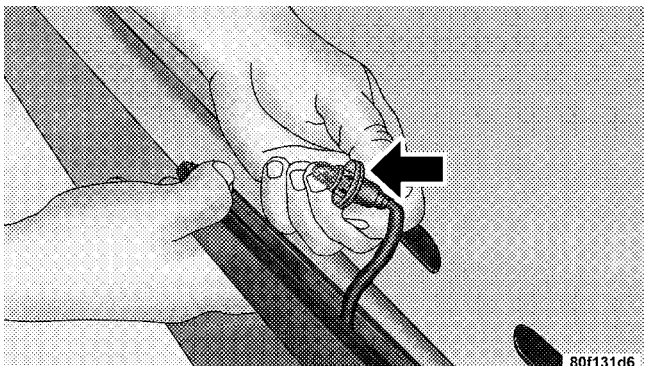
1. Remove the two screws and housing and access the bulb sockets from the rear.





Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Turn socket ¼ turn counterclockwise to access the bulb.

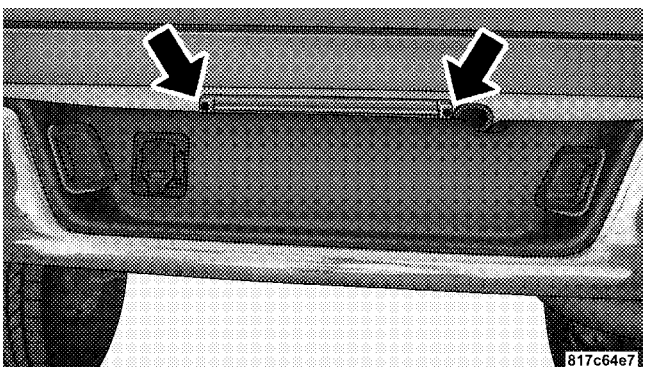


3. Pull bulb straight out from socket.

4. Reverse procedure for installation of bulbs and housing.

Rear Light Bar ID Marker (Dual Rear Wheel) — If Equipped

1. Loosen the two screws and the housing to gain access to the bulb sockets.



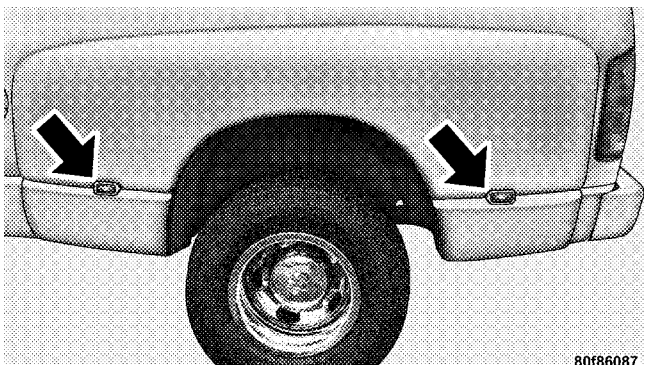
2. Turn the socket ¼ turn counterclockwise to access the bulb.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Pull the bulb straight out from the socket.

4. Reverse procedure for installation of bulbs and housing.

Side Marker Lights (Dual Rear Wheels)



1. Push rearward on the side marker light assembly.

2. Pull the entire assembly from the fender.

3. Turn socket ¼ turn counterclockwise and remove from assembly to access the bulb.

4. Pull bulb straight out from socket.

5. Reverse procedure for installation of bulbs and housing.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

FLUIDS AND CAPACITIES

	U.S.	Metric
Fuel (Approximate)		
1500 Shortbed Models	26 gal	98 L
1500 Longbed Models	35 gal	132 L
1500 Shortbed Models	34 gal	128 L
2500 Shortbed Models	34 gal	128 L
2500 Longbed Models	35 gal	132 L
3500 Shortbed Models	34 gal	128 L
3500 Longbed Models	35 gal	132 L

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

	U.S.	Metric
Engine Oil (with filter)		
3.7L Engine V-6 (SAE 5W-20, API Certified)	5.0 qts	4.7 L
4.7L Engine V-8 (SAE 5W-20, API Certified)	6.0 qts	5.7 L
5.7L Engine V-8 (SAE 5W-20, API Certified). For trucks operating under a gross combined weight rating **less** than 14,000 lbs.	7.0 qts	6.6 L
5.7L Engine V-8 (SAE 5W-30, API Certified). For 2500/3500 trucks operating under a gross combined weight rating **greater** than 14,000 lbs.	7.0 qts	6.6 L
Cooling System		
3.7L (Mopar® Antifreeze/Coolant 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula) or equivalent.	17 qts	16 L
4.7L (Mopar® Antifreeze/Coolant 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula) or equivalent.	17 qts	16 L
5.7L (Mopar® Antifreeze/Coolant 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula) or equivalent.	18.7 qts	17.7 L

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

FLUIDS, LUBRICANTS AND GENUINE PARTS

Engine

Component	Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts
Engine Coolant	Mopar® Antifreeze / Coolant 5 Year / 100,000 Mile Formula HOAT (Hybrid Organic Additive Technology).
Engine Oil (3.7 / 4.7L Engine)	Use SAE 5W-20, API Certified, meeting material standard MS-6395.
5.7L Engine Oil (For trucks operating under a gross combined weight rating **less** than 14,000 lbs / (6,350 kg.)	Use SAE 5W-20, API Certified, meeting material standard MS-6395.
5.7L Engine Oil (For 2500 / 3500 trucks operating under a gross combined weight rating **greater** than 14,000 lbs / (6,350 kg.)	Use SAE 5W-30, API Certified, meeting material standard MS-6395.
Engine Oil Filter (3.7L Engine)	Mopar® Engine Oil Filter, P / N 4781452BB or equivalent.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Component	Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts
Engine Oil Filter (4.7L & 5.7L Engine)	Mopar® Engine Oil Filter, P/N 4884899AB or equivalent.
Spark Plugs (5.7L Engine)	REC14MCC4 (Gap 0.043 in [1.09 mm])
Spark Plugs (4.7L Engine)	Upper Bank — FR8TE2 (Gap 0.039 in [.99 mm]) Lower Bank — FR8T1332 (Gap 0.051 in [1.30 mm])
Spark Plugs (3.7L Engine)	ZFR6F-11G (Gap 0.043 in [1.09 mm])
Fuel Selection (3.7L/4.7L Engine)	87 Octane
Fuel Selection (5.7L Engine)	87 Octane Acceptable - 89 Octane Recommended

Chassis

Component	Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts.
Automatic Transmission	Mopar® ATF+4, Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Transfer Case	Mopar® ATF+4, Automatic Transmission Fluid.
NVG 246 Automatic Transfer Case Only	Mopar® PN 05179014AA, NVG 246 Automatic Transmission Fluid or equivalent.
Manual Transmission Fluid (G238)	Mopar® ATF+4, Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Manual Transmission Fluid (G-56)	Mopar® ATF+4, Automatic Transmission Fluid.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Component	Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts.
Clutch Linkage	Multipurpose Grease, NLGI Grade 2 E.P. or equivalent.
1500 Model Front Axle (4X4)	GL-5 SAE 75W-90 (MS-9763) or equivalent.
1500 Model Rear Axle	Mopar® Synthetic Gear Lubricant SAE 75W-140 (MS-8985). Limited-Slip Rear Axles on 1500 Models Require the addition of 118 ml (4 oz.) Mopar® Limited Slip Additive or equivalent.
2500/3500 Model Front and Rear Axle	Synthetic, GL-5 SAE, 75W-90 or equivalent. Limited-Slip 10.5/11.5 inch Rear Axles **Limited slip additive is not required.**
Brake Master Cylinder	Mopar® DOT 3 and SAE J1703 should be used or equivalent. If DOT 3 brake fluid is not available, then DOT 4 is acceptable. Use only recommended brake fluids.
Power Steering Reservoir	Mopar® ATF+4, Automatic Transmission Fluid.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES

CONTENTS

■ Emission Control System Maintenance 514
■ Maintenance Schedule 514
□ Required Maintenance Intervals 516

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM MAINTENANCE

The Scheduled maintenance services, listed in **bold type** in this section (Section 8) must be done at the times or mileages specified to assure the continued proper functioning of the emission control system. These, and all other maintenance services included in this manual, should be done to provide best vehicle performance and reliability. More frequent maintenance may be needed for vehicles in severe operating conditions, such as dusty areas and very short trip driving.

Inspection and service also should be done anytime a malfunction is suspected.

NOTE: Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems on your vehicle may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any automotive part which has been certified pursuant to U.S. EPA or, in the State of California, California Air Resources Board regulations.

MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

The oil change indicator system will remind you that it is time to take your vehicle in for scheduled maintenance.

The “Change Oil” message will flash in the instrument cluster odometer and a single chime will sound, indicating that an oil change is necessary.

Based on engine operation conditions the oil change indicator message will illuminate, this means that service is required for your vehicle. Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible, within the next 500 miles (805 km).

NOTE:

- The oil change indicator message will not monitor the time since the last oil change. Change your vehicles oil if it has been 6 months since your last oil change even if the oil change indicator message is NOT illuminated.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Change your engine oil more often if you drive your vehicle off-road for an extended period of time.
- Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 6,000 miles (10,000 km) or 6 months, whichever comes first.

Your dealer will reset the oil change indicator message after completing the scheduled oil change. If this scheduled oil change is performed by someone other than your dealer the message can be reset by referring to the steps described under "Odometer/Trip Odometer" under "Instrument Cluster Description" in Section 4 of this manual.

At Each Stop for Fuel

- Check the engine oil level about 5 minutes after a fully warmed engine is shut off. Checking the oil level while the vehicle is on level ground will improve the accuracy of the oil level reading. Add oil only when the level is at or below the ADD or MIN mark.
- Check the windshield washer solvent and add if required.

Once a Month

- Check tire pressure and look for unusual wear or damage.
- Inspect the battery and clean and tighten the terminals as required.
- Check the fluid levels of coolant reservoir, brake master cylinder, power steering and transmission and add as needed.
- Check all lights and other electrical items for correct operation.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

At Each Oil Change

- Change the engine oil filter.
- Inspect the brake hoses and lines.
- Check the Manual Transmission fluid level.

CAUTION!

Failure to perform the required maintenance items may result in damage to the vehicle.

Required Maintenance Intervals

NOTE: ** Vehicles built with the 4.7L engine are equipped with sixteen spark plugs, one set is located on the top of the engine under the coils and the second set is located on the side of the engine.

The spark plugs located under the coils are a standard plug and must be changed every 30,000 miles (50 000 km)

The spark plugs located on the side of the engine are a premium plug and must be changed every 102,000 miles (170 000 km).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Items	Perform Maintenance Every (Where time and mileage are listed, follow the interval that occurs first.)		
	Miles	Kilometers	or Months
Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.	6,000	10 000	6
Rotate Tires.	6,000	10 000	6
Lubricate outer tie rod ends 2500/3500 (4X4) models only.	6,000	10 000	6
Lube Front Drive Shaft Fitting (2500/3500, 4x4 only).	6,000	10 000	6
If using your vehicle for any of the following: Dusty or off-road conditions. Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.	12,000	20 000	12
Inspect the brake linings, replace if necessary.	12,000	20 000	12
Inspect the front & rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.	18,000	30 000	18
Inspect the CV Joints. Perform the first inspection at 12,000 miles (20 000 km) or 12 months.	24,000	40 000	24

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Items	Perform Maintenance Every (Where time and mileage are listed, follow the interval that occurs first.) Miles	Kilometers	or Months
Inspect Exhaust System. Perform the first inspection at 12,000 miles (20 000 km) or 12 months.	24,000	40 000	24
Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals, replace if necessary.	24,000	40 000	24
Replace the engine air cleaner filter.	30,000	50 000	30
Inspect the transfer case fluid.	30,000	50 000	30
Replace the top row of spark plugs on 4.7L engines. **	30,000	50 000	30
Replace the spark plugs on 3.7L and 5.7L engines.	30,000	50 000	30
Change the automatic transmission fluid & filter if using your vehicle for any of the following: police, taxi, fleet or frequent trailer towing.	60,000	100 000	60
Change the transfer case fluid if using your vehicle for any of the following: police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.	60,000	100 000	60

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Items	Perform Maintenance Every (Where time and mileage are listed, follow the interval that occurs first.) Miles	Kilometers	or Months
Change the manual transmission fluid if using your vehicle for any of the following: trailer towing, snow plowing, heavy loading, taxi, police, delivery service (commercial service), off-road, desert operation or more then 50% of your driving is at sustained high speeds during hot weather, above 90F° (32C°).	60,000	100 000	60
Inspect and replace PCV valve if necessary. †	90,000	150 000	90
Flush and replace the engine coolant.	102,000	170 000	60
Replace the ignition cables on 4.7L engines.	102,000	170 000	102
Replace the side row of spark plugs on 4.7L engines. **	102,000	170 000	102
Change the automatic transmission fluid & filter.	120,000	200 000	120
Replace Accessory Drive Belt(s).	120,000	200 000	120

† This maintenance is recommended by the manufacturer to the owner, but is not required to maintain emissions warranty.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only that service work for which you have the knowledge and the right equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

IF YOU NEED CONSUMER ASSISTANCE

CONTENTS

- Suggestions For Obtaining Service For Your Vehicle 523
  - Prepare For The Appointment 523
  - Prepare A List 523
  - Be Reasonable With Requests 523
- If You Need Assistance 523
  - Chrysler LLC Customer Center 524
  - Chrysler Canada Inc. Customer Center 525
  - In Mexico Contact 525
  - Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY) 525
  - Service Contract 525
- Warranty Information (U.S. Vehicles Only) 526
- MOPAR®Parts 526
- Reporting Safety Defects 526
  - In The 50 United States And Washington, D.C. 526
  - In Canada 527
- Publication Order Forms 527

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Department Of Transportation Uniform Tire Quality Grades 528
□ Treadwear 529
□ Traction Grades 529
□ Temperature Grades 529

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

SUGGESTIONS FOR OBTAINING SERVICE FOR YOUR VEHICLE

Prepare For The Appointment

If you're having warranty work done, be sure to have the right papers with you. Take your warranty folder. All work to be performed may not be covered by the warranty. Discuss additional charges with the service manager. Keep a maintenance log of your vehicle's service history. This can often provide a clue to the current problem.

Prepare A List

Make a written list of your vehicle's problems or the specific work you want done. If you've had an accident or work done that is not on your maintenance log, let the service advisor know.

Be Reasonable With Requests

If you list a number of items and you must have your vehicle by the end of the day, discuss the situation with the service advisor and list the items in order of priority. At many authorized dealers, you may obtain a rental vehicle at a minimal daily charge. If you need a rental, it is advisable to make these arrangements when you call for an appointment.

IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE

The manufacturer and its authorized dealers are vitally interested in your satisfaction. We want you to be happy with our products and services.

Warranty service must be done by an authorized dealer. We strongly recommend that you take the vehicle to an authorized selling dealer. They know you and the vehicle best, and are most concerned that you get prompt and

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

high quality service. The manufacturer's authorized dealers have the facilities, factory-trained technicians, special tools, and the latest information to ensure the vehicle is fixed correctly and in a timely manner.

This is why you should always talk to an authorized dealer's service manager first. Most matters can be resolved with this process.

- If for some reason you are still not satisfied, talk to the general manager or owner of the authorized dealership. They want to know if you need assistance.
- If an authorized dealership is unable to resolve the concern, you may contact the Manufacturer's Customer Center.

Any communication to the Manufacturer's Customer Center should include the following information:

- Owner's name and address
- Owner's telephone number (home and office)
- Authorized dealership name
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Vehicle delivery date and mileage

Chrysler LLC Customer Center
P.O. Box 21–8004
Auburn Hills, MI 48321–8004
Phone: (800) 992-1997

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Chrysler Canada Inc. Customer Center

P.O. Box 1621
Windsor, Ontario N9A 4H6
Phone: (800) 465–2001

In Mexico contact:

Av. Prolongacion Paseo de la Reforma, 1240
Sante Fe C.P. 05109
Mexico, D. F.
In Mexico City: 5081-4568
Outside Mexico City: 1-800-505-1300

Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY)

To assist customers who have hearing difficulties, the manufacturer has installed special TDD (Telecommunication Devices for the Deaf) equipment at its Customer Center. Any hearing or speech impaired customer, who has access to a TDD or a conventional teletypewriter (TTY) in the United States, can communicate with the manufacturer by dialing 1–800–380–CHRY.

Service Contract

You may have purchased a service contract for an vehicle to help protect you from the high cost of unexpected repairs after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited Warranty expires. The manufacturer stands behind only the manufacturer's Service Contracts. If you purchased a manufacturer's Service Contract, you will receive Plan Provisions and an Owner Identification Card in the mail within three weeks of the vehicle delivery date. If you have any questions about the service contract, call the manufacturer's Service Contract National Customer Hotline at 1-800-521-9922.

The manufacturer will not stand behind any service contract that is not the manufacturer's Service Contract. It is not responsible for any service contract other than the manufacturer's Service Contract. If you purchased a service contract that is not a manufacturer's Service Contract, and you require service after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited Warranty expires, please refer to the contract documents, and contact the person listed in those documents.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

We appreciate that you have made a major investment when you purchased the vehicle. An authorized dealer has also made a major investment in facilities, tools, and training to assure that you are absolutely delighted with the ownership experience. You'll be pleased with their sincere efforts to resolve any warranty issues or related concerns.

WARNING!

Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

WARRANTY INFORMATION (U.S. Vehicles Only)

See the Warranty Information Booklet for the terms and provisions of Chrysler LLC warranties applicable to this vehicle.

MOPAR® PARTS

Mopar® fluids, lubricants, parts, and accessories are available from an authorized dealer. They will help keep the vehicle operating at its best.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

In The 50 United States And Washington, D.C.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash or cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the manufacturer.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your authorized dealer, and the manufacturer.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll free at 1–888–327–4236 (TTY: 1–800–424– 9153), or go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, D.C. 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

In Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should contact the Customer Service Department immediately. Canadian customers who wish to report a safety defect to the Canadian government should write to: Transport Canada, Motor Vehicle Defect Investigations and Recalls, 2780 Sheffield Road, Ottawa, Ontario K1B 3V9.

PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS

To order the following manuals, you may use either the website or the phone numbers listed below. Visa, Mastercard, American Express, and Discover orders are accepted. If you prefer mailing your payment, please call for an order form.

NOTE: A street address is required when ordering manuals (no P.O. Boxes).

- *Service Manuals*

  These comprehensive Service Manuals provide the information that students and professional technicians need in diagnosing/troubleshooting, problem solving, maintaining, servicing, and repairing Chrysler LLC vehicles. A complete working knowledge of the vehicle, system, and/or components is written in straightforward language with illustrations, diagrams, and charts.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- *Diagnostic Procedure Manuals*

  Diagnostic Procedure Manuals are filled with diagrams, charts and detailed illustrations. These practical manuals make it easy for students and technicians to find and fix problems on computer-controlled vehicle systems and features. They show exactly how to find and correct problems the first time, using step-by-step troubleshooting and drivability procedures, proven diagnostic tests and a complete list of all tools and equipment.

- *Owner's Manuals*

  These Owner's Manuals have been prepared with the assistance of service and engineering specialists to acquaint you with specific Chrysler LLC vehicles. Included are starting, operating, emergency and maintenance procedures as well as specifications, capabilities and safety tips.

Call toll free at:

- **1–800–890–4038 (U.S.)**
- **1–800–387–1143 (Canada)**

Or

Visit us on the Worldwide Web at:

- **www.techauthority.com**

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES

The following tire grading categories were established by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. The specific grade rating assigned by the tire's manufacturer in each category is shown on the sidewall of the tires on your vehicle.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal safety requirements in addition to these grades.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Treadwear

The Treadwear grade is a comparative rating, based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction Grades

The Traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. These grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement, as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

WARNING!

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature Grades

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat, when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance, which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel, than the minimum required by law.

WARNING!

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

INDEX

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Adding Fuel 375
Adjustable Pedals 144
Air Cleaner, Engine
(Engine Air Cleaner Filter) 455,481
Air Conditioner Maintenance 459
Air Conditioning Refrigerant 459,460
Air Conditioning System 261,459
Air Conditioning System, Zone Control 264
Air Pressure, Tires 348,357
Airbag 34,48,56
Airbag Light 59,79,197
Airbag On/Off Switch 56
Alarm (Security Alarm) 19,199
Alarm System (Security Alarm) 19
Alignment and Balance 356
Alterations/Modifications, Vehicle 7
Antenna, Satellite Radio 254
Antifreeze (Engine Coolant) 466,467,508
Disposal 469
Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) 320,325
Anti-Lock Warning Light 202,322
Anti-Theft Security Alarm (Theft Alarm) 19
Anti-Theft System 19,199
Appearance Care 484
Ashtray 168
Assistance Towing 104
Automatic Dimming Mirror 87
Automatic Transaxle 12
Interlock System 19
Automatic Transmission
Adding Fluid 478
Fluid and Filter Changes 479
Fluid Level Check 476,477
Fluid Type 476,511
Shift Indicator 199
Shifting 283
Special Additives 479
Axle Fluid 474,511

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Axle Lubrication (Axle Fluid) 474

Ball Joints 460
Battery 457
  Emergency Starting 434
  Saving Feature (Protection) 136
Bearings 479
Belts, Drive 454
Belts, Seat 35
Body Builders Guide 6
Body Mechanism Lubrication 462
B-Pillar Location 343
Brake Assist System 326
Brake Control System, Electronic 324
Brake Fluid 472,511
Brake System 319,471
  Anti-Lock (ABS) 320,321,325
  Disc Brakes 471
  Fluid Check 472
  Hoses 471
  Master Cylinder 472
  Parking 318
  Warning Light 202
Break-In Recommendations, New Vehicle 76
Bulb Replacement 495
Bulbs, Light 494

Cab Top Clearance Lights 503
Calibration, Compass 154
Camper 185
Capacities, Fluid 508
Caps, Filler
  Oil (Engine) 452
  Power Steering 460
  Radiator (Coolant Pressure) 468
Car Washes 484
Carbon Monoxide Warning 78,187,375
Cargo Light 138

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cassette Tape and Player Maintenance 257
Catalytic Converter 455
CD (Compact Disc) Player 211,219,233
Cellular Phone 91
Center High Mounted Stop Light 502
Center Lap Belts 45
Center Seat Storage Compartment 173,174
Certification Label 381
Chart, Tire Sizing 340
Check Engine Light
(Malfunction Indicator Light) 201
Child Restraint 62,63
Child Restraint Tether Anchors 66,71
Child Seat 63,70
Cigar Lighter 168
Cleaning
  Wheels 486
Climate Control 259
Clock 209,213,221,234,248
Clutch 474
Clutch Linkage Maintenance 474
Compact Disc (CD) Maintenance 258
Compact Spare Tire 351
Compass 153,154
Compass Calibration 154
Compass Variance 155
Computer, Trip/Travel 149
Console, Overhead 148
Contract, Service 525
Coolant Pressure Cap (Radiator Cap) 468
Cooling System 465
  Adding Coolant (Antifreeze) 467
  Coolant Capacity 508
  Coolant Level 465,469
  Disposal of Used Coolant 469
  Drain, Flush, and Refill 466
  Inspection 469
  Points to Remember 469

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Pressure Cap 468
Radiator Cap 468
Selection of Coolant (Antifreeze) 466,508,510
Temperature Gauge 198
Cruise Control (Speed Control) 145
Cupholders 169
Customer Assistance 523

Data Recorder, Event 60
Daytime Running Lights 137
Dealer Service 450
Defroster, Rear Window 89,182
Defroster, Windshield 79,260,263
Delay (Intermittent) Wipers 141
Differential, Limited-Slip 313
Dipsticks
Automatic Transmission 477
Power Steering 460
Disc Brakes 471
Disposal
Antifreeze (Engine Coolant) 469
Door Locks 27
Door Opener, Garage 156
Drive Belts 454
Drive Shaft Universal Joints 461
Driving
Through Flowing, Rising, or Shallow Standing Water 315
Dual Rear Wheels 361,431
DVD Player (Video Entertainment System™) 251

E-85 Fuel 377
Electric Rear Window Defrost 89,182
Electrical Power Outlets 166
Electronic Brake Control System 324
Anti-Lock Brake System 325
Brake Assist System 326
Electronic Roll Mitigation 332

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Electronic Stability Program 333
Traction Control System 326
Electronic Roll Mitigation (ERM) 332
Electronic Speed Control (Cruise Control) 145
Electronic Stability Program (ESP) 204,333
Electronically Shifted Transfer Case 298,306
Emergency Brake 318
Emergency, In Case of
Freeing Vehicle When Stuck 437
Hazard Warning Flasher 416
Jacking 423
Jump Starting 434
Tow Hooks 438
Towing 439
Emission Control System Maintenance 514
Emission Related Components 457
Engine 444,445,446
Air Cleaner 455
Block Heater 282
Break-In Recommendations 76
Compartment Identification 444,445,446
Coolant (Antifreeze) 510
Exhaust Gas Caution 375
Flooded, Starting 280
Fuel Requirements 508
Multi-Displacement 338
Oil 451,508,510
Oil Filler Cap 452
Oil Selection 452,508
Oil Synthetic 453
Temperature Gauge 198
Equipment Identification Plate 413
Event Data Recorder 60
Exhaust Gas Caution 78,187,375,465
Exhaust System 78,464,465
Exterior Lighting 136

Fabric Care 486

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Filters
Air Cleaner 455,481
Engine Fuel 455
Engine Oil 454,510
Engine Oil Disposal 453
Flashers
Turn Signal 139
Flat Tire Stowage 422,433
Flexible Fuel Vehicles
Cruising Range 380
Engine Oil 380
Fuel Requirements 377,379
Replacement Parts 381
Starting 380
Flooded Engine Starting 280
Fluid, Brake 511
Fluid Capacities 508
Fluid Level Checks
Automatic Transmission 477
Brake 472
Power Steering 460
Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts 510
Fog Lights 138,201,498
Fold Flat Load Floor 179
Four Wheel Drive 294
Four-Way Hazard Flasher 416
Freeing A Stuck Vehicle 437
Front Axle (Differential) 474
Front Wheel Bearings 479
Fuel 371
Adding 375
Filler Cap (Gas Cap) 377
Filter 455
Gauge 207
Hoses 471
Octane Rating 371,510
Requirements 371,508
System Hoses 471

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tank Capacity 508
Fuel, Flexible . . . . . *See Flexible Fuel Vehicles*
Fuses 489

Garage Door Opener (HomeLink®) 156
Gas Cap (Fuel Filler Cap) 377,447
Gasoline (Fuel) 371
Gasoline, Reformulated 372
Gauges 196
Coolant Temperature 198
Fuel 207
Oil Pressure 197
Speedometer 197
Tachometer 196
Voltmeter 196
Gear Ranges 283,290
General Information 18,117,371
Glass Cleaning 488
Grocery Bag Retainer 178
Gross Axle Weight Rating 386
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating 385
Guide, Body Builders 6
GVWR 381

Hands-Free Phone (UConnect®) 91
Hazard
Driving Through Flowing, Rising, or Shallow Standing Water 315
Hazard Warning Flasher 416
Head Restraints 121
Headlights 495
Cleaning 487
High Beam 140
High Beam/Low Beam Select Switch 140
Lights On Reminder 138
Passing 140
Switch 136
Heated Mirrors 89,182

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Heated Seats 131
Heater 261
Heater, Engine Block 282
High Beam/Low Beam Select (Dimmer) Switch . . 140
Hitches
  Trailer Towing 389
Hoisting 434
HomeLink® (Garage Door Opener) Transmitter . . . 156
Hood Release 133
Hoses 470
Hub Caps 429

Ignition 12
  Key 12
Ignition Key Removal 12
Illuminated Entry 20
Immobilizer (Sentry Key) 15
Infant Restraint 62,63
Inflation Pressure Tires 357
Inside Rearview Mirror 86
Instrument Cluster 194,196
Instrument Panel and Controls 193
Instrument Panel Lens Cleaning 488
Integrated Power Module (Fuses) 489
Interior Appearance Care 487
Interior Lights 135
Intermittent Wipers (Delay Wipers) 141
Introduction 4

Jack Location 417
Jack Operation 422,423
Jacking Instructions 422
Jump Starting 434

Key, Programming 17
Key, Replacement 16
Key, Sentry (Immobilizer) 15
Keyless Entry System 21

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Keys 12
Knee Bolster 48

Lane Change and Turn Signals 139
Lap Belts 45
Lap/Shoulder Belts 35
LATCH
(Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren) 66
Life of Tires 354
"Light Load" Reset Switch (TPMS) 193,365
Lights 80,134
Airbag 59,197
Anti-Lock Warning 202,322
Brake Warning 202
Bulb Replacement 494,495
Cap Top Clearance 503
Cargo 138
Center Mounted Stop 502
Check Engine (Malfunction Indicator) 201
Courtesy/Reading 149
Cruise 208
Daytime Running 137
Dual Wheel Assembly Rear 505
Electronic Stability Program (ESP)
Indicator 204,333
Fog 138,201,498
Four-Wheel Drive Indicator 298
Hazard Warning Flasher 416
Headlights 136
High Beam 140,197
High Beam Indicator 197
High Beam/Low Beam Select 140
Illuminated Entry 20
Instrument Cluster 196
Intensity Control 135
Interior 135,149
Lights On Reminder 138
Passing 140

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Seat Belt Reminder 197
Service 494,495
Side Marker 507
Tire Pressure Monitoring (TPMS) 204
Traction Control 333
Transfer Case 298
Transmission Warning 207
Turn Signal 139,196,495,499
Warning (Instrument Cluster Description) 196
Limited-Slip Differential 313,475
Loading Vehicle 381
Tires 343
Locks 27
Child Protection 31
Door 27
Keys 12
Power Door 28
Steering Wheel 18
Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren (LATCH) 66
Lubrication, Body 462
Lug Nuts 428
Lumbar Support 122

Maintenance 450
Maintenance Free Battery 457
Maintenance Procedures 450
Maintenance Schedule 514
Malfunction Indicator Light (Check Engine) 448
Manual, Service 527
Manual Transmission 288,291,476
Fluid Level Check 475,476
Lubricant Selection 476,511
Shift Speeds 290
Mirrors 86
Automatic Dimming 87
Electric Powered 88

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Outside 87
Rearview 86
Trailer Towing 89,400
Modifications / Alterations, Vehicle 7
Monitor, Tire Pressure System 362
Mopar Parts 449,526
Multi-Displacement Engine System 338
Multi-Function Control Lever 139

Navigation Radio 248
Navigation System 248
Noise Control
Maintenance 480
Tampering Prohibited 480,481
Noise Emission Warranty 482

Occupant Restraints 34
Octane Rating, Gasoline (Fuel) 371
Odometer 199,207
Trip 199,207
Off-Pavement Driving (Off-Road) 317
Off-Road Driving (Off-Pavement) 317
Oil Change Indicator 200
Oil Change Indicator, Reset 200
Oil, Engine 451,510
Capacity 508
Change Interval 452
Dipstick 451
Disposal 453
Filter 454,510
Filter Disposal 453
Identification Logo 452
Materials Added to 453
Pressure Gauge 197
Recommendation 452,508
Synthetic 453
Viscosity 452,508
Onboard Diagnostic System 447,448

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Opener, Garage Door (HomeLink®) 156
Operating Precautions 447
Outside Rearview Mirrors 87
Overdrive 285
Overdrive OFF Switch 285
Overhead Console 148,149
Overhead Travel Information Center 149
Owner's Manual (Operator Manual) 527

Parking Brake 318
Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch 56
Passing Light 140
Pedals, Adjustable 144
Pets 76
Pets, Transporting 76
Phone, Cellular 91
Phone, Hands-Free (UConnect®) 91
Pickup Box 183
Placard, Tire and Loading Information 344
Positive Crankcase Valve 457
Power
  Distribution Center (Fuses) 489
  Door Locks 28
  Mirrors 88
  Outlet (Auxiliary Electrical Outlet) 166
  Seats 122,124
  Sliding Rear Window 182
  Steering 323,460
  Sunroof 163
  Windows 32
Power Steering Fluid 511
Pregnant Women and Seat Belts 47
Pretensioners
  Seat Belts 45

Radial Ply Tires 351
Radiator Cap (Coolant Pressure Cap) 466,468
Radio Broadcast Signals 209

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Radio, Navigation 248
Radio Operation 211,219,233
Radio Remote Controls 255
Radio, Satellite 248,251
Radio (Sound Systems) 211,219,233
Rear Axle (Differential) 474
Rear Seat, Folding 126,128
Rear Wheel Bearings 480
Rear Window Features 182
Rear Window, Sliding 183
Reclining Front Seats 119,120
Reclining Rear Seats 126
Recorder, Event Data 60
Recreational Towing 406
  Shifting into Transfer Case Neutral (N) 407,409
  Shifting out of Transfer Case Neutral (N) . . . 408,411
Reformulated Gasoline 372
Refrigerant 460
Reminder, Seat Belt 46
Remote Control
  Starting System 25
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) 21
Remote Sound System (Radio) Controls 255
Remote Starting System 25
Replacement Keys 16
Replacement Tires 355
Reporting Safety Defects 526
Reset Switch “Light Load” (TPMS) 193,365
Resetting Oil Change Indicator 200
Restraint, Head 121
Restraints, Child 62,70
Restraints, Occupant 34
Rotation, Tires 359

Safety Checks Inside Vehicle 79
Safety Checks Outside Vehicle 79
Safety Defects, Reporting 526
Safety Information, Tire 339

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety Tips 77
Satellite Radio 248,251
Satellite Radio Antenna 254
Schedule, Maintenance 514
Seat Belt Maintenance 488
Seat Belt Reminder 46
Seat Belts 34,35,79
Adjustable Upper Shoulder Anchorage 43
And Pregnant Women 47
Child Restraint 62,75
Extender 47
Front Seat 35
Pretensioners 45
Reminder 197
Seats 117,118
Adjustment 117
Child 75
Cleaning 486
Folding Floor 179
Heated 131
Lumbar Support 122
Power 122,124
Rear Folding 126,128
Reclining 119,120
Reclining Rear 126
Security Alarm (Theft Alarm) 19,199
Selection of Coolant (Antifreeze) 466,510
Sentry Key (Immobilizer) 15
Sentry Key Programming 17
Sentry Key Replacement 16
Service Assistance 523
Service Contract 525
Service Manuals 527
Setting the Clock 209,213,221,234,248
Shift Speeds 291
Shifting 282
Automatic Transmission 283
Manual Transmission 288,291

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Transfer Case 297
Transfer Case, Shifting into Transfer Case Neutral (N) 407,409
Transfer Case, Shifting out of Transfer Case Neutral (N) 408,411
Shoulder Belt Upper Anchorage 43
Shoulder Belts 35
Signals, Turn 139
Sliding Rear Window
Power 182
Slippery Surfaces, Driving On 314
Snow Chains (Tire Chains) 357
Snow Plow 401
Snow Tires 359
Spare Tire 351,352
Spark Plugs 454,510
Speed Control (Cruise Control) 145
Speedometer 197
Starting 25,278
Automatic Transmission 279
Engine Fails to Start 280
Manual Transmission 279
Remote 25
Starting Procedures (Gas Engines) 278
Steering
Linkage 461
Power 323,460
Wheel Lock 18
Wheel, Tilt 143
Steering Wheel Mounted Sound System Controls 255
Storage, Behind the Seat 173
Storage Compartment, Center Seat 173,174
Storage, Vehicle 493
Storing Your Vehicle 493
Sun Roof 163
Supplemental Tire Pressure Information 357
Sway Control, Trailer 337

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Synthetic Engine Oil 453
System, Navigation 248
System, Remote Starting 25

Tachometer 196
Tailgate 185
Tether Anchor, Child Restraint 66,71
Tilt Steering Column 143
Tip Start 279
Tire and Loading Information Placard 343,344,357
Tire Identification Number (TIN) 342
Tire Markings 339
Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) “Light Load” Reset Switch 193,365
Tire Safety Information 339
Tires 79,347,528
  Aging (Life of Tires) 354
  Air Pressure 347
  Alignment 356
  Chains 357
  Compact Spare 351
  Dual 361,431
  General Information 347
  High Speed 350
  Inflation Pressures 348
  Jacking 423
  Life of Tires 354
  Load Capacity 343,344
  Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) 362
  Pressure Warning Light 204
  Quality Grading 528
  Radial 351
  Replacement 355
  Rotation 359
  Safety 339,347
  Sizes 340
  Snow Tires 359
  Spare Tire 422

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Spinning 353
Tread Wear Indicators 353
Wheel Mounting 423
Wheel Nut Torque 428
Tongue Weight/Trailer Weight 390
Torque Converter Clutch 288
Tow Hooks, Emergency 438
Towing 385
24-Hour Towing Assistance 104
Disabled Vehicle 439
Guide 390
Recreational 406
Weight 390
Towing Assistance 104
Traction 314
Traction Control 206,326
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) 337
Trailer Towing 385
Cooling System Tips 399
Hitches 389
Minimum Requirements 392
Mirrors 89,400
Trailer and Tongue Weight 390
Wiring 396
Trailer Towing Guide 390
Trailer Weight 390
Transaxle
Automatic 12
Manual 14
Transfer Case 475
Electronically Shifted 298,306
Fluid 511
Transmission
Automatic 283,476
Fluid 511
Maintenance 476
Manual 279,288,291,476
Shifting 282,291

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Transmitter, Garage Door Opener (HomeLink®) . . 156
Tread Wear Indicators 353
Trip Computer 149
Trip Odometer 199,207
Turn Signals 139,196,495,499

UConnect® (Hands-Free Phone) 91
Underhood Fuses 489
Uniform Tire Quality Grades 528
Universal Transmitter 156

Variance, Compass 155
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 7
Vehicle Loading 344,381
Vehicle Modifications/Alterations 7
Vehicle Storage 493
Video Entertainment System™
(Rear Seat Video System) 251
Voltmeter 196

Warning Lights
(Instrument Cluster Description) 196
Warnings and Cautions 6
Warranty Information 526
Washers, Windshield 142,463
Washing Vehicle 484
Water
  Driving Through 315
Wheel Alignment and Balance 356
Wheel and Wheel Trim 486
Wheel and Wheel Trim Care 486
Wheel Cover 429
Wheel Mounting 423
Wheel Nut Torque 428,432
Wind Buffeting 34,166
Window Fogging 269
Windows 32
  Power 32
  Rear Sliding 183

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Windshield Defroster 260,263
Windshield Washers 141,142,463
Fluid 141,463
Windshield Wiper Blades 463
Windshield Wipers 141
Wiper Blade Replacement 463
Wipers, Intermittent 141

YES Essentials® Fabric Cleaning Procedure 486

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

INSTALLATION OF RADIO TRANSMITTING EQUIPMENT

Special design considerations are incorporated into this vehicle's electronic system to provide immunity to radio frequency signals. Mobile two-way radios and telephone equipment must be installed properly by trained personnel. The following must be observed during installation.

The positive power connection should be made directly to the battery and fused as close to the battery as possible. The negative power connection should be made to body sheet metal adjacent to the negative battery connection. This connection should not be fused.

Antennas for two-way radios should be mounted on the roof or the rear area of the vehicle. Care should be used in mounting antennas with magnet bases. Magnets may affect the accuracy or operation of the compass on vehicles so equipped.

The antenna cable should be as short as practical and routed away from the vehicle wiring when possible. Use only fully shielded coaxial cable.

Carefully match the antenna and cable to the radio to ensure a low Standing Wave Ratio (SWR).

Mobile radio equipment with output power greater than normal may require special precautions.

All installations should be checked for possible interference between the communications equipment and the vehicle's electronic systems.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

DODGE SERVICE

Stick with the Specialists™

DaimlerChrysler Corporation
81-326-0827
Fourth Edition
Printed in U.S.A.

DEALER E-PROCESS